WORKING PEOPLE OF THE WHOLE WORLD, UNITE!
KIM IL SUNG

WORKS

41

January 1988–May 1989

FOREIGN LANGUAGES PUBLISHING HOUSE
PYONGYANG, KOREA
1996
CONTENTS

NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1988 ...................................................................................................................................... 1

ON IMPROVING THE WORK OF THE ADMINISTRATION COUNCIL AND CONCENTRATING ON THE FIVE MAJOR ECONOMIC TASKS

Speech at the Consultative Meeting of Senior Officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council, January 1, 1988 .................. 15

ON A FRESH ADVANCE IN SCIENCE, EDUCATION AND HEALTH SERVICE FOR THE PEOPLE

Concluding Speech at the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, March 7 to 11, 1988 .......................... 31

1. On the Work of Science and Education .......................................................... 31
2. On Public Health Service ................................................................................. 48

ON FIRMLY HOLDING UP THE REVOLUTIONARY BANNER OF JUCHE AND VIGOROUSLY ACCELERATING SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION

Concluding Speech at the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, March 7 to 11, 1988 ................. 52

TALK TO A DELEGATION OF THE LABOUR PARTY OF SWITZERLAND

April 24, 1988 .................................................................................................................................. 82

TALK TO A DELEGATION OF THE REVOLUTIONARY PARTY OF TANZANIA
ON RAISING THE REVOLUTIONARY SPIRIT AMONG OFFICIALS AND INCREASING THE PRODUCTION OF PAPER AND FERTILIZER

Speech Delivered at the 19th Session of the Eighth Central People’s Committee of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, May 6 and 9, 1988 ................................................................. 97

1. On Raising the Revolutionary Spirit among Officials ..................................................... 97

2. On Increasing the Production of Paper .......................................................................... 103

3. On Increasing Fertilizer Production ............................................................................... 111

4. On Immediate Farming and Other Problems ................................................................. 116

TALK WITH THE PRESIDENT OF DEMOCRATIC CAMBODIA

June 18, 1988 .................................................................................................................. 121

ON OUR PEOPLE’S STRUGGLE FOR SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION AND NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

Talk to a Delegation from the Communist Party of the United States of America, June 24, 1988 .................................................................................................................. 128

ON SOME PROBLEMS IN DEVELOPING THE SHIPBUILDING INDUSTRY

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Officials in the Shipbuilding Industry, July 11, 1988 .................................................................................................................. 142

LET US BUILD UP THE MT. PAEKITU AREA TO BE A GRAND OPEN-AIR REVOLUTIONARY MUSEUM

Talk to Officials While Examining the Model of the General Layout of the Mt. Paektu Revolutionary Battle Sites, July 25, 1988 ................................................................. 159

TALK WITH THE GENERAL SECRETARY OF THE LABOUR PARTY OF IRELAND

July 26, 1988 .................................................................................................................. 173
ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF OF *HORIZONT*, A NEWSPAPER OF THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC

*August 4, 1988* ..............................................................................................................................................181

LET US ACCOMPLISH THE CAUSE OF SOCIALISM AND COMMUNISM UNDER THE REVOLUTIONARY BANNER OF JUCHE

Report at the Celebration of the 40th Anniversary of the Founding of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, *September 8, 1988* ............................................188

1...............................................................................................................................................................189

2...............................................................................................................................................................196

3...............................................................................................................................................................208

4...............................................................................................................................................................214

TALK WITH THE CHAIRMAN OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION COMMITTEE OF THE REPUBLIC OF CUBA

*October 17, 1988* .......................................................................................................................................221

A LETTER OF CONGRATULATIONS TO THE INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE ON DENUCLEARIZATION OF THE KOREAN PENINSULA, PEACE AND SECURITY IN THE ASIAN-PACIFIC REGION

*October 18, 1988* .......................................................................................................................................228

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE CHIEF OF THE BUREAU OF THE ITALIAN RADIO AND TELEVISION FOR THE FAR EAST

*October 29, 1988* .......................................................................................................................................233

ON CORRECTLY DEFINING THE UNITS FOR WHICH PLANNING IS TO BE UNDERTAKEN BY STATE PLANNING ORGANIZATIONS

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Senior Officials in Charge of the Planning Sector, *November 1, 1988* .............................................................................242
ON EFFECTING ADVANCES IN THE MACHINE-TOOL, ELECTRONICS AND AUTOMATION INDUSTRIES

Concluding Speech at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, November 30, 1988 ........................................ 258

NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1989 ................................................................................................................ 278

ON FURTHER DEVELOPING THE FISHING INDUSTRY AND INCREASING SALT PRODUCTION

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Senior Officials in Charge of Economic Sectors, March 20-21, 1989................................................................. 290

FOR FRIENDSHIP AND SOLIDARITY AMONG THE YOUTH AND STUDENTS OF THE WORLD

Speech at the Fourth Session of the International Preparatory Committee of the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students, March 30, 1989 ......................... 324

ON IMPROVING KING TONGMYONG’S MAUSOLEUM

Talk to Officials after Inspecting the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong and the Sand Table and Design for Its Improvement, April 2 and 14, 1989 .................. 330

ON IMPROVING THE MANAGEMENT AND SUPPLY WORK OF PYONGYANG

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Senior Officials of the Administration Council and Pyongyang, April 20, 1989 .................................................. 341

ON THOROUGHLY IMPLEMENTING THE ECONOMIC TASKS FOR IMPROVING THE PEOPLE’S STANDARD OF LIVING

Speech at the 26th Session of the Eighth Central People’s Committee of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, May 11 and 13, 1989 .......................... 357
NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1988

Dear comrades,
My fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters,
We have seen out one fruitful year while engaged in a valiant struggle for creation and construction to bring prosperity to the country, and are seeing in the New Year, 1988, full of new hopes and confidence.

Greeting the new year, which will shine with victory and glory, I extend my warmest congratulations and best wishes to all the people in the northern half of Korea, to the brothers in the south, and to my compatriots in Japan and in all other lands abroad.

Last year our people worked hard and succeeded in carrying out the tasks for the first year of the Third Seven-Year Plan for achieving the ten long-term objectives, the magnificent programme of socialist economic construction which was adopted by the Sixth Congress of our Party.

Last year we set the strategic task of economic construction, the task of strengthening the material and technical foundations to reach the major objectives of the key industries and provide a full solution to the problems of food, clothing and housing for the people, and concentrated our efforts on capital construction.

Under the leadership of the Party, our people displayed unparalleled heroism and performed shining labour exploits on the first leg of their advance for grand socialist construction, and made a
breakthrough in the implementation of the Third Seven-Year Plan. Thus, they marked 1987 as a glorious year of praiseworthy successes.

Last year, in order to attain the target for the generation of electricity which is most important in carrying out the Third Seven-Year Plan, our power-station builders carried out the difficult project of driving a 40-kilometre-long waterway tunnel through rugged mountains and successfully finished the first stage of the gigantic Songwon Dam. By doing this, they made a decisive advance in the construction of the Thaechon Power Station. They also pressed ahead with the construction of the Wiwon Power Station and the Sunchon Thermal Power Station and with the third stage of the Sodusu Power Station. In addition, they worked on the most important and difficult part of the construction of the Kumgangsan Power Station, which will be the largest of all our hydroelectric power stations, and accelerated the construction of the Nyongwon and Namgang Power Stations, and many other large and small ones.

Last year we concentrated efforts on the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, a large and comprehensive chemical industry base which is essential for strengthening the independence of our national economy and improving the material and cultural standards of the people. We also undertook the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex, a powerful light metal production centre. The workers who are building the Sunchon Vinalon Complex worked successfully on the enormous project by displaying an unbreakable fighting spirit, and at last got the first carbide kiln going.

The construction workers in the Tanchon area completed the projects for the extension of the Tanchon Magnesia Factory and for the construction of the Unsong Crushing and Screening Plant by making collective innovations in response to the militant call of the Party. As a result, the magnesia clinker production capacity was raised to the two million-ton level, and the first-stage work of building the Tanchon Smeltery, a major nonferrous metal production centre, was finished.

By displaying mass heroism, the young people who are laying the
railway in the northern region completed virtually all the facilities for the whole section of the railway linking the eastern and western regions, and opened the section which covers a distance of 100 kilometres. This was a great contribution to the efforts to exploit the mineral resources in this area and to easing the strain on transport in our country.

The people who are building Kwangbok Street speeded up the difficult and complex project for large-scale construction, upholding the honour of building the capital city, and thus added a brilliant chapter to the history of the construction of the capital.

Last year our heroic working class and all the other working people built many monumental structures of lasting value by displaying patriotic devotion and creative enthusiasm. They also made valuable successes on all fronts of socialist construction, successes which will contribute to the prosperity and development of the country and to the promotion of the people’s well-being. We may well be proud of these achievements with great confidence and honour.

All this brilliant success in the building of socialism was possible because our Party members and other working people strove valiantly, overcoming every difficulty and obstacle, firmly convinced that they would always emerge victorious when they were armed firmly with the Juche idea and the revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese struggle, and followed the leadership of the Party. The high rate of such large-scale capital construction we undertook in a single year was also due to the fact that our people had built an independent socialist national economy by working hard under the Party’s leadership.

I highly appraise the labour feats performed by our working people and the soldiers of the People’s Army in the course of grand construction to attain the high targets of the Third Seven-Year Plan, and extend my warmest thanks to the workers, farmers, working intellectuals and all the other people who have worked devotedly on every front of socialist construction in support of Party policy.

The year 1988 is a year of great significance, as it marks the 40th anniversary of the founding of the Republic.
This year we must bring about another great upswing in all fields of socialist construction and ensure that our Republic, which has risen to a high level as a socialist state that has become independent, self-sufficient, and self-reliant in defence by overcoming manifold difficulties and trials, will demonstrate its might to the whole world and celebrate its 40th anniversary as a grand festival of victors.

The central task facing us in socialist construction this year is to add greater momentum to the grand project which is already making great strides.

First of all, we must continue to direct great efforts to the projects for expanding and strengthening the technical foundations for production in the power industry, coal mining, metallurgy and other key industries. This is the way to increase the great capabilities of our independent socialist national economy and push forward the whole construction work to reach the ten long-term objectives of economic construction.

The power industry must complete within the first half of the year the construction of the Thaechon and Wiwon Power Stations and the Sunchon Thermal Power Station, and the third-stage work of the Sodusu Power Station, which are now under way, to create a capacity of generating at least 1.2 million kW, and press on with the construction of the Kumgangsan, Nyongwon, Huichon, Namgang and Kumyagang Power Stations.

The coal-mining industry must reconstruct or expand on a large scale the coal mines in the Anju and Sunchon areas and in the northern and other areas where there are large deposits, and open up new coal mines so as to increase coal output markedly.

The metallurgical industry must complete the second-stage expansion project of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex within the first quarter of the year and build a new steel plant with a capacity of 2 million tons in the Chollima Steel Complex, which will feed on domestic raw materials and fuel. It must also undertake an audacious project to develop the Musan Mining Complex, which is rich in deposits, into a modern, large-scale centre for the production of
iron-ore concentrate so that it can acquire the capacity of 10 million tons during the next few years, and then the capacity of 15 million tons on a long-term basis.

Developing the chemical and light industries and accelerating their construction to provide an adequate solution to the problems of food, clothing and housing for the people are the major area which requires our concentrated efforts in socialist construction today.

This year, too, we must concentrate on the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex and the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex. When the Sunchon Vinalon Complex has been built it will produce annually one million tons of carbide, 750,000 tons of methanol, 100,000 tons of vinalon, 900,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer, 250,000 tons of vinyl chloride, 250,000 tons of caustic soda, 400,000 tons of sodium carbonate and various other chemicals, and 300,000 tons of protein feed. If we finish the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex and process annually three million tons of potassic feldspar, deposits of which are abundant in the Chongdan area, we shall be able to produce 510,000 tons of potassic fertilizer, 420,000 tons of alumina and at least 10 million tons of cement.

The soldiers of the People’s Army and all the people who are constructing the Sunchon Vinalon Complex and the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex must ensure the quality of the construction and finish the projects on time by fully displaying loyalty to the Party and the revolution, and their heroic fighting spirit. Thus they will see to it that the far-reaching plan of our Party for the country’s prosperity and the people’s welfare becomes a reality as soon as possible.

The builders of Kwangbok Street and other important structures in Pyongyang must finish construction ahead of schedule while building them as well as possible, so that Pyongyang will become a more magnificent and beautiful modern city.

If we are to provide successfully for the grand construction work being undertaken throughout the country and develop transport in step with the ever-increasing production, we must radically increase the
capacity of transport by concentrating great efforts on the railways, which are the vanguard of the national economy.

The most important way of increasing the capacity of the railways at present is to electrify them and provide them with heavy-duty equipment. We must finish the electrification of the sections which are yet to be electrified and produce a large number of eight-axle electric locomotives and 100-ton goods waggons so as to enable the railways to perform heavy-duty service as soon as possible.

The theses on the socialist rural question advanced by our Party is a programme that shows the absolutely correct way of building socialist rural communities. It is our Party’s unshakable determination to complete within the next few years the four major tasks of the rural technical revolution—irrigation, electrification, mechanization and widespread use of chemicals—the tasks set by the theses. In continued adherence to the agriculture-first policy of our Party, we must produce large numbers of tractors, lorries and modern farm machinery that suit our situation, as well as various kinds of chemical fertilizers for the country areas while launching an all-people movement to establish the sprinkler irrigation system for 500,000 hectares of dry fields, a project to bring irrigation to a new and higher stage and make it complete. In addition, we must push forward tideland reclamation and the movement to obtain new land so as to increase the cultivated area. Fully aware of being the masters who are responsible for the granary of the country, the senior agricultural officials and the farmers must cultivate crops by the Juche-farming method and effect a new advance in agricultural production this year.

The tasks of socialist construction this year are laudable in that they are aimed at opening up bright prospects for the successful implementation of the Third Seven-Year Plan and at radically improving the people’s livelihood. Carrying out this year’s tasks successfully is not only important for hastening the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea, but will greatly inspire the fighting south Korean people and clearly show the validity and vitality of the Juche idea to the world’s progressive people who are
building an independent, new life.

The three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—constitute the general line that our Party must always adhere to in building socialism and communism. This year, too, we must continue to press ahead with these revolutions under the unfurled banner of the Juche idea.

Success in socialist construction depends on how the revolutionary enthusiasm and creative initiative of the masses of the people, the motive force of the revolution, are mobilized. We should keep to the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method, the effectiveness of which has been verified through practice, and carry forward the Taean work system, their embodiment. All sectors and all units of the national economy must apply the system and method of Juche-oriented socialist economic management that accord with the natural requirements of the socialist system and the situation in our country so as to strengthen the collective leadership of the Party committee and implement the mass line. In this way we shall give full scope to the superiority of the socialist system and bring about a continual upswing and innovations in production and construction.

The tasks facing us this year are enormous. But we have every possibility of carrying them out successfully. Our people are a tempered, seasoned and heroic people. They have traversed the road of victory, surmounting all difficulties and trials under the leadership of our Party. All the Party members and other working people must advance vigorously, rallied closely behind the Party and displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude with confidence in victory and revolutionary optimism. Thus, they will achieve another miraculous success which will amaze the world in all fields of socialist construction and demonstrate the revolutionary stamina of Juche Korea.

The year 1987 was a year when the struggle for peace and peaceful national reunification was intensive in both the north and the south of our country.

In order to ease the tension in Korea and to create a phase
favourable for peaceful reunification, our Party and the Government of the Republic, true to the noble ideas of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity, proposed high-level political and military talks between north and south. Last year we made a proposal for phased disarmament and a five-point proposal for national unity, and worked hard to implement them.

Throughout last year people from all walks of life in south Korea fought determinedly to end the military fascist dictatorship which had lasted for almost 30 years under the aegis of the United States and to win social democracy and independence as well as peaceful national reunification.

In these days of heroic struggles ranging from the struggle against the fascist “April 13 Measure” to the June Popular Resistance, the workers’ struggle from July to September and the struggle in December for the termination of military rule, the south Korean people fully demonstrated their strong desire for independence, democracy and reunification and their indefatigable fighting spirit. By so doing, they dealt a heavy blow to the military dictatorship, which is backed by the United States. In particular, in the “presidential election” held recently in south Korea 12 million people, far exceeding the majority of voters, clearly expressed their will rejecting prolonged military rule and demanding a civilian government, and showed that no one could ignore this powerful fighting force.

I extend my utmost respect to the people of all sections, particularly the workers, peasants, young people, students and intellectuals, and to the patriotic democrats in south Korea who recorded a glorious page in their history of the liberation struggle by their courageous anti-US, anti-fascist struggle in defiance of the harsh military dictatorial system.

In spite of the desire of the overwhelming majority of the people to abolish military rule and establish civilian government, the military fascist dictatorship is still reigning over the people in south Korea, and what they call a “change of regime” will give them no hope or expectations whatsoever. Experience proves once again that so long as colonial rule by the United States over south Korea continues the
people’s demand for democracy and their desire for social change will not be met. The south Korean people must draw a lesson from this state of affairs. In order to shape their own destiny by their united struggle, they must press on with the cause of anti-fascist democracy and of national reunification, putting forward the slogan of anti-US independence.

Today, the most pressing task of all the Korean people is to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

The ardent desire of the whole nation for the country’s reunification is irresistible, and the just policy and sincere efforts of our Party and the Government of our Republic to reunify the country enjoy stronger support and sympathy from the peoples at home and abroad than ever before.

The international situation as a whole shows signs of gradual relaxation, and the voice of the world’s peace-loving people who desire the peaceful settlement of the Korean question is growing louder with each passing day.

The degree of accelerating the country’s reunification depends entirely on joint efforts made by the north and the south, the direct parties to the question of reunification.

If the country is to be reunified independently and peacefully, it is most urgent that the north and the south have an attitude and willingness to become reconciled and united with each other.

By nature, the question of national reunification is not a matter of who will conquer whom or who will be conquered, nor is it a question of one side overpowering and winning supremacy over the other; it is a question of achieving unity between the north and the south, which make up one nation of the same stock. As historical experience shows, if both sides distrust each other in confrontation and seek division, no success can be expected even though they hold frequent talks, and worse still, if they aim to win by the use of strength the question of reunification will never be settled.

The north-south confrontation and division only give foreign forces a chance to fish in troubled waters. Playing into their hands, our nation
has suffered unbearable disasters and misfortunes for more than 40
years. In order to end this disgraceful history and defend national
interests, both sides, one and the same nation, must not attempt a
competition but be willing to become reconciled and united, and make
joint efforts to reunify the country.

Another pressing prerequisite for national reunification is to
discontinue military confrontation between the north and the south,
and to ease the tension.

As we have stated more than once, military confrontation is a factor
in misunderstanding and distrust. For fellow countrymen to trust and
become reconciled with each other, they must first throw away the
daggers they are holding behind their backs.

Even though it is difficult to reunify the country right now, we must
seek a way to a peaceful life, instead of pitting large armies against
each other and retaining the factor that may trigger off a war and bring
about national calamities.

We must be ready to remove the military confrontation and
eliminate the danger of war in every way possible, and make a bold
decision to adopt a nonaggression declaration, a sure guarantee that the
north and the south will refrain from attacking each other.

The implementation of this declaration can be guaranteed by
increasing the authority and functions of the Neutral Nations
Supervisory Commission of the present Military Armistice
Commission and by organizing a neutral nations inspection force.

Promoting national reconciliation and unity and easing the tension
at present are the minimum requirements in principle for holding
north-south talks and settling the reunification question.

We believe that we shall be able to cooperate for national
reunification with anyone who takes this principled attitude. If they
show such a sincere attitude, we will meet and converse at any time
not only with people from all walks of life in south Korea–political
parties, organizations and people of different opposition groups–but
also with the south Korean rulers, unless this is contrary to the
people’s will. And we will meet everyone individually or collectively
to exchange opinions without reserve.

At present many people show deep apprehension, saying that from the point of view of both the situation in south Korea and north-south relations 1988 will be a most strained and complex year.

This year we must turn the situation on the Korean peninsula, the focus of the world’s attention, decisively in favour of peace and the peaceful reunification of our country.

Out of this desire, we insist that the problems of discontinuing the “Team Spirit” joint military exercise, and other large-scale war games from this year onwards, of arranging multinational disarmament talks, of hosting the 24th Olympic Games jointly by north and south, and of ceasing to hurl abuse and slander against each other must be discussed and settled without delay.

By resolving these pressing problems, the north and the south will make this year a historic year that will provide the opportunity of a new change for national reconciliation and unity. For this purpose, we propose to convene a north-south joint conference attended by persons in authority of both sides and the representatives of all the political parties and social organizations and people of all social standings. This meeting will make it possible to open a new phase in breaking the deadlock between north and south, and promoting peace and the peaceful reunification of the country, the burning desire of the whole nation.

For the fundamental settlement of the question of the reunification of our country, the relations between the DPRK and the United States must be settled.

The United States continues its military occupation of south Korea, still avoiding the proposed tripartite talks. This shows that they have no intention of settling even the regional issue, still less preserving world peace.

Speaking from the point of view of a fair deal, the United States is not at all justified in having brought nuclear weapons into south Korea and made it a nuclear base in confrontation with us, who possess no nuclear arms. If these nuclear weapons are aimed at another socialist
country, they ought to withdraw them from south Korea now that they have concluded a nuclear disarmament treaty with the Soviet Union. The United States must conclude a peace agreement with us, remove as soon as possible the traces of the past which were undesirable to both sides, and open a new chapter in the annals of Korea-US relationship in keeping with the current trend towards peace.

We consider it the most reasonable settlement of the question of our country’s reunification to establish a single federal state, neutral and non-aligned, on the basis of the north and the south recognizing each other’s existence.

For the independent and peaceful reunification of their country, all the Koreans living in the north, in the south and overseas must participate as one in the accomplishment of the sacred cause of the nation.

The Chongryon officials and all our overseas compatriots, including those in Japan, must make redoubled efforts to promote national reconciliation and unity, and hasten the independent and peaceful reunification of the country in cooperation with the people in the homeland.

Thanks to the positive external activities of our Party and the Government of our Republic, last year the friendly ties between our country and the socialist, non-aligned and all other peace-loving countries throughout the world were strengthened, and international solidarity with our revolution deepened.

I express my deep gratitude to the peoples and friends in different lands who have given support and encouragement to our just cause, and send them my New Year greetings and congratulations.

The most important question in the field of international politics at the moment is to eliminate the source of nuclear war and preserve peace.

We consider that the recent signing of the treaty on partial nuclear disarmament between the Soviet Union and the United States is a significant starting point on the way to universal nuclear disarmament. The Korean people, who feel a constant threat of a possible nuclear
holocaust because of the large number of US nuclear weapons deployed in south Korea, are vitally interested in creating nuclear-free, peace zones in many parts of the world and in abolishing nuclear weapons completely.

The imperialists’ policy of aggression and plunder is still the root cause of threats to world peace and of growing international tension. In spite of the ever-expanding and intensifying struggle of people throughout the world against war and for peace, the imperialists are bent on military expansion and the arms race, instead of abandoning power politics. They are exploiting and plundering developing countries more harshly by the method of neocolonialism. As a result, “the rich are getting richer and the poor are getting poorer” worldwide. This situation is causing not only untold hardships and miseries to the people of the developing countries, but also aggravating the political and economic crises in the imperialist countries themselves. In an attempt to find a way out of these crises the imperialists are militarizing their economies, confronting the socialist countries and intensifying the exploitation of the people of the developing countries. In this way they are going against the main historical trend towards common prosperity for mankind, creating discord between nations and increasing world tension.

In these circumstances, all the peace-loving people must firmly unite and fight resolutely to preserve peace by frustrating the imperialists’ moves for aggression and another war.

If the people of developing countries and oppressed nations are to achieve complete national liberation and build new, independent societies, they must continue to intensify their anti-imperialist national-liberation struggles and fight to abolish the unfair, outdated international economic order, and establish a new and fair one. At the moment, the people of the developing countries should make joint efforts to effect full-scale South-South cooperation.

This year too, our Party and the Government of our Republic, under the unfurled banner of anti-imperialism and independence, will develop the relations of friendship and cooperation with the peoples of
the socialist countries and non-aligned nations, and other progressive people throughout the world, give unqualified support and encouragement to all people in their struggle for national independence and for building a new society, and will make every effort to preserve the peace and security of the world.

The tasks facing us this year are magnificent and glorious; they are intended for the prosperity of all generations to come, and call on our people, who are always loyal to the Party, to perform heroic exploits.

Let all of us march forward towards the complete victory of socialism and the independent, peaceful reunification of the country under the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea and under the leadership of the Party.
ON IMPROVING THE WORK OF THE ADMINISTRATION COUNCIL AND CONCENTRATING ON THE FIVE MAJOR ECONOMIC TASKS

Speech at the Consultative Meeting of Senior Officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council
January 1, 1988

On January 1 last year I met you comrades to explain the orientation of economic work for that year. This year, too, I have summoned you to do the same.

The Premier, vice-premiers and secretaries of the Party Central Committee, and the chairmen and ministers under the Administration Council who are present here are the hard core of our Party who have charge of the economic affairs of the country and lead them. The economic development of the country largely depends on your work. You have an extremely heavy duty to the Party and to the revolution.

Today I would like to speak about how to improve the work of the Administration Council and about some problems which require constant attention in economic affairs this year.

First of all, the work of the Administration Council must be improved decisively.

The Administration Council is a body which leads the economic affairs of the country as a whole on its own responsibility. When enacting the new Socialist Constitution we organized the
Administration Council so that it would be fully responsible for the economic affairs of the country and lead them.

When I was working as the General Secretary of the Party Central Committee and the Premier of the Cabinet, I could not put great effort into Party work because I had to deal with economic affairs at that time. As a result, there emerged room for unsound elements to infiltrate miscellaneous ideas into the Party. I thought that the General Secretary of the Party Central Committee should be engaged mainly in Party work, only setting forth the economic policy and the line of economic construction of the Party, and that economic affairs should rest directly upon the officials concerned. I saw to it that another man was appointed Premier of the Administration Council, who had charge of only economic affairs, while setting up a presidential system. Since the presidential system was established, I have concentrated mainly on Party and state work as the General Secretary of the Party Central Committee and the President of the state, advancing economic policies and doing some other work, and the Premier has been fully responsible for economic affairs.

When establishing the presidential system and appointing another man Premier, the other main intention of mine was to see that economic work was assigned to a younger man capable of pressing on with economic work full of stamina. Since I could no longer give personal guidance touring local areas due to my advanced age, it was necessary to appoint a younger man Premier so that he could direct economic work frequently in the field. I considered that a younger Premier would work energetically day and night.

However, no remarkable result has been produced in economic work since the Administration Council was separately organized. When I was the Premier of the Cabinet, economic work went smoothly. Economic affairs were successful both in the peaceful construction days immediately after liberation and in the difficult post-war reconstruction days. But economic work has not been done properly since the Administration Council was formed separately.

The main defect revealed in the work of the Administration Council
Skilful management requires careful supervision which gets to know lower units inside out. As I have said many times, during the anti-Japanese armed struggle I supervised and commanded all my guerrilla units, which were fighting scattered in the different areas of northeast China. During the Fatherland Liberation War as well as in the days immediately after liberation I took full stock of the situation of lower units. In wartime I knew to the last detail which corps was fighting on which front, which division was fighting in which area and what the situation of soldiers, weapons and other combat equipment of that division was.

However, at present the Administration Council only assigns tasks in economic affairs and fails to monitor how these tasks are carried out. Last year coal production was successful in the first half, but not satisfactory in the second half. This is explained by the fact that the Administration Council neglected to supervise coal production regularly and take necessary and timely measures. What is most important in coal production is to provide coal mines with sufficient equipment and materials. But the Administration Council has not regularly examined how much explosive material, fuses, wooden props and so on have been supplied to coal mines; only after an issue was made because coal was not produced on a regular basis for the lack of explosives, fuses, props, waggons, bearings and the like did its officials rush to save the situation.

When I was informed at the end of last year that shoes for children had stopped being produced because rubber had run out of stock I made inquiries and found that imported rubber had long been stockpiled at Nampho Port. This fact alone shows that the officials of the Administration Council are not informed clearly of the situation at subordinate units nor do they direct production properly.

Recently I got the economic affairs of Pyongyang to be examined to discuss them at a session of the Central People’s Committee. As a result, many machines and items of equipment were found to be kept idle. If we had known by careful supervision that machinery was being
hoarded like this, we could have made effective use of it.

From this year on, the Administration Council must improve the supervision and management of economic affairs.

If the Administration Council is to have a clear understanding of lower units, the Premier should meet chairmen and ministers regularly to work with them. He should meet several of them every day and receive reports from them. When he cannot meet them he must receive their reports even if only on the telephone. If the Premier meets chairmen and ministers regularly and receives their reports, their sense of responsibility will increase. Because they cannot answer without knowing the facts when the Premier asks they will make themselves familiar with the work of their sectors just to answer him.

The Premier can also take full stock of the reality of lower units through councilors and his secretaries.

When I was working as Premier there were five or six councilors, one of them being familiar with the chemical sector, another knowing agriculture well and another being well-versed in electricity. I understood the economic situation of the country as a whole and other problems arising, through the information of the councilors and secretaries, and assigned vice-premiers the tasks of settling the problems. In those days vice-premiers carried out the tasks I assigned them without question.

If the Premier has a problem which he cannot solve alone after taking stock of the actual situation of lower units he can submit it to me and get my approval before dealing with it.

Chairmen and ministers, too, must understand their lower units thoroughly. They should keep in direct contact with the heads of general bureaus and management bureaus, while working with vice-chairmen and vice-ministers. Chairmen and ministers too should regularly supervise factories and enterprises under their charge through their secretaries.

If the officials are to carry out their tasks successfully they must go deep among the masses. If they do so and work relying on them there will be nothing impossible.
During the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, whenever a difficult problem arose I went among the people and found a solution by relying on their strength and resourcefulness.

In the days of my early revolutionary activity, the Comintern and my comrades once requested me to go to the university in Moscow which was run by the Comintern. At that time the organization decided to send me to the Soviet Union for study, and prepared a suit, shoes, daily necessities and school things for me. In fact, studying in the Soviet Union was a trend in those days among Korean communists who were active in Manchuria. Apparently my comrades had decided to send me abroad to study because they hoped that I would acquire rich knowledge in the Soviet Union and guide their activities better after returning. I told them: “I fully understand your wish to send me there to study. But in my opinion I cannot learn much in the Soviet Union. I can learn the theory of socialism and communism as much as I want by reading the works of Marx and Lenin without having to go to the Soviet Union. What we must learn is the strategy and tactics of the Korean revolution, which we cannot learn in the Soviet Union. Our people know best about the Korean revolution. In order to find the correct strategy, tactics and methodology of the Korean revolution we must go among our own people. We should go among them and share weal and woe with them to find a way to accomplish the Korean revolution. Instead of going to the Soviet Union, I will go among our own people with you comrades to learn the theory and method of the Korean revolution.” Later I went among the people with my comrades. On looking back upon those days, it was really fortuitous that I went among the people and carried out the revolutionary struggle without going to the Soviet Union to study. Because we went among the people and waged the revolutionary struggle relying on them, we were able to build strong armed forces and liberate the country, and, after liberation, we were able to maintain the line of independence in politics, self-reliance in the economy and national defence, without falling prey to flunkeyism and dogmatism.

Our officials should always live among the masses, sharing weal
and woe with them and mobilizing them, so as to solve every problem. The New Year Address, too, emphasized that officials should go among the masses. It stressed the need to apply the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method thoroughly and observe the Taean work system, the essence of which is that the officials must go deep among the masses. You can understand the essence if you study carefully the New Year Address.

You should not try to evade being held responsible for what you have done or act from expediency, but develop work boldly putting your shoulders to the wheel in carrying out difficult and heavy tasks.

You must pluck up your courage and strive to scale the peak of the Third Seven-Year Plan. If we hit the main targets of this plan by working hard the economy of our country will develop onto a higher stage and a new, bright prospect will open for us.

If we make our people better off and display the advantages of the socialist system to the full through successful economic construction, we can reunify the country. At present, in south Korea ever increasing are the numbers of people, particularly student youths, who have armed themselves with the Juche idea of our Party and fight to materialize it, and the trend of the anti-US struggle is mounting higher. The south Korean people are raising their voices against the military fascist dictatorship and for the democratization of their society. In the “presidential election” held at the end of last year in south Korea the majority of voters clearly expressed their opposition to the continuation of military government and their desire for civilian government. The point at issue is that we should build socialism successfully so that the south Korean people will feel the true advantages of the socialist system established in the northern half of Korea. This is very important for national reunification. Whether the socialist system of our country displays its advantages to the full or not depends largely on how the senior economic officials work. Our socialist system is a really good system. People who have long lived under a capitalist system also admire the advantages of our socialist system once they visit our country. The Rev. Kim Song Rak, who had
long lived in the United States, was one such person. As an American resident who hailed from Pyongyang, he visited his homeland saying that he wished to see Pyongyang once more before his death. His father was one of the leaders of the March 1 Popular Uprising. When he was visiting the homeland he wished to meet me, on account of his having known my father when they were attending the Pyongyang Sungsil Middle School. When I was on a visit to Samjiyon I met him. He said: “The socialist system of the homeland is really good. Such a paradise on earth cannot be found anywhere else. ‘Heaven’ itself cannot be better than this land. There is no need to go to ‘Heaven’, leaving such a paradise on earth.”

Choe Tok Sin too was attracted to us because the socialist system of our country is a good one. He said that our socialist system is really the “terrestrial paradise” which the Chondoist religion preaches about.

Yesterday we saw an art performance staged by the schoolchildren of Pyongyang to greet the New Year. Children in capitalist countries cannot play as our children do, no matter how they may try. The children from rich families cannot learn to play musical instruments because they loaf away their time committing delinquency and those from poor families cannot either, even though they are promising, because they have neither instruments nor teachers. So such talented children as ours cannot appear under the capitalist system. Such talented children can be produced only in such a good socialist system as ours. We must resolutely defend the socialist system of our country, which is the best in the world, and display its advantages to the full.

Since you are people who have grown up under my care and promised to share life and death with me, I believe that you will be faithful to your words and obligations and strive earnestly to scale another peak of economic construction in defiance of any difficulty.

The first major task on which we should concentrate in economic affairs this year is to maintain a high and steady level of production in factories and enterprises.

A prodigious economic foundation has already been prepared in our country. If the factories and enterprises which have already been built
put production on a steady basis we will be able to carry out the Third Seven-Year Plan successfully and make our people considerably better off. The Sunchon Cement Complex alone is able to produce three million tons of cement annually. In addition, if we concentrate efforts on the August 2 Cement Factory, the Chonnaeri Cement Complex and other cement factories to put production on a steady basis, we can satisfy the demand for cement. The first and foremost economic task at present is to put production on a steady basis.

In order to guarantee a high and steady rate of production in factories and enterprises, we should provide them with adequate raw and other materials, organize cooperative production in detail and ensure smooth transportation. In other words, to put production on a steady basis at factories and enterprises, the senior economic officials should carefully organize and manage production. Whether factories and enterprises maintain a steady production or not depends on how the economic officials organize and manage production. Today I will not dwell on putting production on a steady basis in factories and enterprises, because I have talked in detail many times about this matter.

The second of the major tasks in economic work this year is to implement the export-first policy of the Party to the letter.

We should give definite priority to export this year by living up to the motto of export-first. If we do not carry out the export plan, we will not be able to buy oil, coke and other materials and fuel from other countries. Therefore, we must fulfil the export plan unquestioningly. Those factories and enterprises which have not fulfilled their export plans should be recognized as having failed in their tasks, even though they have hit their production targets.

The third of the major economic tasks for this year is to carry out the agriculture-first policy of the Party.

Last year senior officials in the agricultural sector did not give proper guidance to farming, and so they could not fully meet the requirements of the Juche farming method.

Last year maize was planted directly in all farming areas, with the
result that we could not have a good crop. When some officials suggested direct planting of maize last spring, I explained: direct sowing of maize is risky because it has a merit and, at the same time, a defect; if it does not rain within ten days after sowing, many of the seeds will not sprout, and if you plant again because of the failure of the first sowing, the right season will pass; or if you replant only the missing ones the plants which are sown again later will be different in height from those which were planted first. Therefore, you have to plant maize directly only in irrigated fields and not in non-irrigated fields. However, the officials ignored these factors and had maize planted directly in large areas.

Last year neither the tending of rice seedlings nor rice transplanting were done properly. Some officials said that a quick way of cultivating cold-frame rice seedlings had been found, and this method would save vinyl sheets, so we reduced the import of them. This resulted in the failure to grow sturdy rice seedlings. Actually, rice seedlings should be grown in seedbeds for about 50 days until they have six to seven leaves before being transplanted. This is a scientific conclusion I made after testing in different methods while giving personal guidance to agriculture for many years. Rice seedlings which are transplanted before they have six or seven leaves, have difficulty in growing properly, and those which are transplanted when they have more than six or seven leaves, after a longer time under the cover of vinyl sheets, are too slender to tiller thickly. But last year a quick way of cultivating cold-frame rice seedlings was applied, in which rice seedlings were transplanted after growing for only 30 or 40 days. So it was impossible to have a good harvest. In farming, nobody should dictate to everybody a method that he has tested for only one or two years.

Last year the agricultural sector did not finish rice transplanting in the right season either. Ideally rice transplanting should be completed before May 25. While giving personal guidance to South Hwanghae Province in the past, I compared the yield of rice transplanted on May 25 with that transplanted on June 5, and found that the former produced one ton more per hectare than the latter. That was because the
former grew in better conditions. Transplanting rice around May 25 is best for the tillering of rice. The tillering period of rice transplanted on June 5 is too hot, so it cannot put forth many tillers.

Last year, weeding and application of fertilizer, too, were neglected. People or animals ask or cry for food when they are hungry, but crops such as rice or maize cannot express their demands even if they are in want of nutriments. Therefore, fertilizer must be applied on time so that crops can fully absorb nutriments. Fertilizer should be applied on time, but not all at the same time; it should be divided up and applied in adequate doses. Applying fertilizer all at once instead of in measured portions brings about poor results. After transplanting and during tillering young rice plants must be manured. Manuring after transplanting makes young rice plants strike roots quickly. So, without manuring the process is delayed by so much, hindering the growth of rice. Just as with people, skipping a meal is not a big problem for grown-ups, but if a child skips a meal it hinders his or her growth by so much. That is why I always emphasize that nursery and kindergarten children should be provided fully with nourishing food.

Several years ago I instructed that paddy fields should be fertilized in measured stages, when harrowing is over, when the transplanted seedlings take root, twice when the crop puts forth tillers, and further when irregular growth has to be regulated, when the plants form ears, and finally when they develop seeds. I established this method based on the firsthand experience I gained giving personal guidance to the farming sector from 1973. The fact that applying small doses of fertilizer is better than applying the whole quantity at one time is what I found out through giving personal guidance to cooperative farms as well as through personally testing at my experimental farm.

The poor results in the agricultural sector last year are entirely attributable to the inefficient guidance of our officials, not the bad weather. I asked the Chairman of the Pyongyang City Rural Economy Committee the reason for the poor farming results in his area. He replied that it was attributable to the low percentage of sunshine. That was not correct. Farm No. 7 had a good crop under the same sunshine
and produced nine tons of maize per hectare.

For a good harvest this year we must faithfully follow the Juche farming method. In addition, a struggle must be launched to make the land fertile by manuring it and to provide fertilizer on time. If fertilizer is not produced and supplied on time and the whole quantity is provided at one time at the end of the farming season, it is useless. Fertilizer must be produced beforehand and supplied to the rural communities for application on time.

The fourth of the major economic tasks this year is to step up major construction projects.

It is only when we step up the major construction projects and finish them as soon as possible that we can increase the economic power of the country and successfully reach the ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction.

First of all, we should speed up the construction necessary for increasing iron and steel production capacity. Only when iron and steel are mass-produced by increasing their production capacity can we build power stations and find a full solution to the problem of coal and all other problems. Without iron and steel nothing is possible. Iron and machinery are the king of industry. Even if we are only to buy the materials we need we must produce more steel. Recently the price of steel has been rising on the international market, so I have been told. So, when the price is good we must produce lots of steel and sell it.

We must finish the second stage of the expansion project of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex as soon as possible, make up for the missing processes of the Songjin Steel Complex and build another steel mill of two-million-ton capacity at the Chollima Steel Complex.

Sincere efforts should be concentrated on the expansion project of the Musan Mining Complex. Without increasing iron ore concentrate production capacity by expanding the Musan Mining Complex we cannot successfully attain the goal for steel production under the Third Seven-Year Plan. The Administration Council and the commissions and ministries concerned must keep a tight rein on the expansion project of the complex and speed it up. As soon as the second-stage
expansion project of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex has been completed the work force should be moved from there to the expansion project of the Musan Mining Complex, and some of the workers should be transferred to the Chollima Steel Complex for the preparations for building a steel mill of two-million-ton capacity.

We must step up the building of power stations. As I mentioned in the New Year Address, the Thaechon Power Station, the Wiwon Power Station and the Sunchon Thermal Power Station must be completed as soon as possible and generators placed in all the barrage power stations. In addition, the construction of the Namgang Power Station and the Kumyagang Power Station must be speeded up. There will be no problem in the building of power stations if adequate cement is provided. It is quite possible to supply cement, because every province produces it.

Efforts must be exerted to the construction to increase coal production. Without coal we cannot develop other industrial sectors rapidly. So I specially emphasized in the New Year Address the need to increase coal production. The coal mining sector should direct its efforts at expanding the coal mines in the Anju area, the Hamyon Coal Mine and other coal mines in the northern region and opening up new coal mines.

We must accelerate the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex. When it has been built we will be able to solve the problems we have with people’s clothing and fertilizer; we can also make protein feed from methanol produced there so as to provide people with meat. The construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex is vital to improving the people’s living standard. We must create a production capacity of 100,000 tons of vinalon in this complex within this year.

A fertilizer factory should be built at the same time. If the Sunchon Vinalon Complex produces 900,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer we can sell some 200,000 tons of it and buy potassic fertilizer, even if we cannot produce the latter right now.

We must step up the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex and finish the expansion project of the February 8 Cement
Complex as soon as possible. If the February 8 Cement Complex makes up for its missing processes and increases its production capacity, it alone can produce 1.4 to 1.5 million tons of cement annually.

We must make haste to open up a glauberite mine. The development of a glauberite mine will make it possible to produce the gypsum needed for cement production as well as sodium carbonate.

In order to obtain enough caustic soda, it is necessary to increase the production capacity of the caustic soda workshop of the February 8 Vinalon Complex. In addition, it would be advisable to build a caustic soda factory in Sunchon from the second half of next year.

We must press on with the construction of Kwangbok Street. As we have already announced to the world that we are to hold the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students in Pyongyang, the completion of the building of Kwangbok Street is urgent. If we do not finish the construction on time we will not be able to host the festival properly. If we supply cement and steel alone, there will be no big problem in the building of the street. The whole country should rally round for the completion of this project.

The fifth of the major economic tasks this year is to find a solution to the transportation problem.

To this end, it is urgent to finish the laying of the northern railway line. The Hyesan-Huju line and the Unbong-Jasong line were opened to traffic at the end of last year. I was told that the people there were delighted. When the Hyesan-Huju line was opened to traffic the local people shed tears of joy. Formerly, they had to cover hundreds of kilometres on foot to the nearest railway station, but now the trains pass their villages, so it is natural that they were delighted. If we finish the first stage of the northern railway line now under construction and lay the Hyesan-Musan line later, we can ensure transportation even in an emergency. The present east coast railway line is unsuitable for emergency use. During the Fatherland Liberation War the enemy bombed this line continuously from the air and from warships to destroy it, so we suffered a lot of trouble. When the enemy destroyed
the railway at that time our people would come out as one to rehabilitate it in a short span of time. Because all the people powerfully supported the front in this way, we were able to emerge victorious in the Fatherland Liberation War. Needless to say, if the enemy destroys the east coast railway line in a possible war in future, our people will rehabilitate it in a short span of time as they did in the past war. However, it would be safer for us to have another line by laying the northern railway line. If we complete this line and open it to traffic, it will demonstrate the country’s power again.

Cement and rails should be supplied to the northern railway project as needed. I was told that the morale of its builders is high. They say that if they are provided with 13,000 tons of rails they will finish the project within this year. So the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex had better launch a campaign to produce the 13,000 tons of rails required.

For smooth transportation, railways should be made heavy-duty and switched over to electric traction.

Steam locomotives cannot ensure smooth transportation. If only sufficient copper wire is supplied it will not be difficult to switch the railways over to electric traction. In solving the transportation problem, switching the railways over to electric traction by supplying copper wire is better in many aspects than supplying coal for steam locomotives. The electrification of railways should begin from the sections to which it is difficult to supply coal.

Railways should be made heavy-duty. If the Pyongyang-Chongjin line is made heavy-duty we can ease the strain on transportation without double-tracking. The double-tracking project of this line would be difficult because many tunnels would have to be dug. But it would be reasonable to undertake this project if transport is strained again even after the line has been made heavy-duty. If we are to build railways for heavy-duty purposes, we should produce plenty of heavy-duty rails, eight-axle electric locomotives and waggons of 100-ton capacity. If rails on the main trunk are replaced with heavy-duty rails, the former may be sent to the tideland reclamation sites and other construction sites. In order to make railways
heavy-duty, the rail transportation sector should be provided with 12,000 tons of steel per month. Only then will it be possible to produce eight-axle electric locomotives and waggons of 100-ton capacity required for making the railways heavy-duty. The senior economic officials should not underestimate the importance of rail transport, but direct positive efforts to switching the railways over to electric traction and making them heavy-duty.

We must push ahead with aquaculture. This is one of the important ways to obtain plenty of seafood. If aquaculture is undertaken on an area of 100,000 hectares it will produce great results. You say that aquaculture is possible right now on an area of some 30,000 hectares. If mixed farming is carried out on that much area we can obtain a considerably large amount of seafood. If mussels are bred there, 12 million tons of mussels will be produced at the rate of 400 tons per hectare; 12 million tons of mussels will yield six million tons of meat by estimating their shells to be half of them. Such an amount of mussel meat would be surplus to the needs of all the people in the northern half of Korea. It would be good to make meat rolls or sausages from ground mussel.

Putting production on a steady basis, carrying out the export-first policy and agriculture-first policy of the Party, directing efforts to capital construction and improving rail transport—these are the five major tasks that we must concentrate on this year. The Administration Council, and the commissions and ministries under its jurisdiction must concentrate all their efforts on the implementation of these five major tasks.

In order to give proper guidance to economic affairs this year, I am going to dispatch the senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council to the provinces as the authorized representatives. They must work conscientiously, full of confidence and courage, and with a determination to bring about a fresh upswing in economic construction this year. They should go down to the provinces immediately, as planned.

Present at this meeting are the chairmen and ministers who have
charge of the chemical, metal, machine, coal and power industries. You should work hard to put production on a steady basis in your sectors. As your work is very important, you must fulfil your duties faithfully.

The Economic Policy Commission of the Central People’s Committee should give correct guidance to labour administration, financial work and price assessment, so that the socialist economy of our country will produce greater results. We must never cherish any illusions about such things as reform and restructuring, which are being tried in other countries.

Since we have clear-cut lines and policies, we need not launch any reform or restructuring. Once a foreigner said when he met me: “You have built a prosperous country on the debris of war, as we see today; all your people are well-off and everything is going well. I completely agree with you in not following reform or restructuring policies.” As we have not made any mistake and all the people support the Party’s lines and policies, we need no reform. When any deviation is revealed a reform may be necessary, but why should we launch a reform when everything is going well? Our Party’s lines and policies are absolutely correct. Every item of work will be successful when we follow the Party’s lines and policies to the letter.

I wish you great success in your work in the new year.
ON A FRESH ADVANCE IN SCIENCE, EDUCATION AND HEALTH SERVICE FOR THE PEOPLE

Concluding Speech at the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea
March 7 to 11, 1988

At this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee we have discussed the task of making a fresh, revolutionary advance in science and education and improving health service for the people. All the matters discussed at this plenary meeting are important.

This plenary meeting must initiate a new advance in science, education and public health service.

1. ON THE WORK OF SCIENCE AND EDUCATION

Many comrades have participated in the discussion about how we should develop science and technology quickly and improve education.

We have made long strides in the work of science and education in the past period.

Immediately after liberation we were very short of technical cadres in the north of the country. At that time there were only twelve or so intellectuals who had studied natural science, including Comrades Jong Jun Thaek, Kang Yong Chang and Ro Thae Sok. Before
liberation there was an imperial university in Seoul, Korea, but it was no better than a branch school of an imperial university in Japan. In Pyongyang there was a college, but no university. Consequently, there were not many intellectuals in our country. A number of intellectuals had specialized in literature and law, but natural scientists could be counted on the fingers of both hands. Most of even this small number had come to me from Seoul after liberation, and only a few were native to the northern half. Today, however, the number of our intellectuals has swollen to 1.3 million. This means that we have trained at least 30,000 intellectuals annually during the past 40 years. It is a great success and a matter of pride that we have trained an army of 1.3 million intellectuals, with the help of the several intellectuals as teachers at the outset. I always proudly tell this fact to foreign delegations visiting our country.

Our Party’s policy on science and education is absolutely correct. We can say that our country has been leading all the socialist countries in its tempo of scientific and educational progress under the most trying circumstances. The situation in our country has been much more difficult than that in any other socialist country. Other socialist countries were, in the past, capitalist countries, though not developed, or semicolonies, so that they had more intellectuals than we had. Completely a colony of Japanese imperialism, our country had few intellectuals. We started virtually from scratch. However, we have now reached a very high level.

There are now 244 universities and colleges in our Republic, though there was no university in former days. When we were going to establish the first university after liberation, many people objected to the idea, asking how we could do it when nothing was available for the project, but we said we should set up the university all the sooner, because we lacked everything, and we founded the university in spite of many difficulties. As a result, we have many universities, as you see today, and also an army of 1.3 million intellectuals. Our people’s cultural level in general is now very high. Nearly all adults below fifty have received secondary education. Not many countries in the world
have so many intellectuals with university education and such highly cultured people as our country does. Our country is literally a land of education. It has also laid solid material and technological foundations on which to develop science.

You can be justly proud of the great success made in science and education under our Party’s correct leadership.

Our Party has not only set an absolutely correct policy for the development of science and education, but taken various important measures to carry it out. However, shortcomings have also been revealed in implementing the Party’s policy on science and education.

I shall now dwell on the tasks of improving science and education.

We are now living in the age of science, and we face the very important task of developing science and technology rapidly. We must develop science and technology quickly in many fields in step with world trends in modern science and in keeping with the present requirements of socialist construction in our country.

We must direct efforts to the rapid development of electronics, biology and the science of thermal energy for the immediate period ahead.

Developing them quickly is a very pressing demand for the solution of various problems arising now in socialist construction and for success in carrying out the long-term objectives set in the Third Seven-Year Plan.

Extensive introduction of automation, robots and computers through the development of electronics makes it possible to increase productivity, develop the productive forces quickly and, especially, free the working people completely from exhausting labour in the various branches of the national economy. Our communist ideal is to relieve the people from labour-consuming work and ensure the most efficient production. To translate this ideal into reality, we must develop the electronics industry with determination. The electronics industry is a communist industry, so to speak.

To develop the electronics industry is also a pressing need for strengthening defence power. Modern war is electronic-wave warfare,
electronic warfare. The “Star Wars” programme clamoured by the US imperialists can also be considered to be an electronic-war programme. Rapid development of the electronics industry is essential for increasing defence power.

We can say that our electronics industry is at a low level, but we are not too late as yet. If our scientists and technicians get down to the task and work hard, they can overtake other socialist countries and outstrip them in the electronics industry as well.

We have the scientific forces and material and technological foundations needed for rapid development of the electronics industry. We have been unable to achieve the greater success that should have been possible in this industry because the Administration Council dispersed the forces by inefficient guidance of scientific research.

We must draw up a correct three-year plan for the development of science and technology, as was pointed out in the report, and ensure that the state concentrates efforts on developing electronics and the electronics industry. We must radically improve the guidance of this work. Then a fresh advance will be made in this field.

Developing biology is very important in finding solutions to the problems of food, clothing and housing for the people.

Putting great effort into research for the development of biology is now a world trend.

Our scientists have succeeded in obtaining bacteriological protein feed from methanol and thus opened a wide prospect of sharply increasing the production of poultry and livestock. I have had this protein feed tested on chickens at the farm in Jangsuwon, and the result was excellent.

If we produce one million tons of carbide annually at the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, to be built in the future, we shall produce 300,000 tons of bacteriological protein feed annually from the methanol obtained in the process of carbide production. Three hundred thousand tons are equal to 450,000 to 500,000 tons of soy beans in terms of nutritive value. This is a tremendous amount. Soy beans are not a high-yielding crop, and at least 300,000 hectares of land are needed to
produce 450,000 to 500,000 tons of soy beans. If we mass-produce bacteriological protein feed, we shall be able to develop poultry and livestock farming and increase meat production quickly.

Lysine also plays an important role in increasing meat production. The production of lysine in our country started a long time ago. I have had lysine tested on pigs; half a litter of 12 young pigs was fed lysine; half, not. The pigs that ate lysine grew much faster than the rest.

Lysine is also good for humans. Children eating it quickly grow taller, and their physical development is good. Some time ago I gave an assignment to the chief secretary of the Pyongyang City Party Committee to have lysine produced in Pyongyang and to make lysine bread for children, so that the children ate it every day. Since then Pyongyang children have grown taller, and their physical development has improved.

If we develop biology, we can find an excellent solution to the problem of accelerating the growth and development of animals and plants. In the field of science we must devote great effort to biological research and develop biology quickly in order to actively contribute to implementation of the Party’s policy of satisfactorily solving the problems of food, clothing and housing for the people.

To develop the science of thermal energy is of tremendous significance in resolving the problem of energy for industry.

Since the outbreak of the worldwide oil crisis the science of thermal energy has been the subject of widespread research, and various measures are being taken to make economic use of it. However, our officials are not much concerned about making economic and effective use of thermal energy.

Anthracite is called black gold in our country. It is used to produce carbide, coking coal and steel. It is fed into nearly all the major factories and enterprises in our key industries as fuel or basic raw material. In spite of its great value, our officials are not striving to economize on it. In consequence, high-heat anthracite is being used for local industries, hostels and homes, which can manage with low-heat coal.

How indifferent our officials are to the necessity of using low-heat
coal as a substitute for high-heat anthracite is illustrated by the fact that officials of the Ministry of External Economic Affairs have signed a contract with a foreign country to import boilers needing high-heat anthracite, the boilers to be installed in the thermal power station now under construction in East Pyongyang. Short supply of anthracite to the Pyongyang Thermal Power Station in operation is holding up power production. If boilers feeding on high-heat coal are installed in the newly built power station under these circumstances, it will be difficult to meet the demand for coal, so I instructed that the newly built East Pyongyang Thermal Power Station have boilers installed that could burn brown coal from the Anju area. A short time ago low-heat coal from the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex was fed into the Chongjin Thermal Power Complex on an experimental basis. The result was said to be good.

Meta-anthracite, of which there are large deposits in North Hwanghae and Kangwon Provinces, can also be used as fuel. I have heard that in some parts of the country no small amount of meta-anthracite is being used as fuel. The officials of the Administration Council and the State Planning Commission, however, are not taking any measures to use it as fuel, because they do not go out to see things in the field.

I emphasized a long time ago the need to use widely for local industries the meta-anthracite abundant in Kangwon and North Hwanghae Provinces and the low-heat coal produced by the Kumya Youth Coal Mine and the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex. If the senior officials had taken active measures to use meta-anthracite and low-heat coal in accordance with the Party’s policy, we would not worry about the coal shortage.

It is necessary to give our officials and working people a correct understanding of the importance of the fuel problem. The great importance of widespread use of low-heat coal in our country to economize on high-heat anthracite must especially be brought home to everyone. We must thus ensure that high-heat anthracite is used only for iron and carbide production and other key industries that badly need high-heat coal.

Already in my report to the Fourth Congress of the Party in 1961, I
set the task of completing the method of oxygen-blast carbide production. Our scientists have studied this method and succeeded in its experimentation.

We can say that oxygen is now a most valuable fuel and raw material in our country. Enriched oxygen can be used for blast furnaces at ironworks, electric furnaces at steelworks and all other processes needing high heat.

These days I am planning to create a one-million-ton carbide production capacity in the Sunchon Vinalon Complex in the initial stage and then increase it to 1.5 million tons sometime in the future. If we produce 1.5 million tons of carbide, our country will be very rich. If the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, now under construction, produces only one million tons of carbide, we shall be able to obtain from it 750,000 tons of methanol, 100,000 tons of vinalon, 900,000 tons of nitrogen fertilizer, 250,000 tons of vinyl chloride, 300,000 tons of bacteriological protein feed and various other chemical products.

On a recent visit to our country a foreign economic delegation marvelled at the Sunchon Vinalon Complex under construction when they went to inspect it. They said that if we produce carbide and export it to their country, they will send us whatever we request.

If we produce carbide in large quantities, we can export it, but exporting raw carbide is not lucrative. We should make polyvinyl alcohol or something like that from carbide and then export it. There are now large foreign demands for polyvinyl alcohol.

The oxygen-blast method must be introduced in ironworks, steelworks, smelteries and all other establishments that use heat. By oxygen-blast method you can raise the temperature to 3,000 degrees. This is high enough to melt iron ore and whatever we need to.

In order to ensure the widespread introduction of the oxygen-blast method in many economic branches, we must produce a large number of oxygen plants, not only large ones, but small ones, including sizes of 50 cubic metres and 100 cubic metres. This will also enable us to conduct testing for introduction of the oxygen-blast method.

If we develop electronics, biology and the science of thermal
energy and solve the scientific and technological problems in these fields alone, we can further accelerate construction of the socialist economy and raise the standard of living of the people more rapidly. We must, therefore, concentrate our efforts on developing electronics, biology and the science of thermal energy in carrying out the three-year plan for the development of science and technology.

Establishing Juche firmly is important in scientific research. Scientists must maintain the Juche stand firmly and work hard to resolve the pressing scientific and technological problems arising in speeding up the Juche orientation, modernization and scientific development of the national economy, in carrying out the long-term objectives of the economic building of socialism, and in raising the standard of living of the people. In addition, the worship of foreign countries must be eradicated from the minds of scientists. Even when introducing foreign science and technology, we must adopt what is needed in our country to suit our situation.

In order to ensure success in scientific research, we must provide scientists and technicians with adequate working conditions and see to it that they improve their qualifications quickly.

Many years ago I took measures to allot 0.5 per cent of the total output of our materials to the scientific research sector in order to ensure the supply of materials needed for scientific research. Subsequently, I have criticized the officials concerned more than once, because this task is not carried out properly. In spite of this the officials of the Administration Council are not yet implementing it as they should. In consequence, construction of the Phyongsong science base has been delayed, and the pilot plant has not been built as planned, so that scientific research is being retarded. It is wrong that the Administration Council has not supplied the small amount of materials authorized for scientific research, on the excuse of strain on current production. In future, you must implement to the letter the task of supplying 0.5 per cent of the total output of materials to the scientific research sector.

Scientists and technicians must improve their qualifications
markedly. Without raising the level of their qualifications to meet the requirements of the developing situation, it would be impossible to carry out their research tasks qualitatively and develop science and technology quickly in our country.

In order to raise the level of their qualifications quickly, scientists and technicians must create a revolutionary atmosphere of study. We must provide them with study conditions, give them clear-cut assignments for study and establish the discipline of summing up the results of their study. It is especially important that scientists acquire the habit of studying on their own accord. If they are compelled to study under control, they will not acquire profound knowledge.

We must conduct effective education in the Juche idea among scientists and technicians and equip them firmly with our Party’s revolutionary idea. If they are not armed solidly with the revolutionary idea of our Party, some of them may betray their motherland, going against the Party and the state, as in some other socialist countries. We must not think that all that is needed for natural scientists is a knowledge of natural science and technology. Scientists and technicians who do not serve the Party and revolution, their country and their fellow people are useless to us, no matter how rich a knowledge of science and technology they may possess. Our scientists and technicians must be modelled on the Juche idea. Only then can they contribute truly to a Juche-oriented national economy, modernizing it and placing it on a scientific basis, to increasing the nation’s economic power and to developing science and technology.

Our scientists and technicians must have a strong determination to achieve greater success in scientific research for the Party and their fellow people, adhering firmly to the principle of collectivism, “One for all and all for one.” They must not make themselves a commodity on any account. In other words, they must not think of making money by studying and doing scientific research, as it is a practice under capitalism.

Officials in the field of science, scientists and technicians must acquire the revolutionary spirit of fortitude.

Our Party is a working-class party, a revolutionary party. It is
imperative that our officials, scientists and technicians have the revolutionary spirit of fortitude. Some of them lack the revolutionary spirit and complain of conditions. They must not do it.

Our Party has constructed the Grand People’s Study House and provided our scientists, technicians and all other people with study conditions of which we can be proud to the world. If they make good use of the study house with great enthusiasm, scientists and technicians will be able to learn a lot. Some officials, however, think scientists and technicians cannot make good use of the study house, because there is no hotel for them, and request that a hotel for scientists be built as soon as possible. If scientists and technicians are enthusiastic for study, they will come to study at the Grand People’s Study House, staying in other people’s houses. Our officials are so accustomed to working and living in ideal conditions that they behave like rich men’s sons.

I have been told that the Hamhung Branch Institute under the Academy of Sciences has not yet constructed the pilot plant planned for the Sapho District, because lorries, excavators and bulldozers are not available. This is also an expression of lack of the revolutionary spirit of fortitude. When they undertook the Pothong River improvement project the year following liberation, our people did not even know the word “excavator”. They did the work with shovels and picks in a short time. When constructing Phyongnam Irrigation after the war, they did it by carrying loads on their backs. If our officials buckle down to the project, they will be perfectly able to build a small pilot plant even without large machines. We must, of course, mechanize work and free the working people from exhausting labour. But officials must abandon the bad idea that no construction is possible without using lorries, bulldozers or excavators.

We must improve the administration of scientific and technological work.

Judging from the discussions at this plenary meeting, I can see that the shortcomings revealed in scientific research and technological development are due mainly to inefficient administration of scientific and technological endeavours.
The State Commission of Science and Technology is not administering scientific and technological efforts properly. Because the administration of this work is inefficient, many valuable inventions and new designs by workers and three-revolution teams and new solutions to scientific and technological problems found by scientists are not introduced into production in good time. The problem of boilers burning meta-anthracite, an important item in solving the fuel problem, would already have been resolved if the task had been included in the plan for the development of science and technology and pushed forward with the mobilization of scientists and technicians.

Research institutes keep their doors closed to each other or to other institutions with a self-centred attitude toward research work. This kind of shortcoming is also due to the neglect of unified supervision of scientific research. A certain industrial sector has a lot of modern equipment and various latest techniques that other sectors do not possess. If the work were organized efficiently, equipment and technical means could be used effectively by different economic sectors on the basis of mutual accommodation. In socialist society the administration of scientific and technological efforts must ensure cooperation among different sectors and institutes, instead of encouraging competition among them, as in capitalist society.

The work of circulating scientific and technological information is not being conducted properly. A few years ago I listened to information that had been tape-recorded as new technical data. It was about the great success of a foreign country in cultivating seaweed through introduction of the technique of summer seedlings. It was a method they had learned from our country. The State Commission of Science and Technology was disseminating the information as a latest technique. This alone is eloquent proof that the administration of science and technology is not being done properly.

This commission is not working as it should, mainly because the Administration Council is not concerned about the development of science and technology and fails to give correct guidance to the commission.
Although there is a vice-premier for science and education in the Administration Council, he has been seconded frequently to do diplomatic work and has failed to perform his own duty. He has played the role of roving special envoy for the Ministry of Foreign Affairs. No one in the Administration Council takes the responsibility to delve into the work of science and technology, make demands and take measures to solve problems. The Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee is not exposing shortcomings in scientific and technological work to criticism as it should.

The Administration Council must pay close attention to the development of science and technology and improve its guidance of the work of the State Commission of Science and Technology. During the absence of the vice-premier for science and education, the Premier himself must work with the chairmen of the State Commission of Science and Technology and the Education Commission.

The State Commission of Science and Technology must take responsibility to organize and direct the revolution in science and technology. It must plan the development of science and technology and establish a system for cooperation among scientists and technicians. It must also organize in a responsible manner the effective use of laboratory equipment among research institutes on the principle of mutual accommodation.

An important matter in the administration of science and technology is to set appropriate tasks of scientific and technological research in keeping with our situation and organize the assignments properly. Some research institutes are now wasting time and effort by studying items that have already been introduced into production in other countries after successful research. Such a situation must not recur. Foreign successes should be introduced by importing them or by learning them from the countries concerned, not by researching them.

We must strengthen the review of scientific and technological research. When I was Premier of the Cabinet, I used to issue the plan for the development of science and technology and made it a rule to sum up its implementation. The science sector regularly sums up the
results of its research work. The review is made in such a way as to confirm the research tasks set by the Party, point up the successes and shortcomings in carrying them out, and take necessary measures. Therefore, defence science and technology is developing rapidly. By contrast, the Administration Council is neglecting review of this work. From now on, the Administration Council must frequently summon the chairman of the State Commission of Science and Technology, the president of the Academy of Sciences and other officials concerned and make a regular review of the implementation of the plan for the development of science and technology.

To proceed, I shall refer briefly to educational work.

The most important task in education is to improve the quality of education. The present level of education is not high. Without improving the quality of education it will be impossible to train students as able revolutionaries who are sound politically and ideologically and well qualified in science and technology.

In order to educate students to be revolutionaries, we must give them good education and edification from senior middle school through university. Their education must be devoted to the cultivation of a high ideological consciousness and rich general scientific knowledge. These two qualities are essential for training well-qualified revolutionaries.

Helping the students acquire high ideological quality is very important. Attaining high ideological quality means arming themselves with the Juche idea of our Party and cultivating loyalty to the revolution, to the Party, to the working class and to the people. A man lacking high ideological consciousness is useless, no matter how rich his knowledge of science and technology. Universities and senior middle schools must help the students attain high ideological quality and, on this basis, acquire knowledge of science and technology.

Students and schoolchildren must be given good education to prevent any occurrence of delinquency among them. In our society, unlike a capitalist society such as south Korea, there are no conditions for the emergence of delinquents. In our country all the children and young people belong to the Children’s Union or the League of Socialist
Working Youth and lead an organized life. They always receive education in the Juche idea, including education in revolutionary traditions, class education and communist education, from their school, the League of Socialist Working Youth and the Children’s Union. However, delinquency may appear if good ideological education is not given and extracurricular activities are not well organized.

There were many orphans during the war. At first they were not given proper education, so some became vagrants and delinquents. We established schools for war orphans in many parts of the country and educated them. Many of the orphans educated in these schools became labour innovators and Labour Heroes.

We must continue to intensify political and ideological education, especially education in revolutionary traditions, among our students. In this way we shall train them ideologically to be heirs to the revolutionary cause of Juche.

We must improve the teaching of foreign languages. A knowledge of foreign languages is needed to read foreign books and learn advanced science and technology from other countries. Although we want to develop tourism, we have a shortage of people who speak foreign languages. We must step up the teaching of foreign languages to ensure every student knows at least one foreign language.

To improve the quality of education, we must improve teacher training and improve teachers’ qualifications.

The quality of education is low at present, mainly because teacher training is not up to the mark. Of course, there is a well-regulated system of teacher training in our country. Kindergarten and primary school teachers are produced by teacher training colleges, and senior middle school teachers by the universities of education. The problem is that the quality of teacher training is poor. Good brood hens breed good chickens. Likewise, good teachers who have been produced through improved teacher training can teach their pupils well. Teacher training colleges and universities of education must improve the education of their students and produce a large number of well-qualified teachers.
As matters now stand, there are many teachers who have not received teacher training. They must obligatorily take at least the correspondence course of the teacher training college or the university of education.

In order to improve the quality of education, you should refrain from seconding students to social labour without discrimination. In former days circumstances in the country obliged us to involve students in social labour. Our country has attained its present level of development, because we have educated students even though they did some work. Moderate labour is not bad for the students. In future, students should be seconded to social labour only for the limited period authorized by the state.

We must intensify the edification of teachers.

Some officials think that the quality of education is low, because teachers are not accorded good treatment. They are wrong. A teacher who, treated and paid well, is loyal to his duty and not loyal otherwise, cannot train revolutionaries. We do not need such a teacher. The low level of teachers’ qualifications and their inefficiency in teaching are not ascribable to bad treatment, but to the unsatisfactory ideological education of teachers. An attempt to improve education by raising teachers’ pay and by according them better treatment is capitalistic.

During the anti-Japanese armed struggle people in the guerrilla zone preferred to join the Young Volunteers or the Red Guard and take up arms to fight the Japanese imperialists rather than do the work of the Children’s Corps or teach pupils. We had to persuade them to work for the Children’s Corps or teach at school. Of course, some people, like Comrade Kim Jong Suk, volunteered to do Children’s Corps work or teach.

The senior officials in charge of education were wrong when they complained that the teachers’ pay was low or that their treatment was unsatisfactory instead of finding the cause in the inefficient edification of teachers.

Apparently officials in the education sector are not educating teachers properly, although they frequently discuss methods of
teaching. They must educate teachers regularly, so that the teachers perform their duty in good faith. In provinces and counties teachers should be summoned to meetings during summer and winter vacations, meetings to criticize them for their shortcomings in educational work and to commend those who have achieved success in education.

Teachers should be held in social esteem.

As I have said on many occasions, respecting teachers is our people’s laudable custom, handed down from our ancestors. Out of their respect for teachers, our people used to invite them preferentially to festivities in their villages. My father was a teacher. When I was a child, I used to see that he was respectfully addressed as Mentor Kim by his villagers and that on New Year’s Day he was given pheasants or something like that. We must improve moral education among the people to encourage them to display highly the laudable custom of respecting teachers throughout our society.

We must provide good educational conditions.

In recent years the senior officials of the Administration Council and the commissions and ministries under the council have paid little attention to educational work. In consequence, there is a shortage of schoolrooms and hostels, and facilities for laboratory work and practice are inadequate.

The insufficient provision of a material basis for schooling should be blamed on the senior officials of the Administration Council and economic sectors, but officials of the educational sector are also to blame for the defect. Educational officials have talked much about the lack of practice tractors and other things, but few have worked hard to solve the problem. Because they have sat about, waiting for someone else to bring them such things, instead of running about to find solutions to their problems, they have not even spent all the money appropriated to them in the state budget.

We must remedy the acute paper shortage as soon as possible to provide textbooks and notebooks for the pupils and students.

The failure to produce a sufficient amount of paper is due largely to the Party officials of provinces, cities and counties. Officials of North
Phyongan Province are not operating the paper mill on the excuse that straw and other things are not available when they have piles of reeds on Pidan Islet, and officials of South Hwanghae Province are not taking active measures to operate the Haeju Paper Complex. This paper mill is a large one, imported from a foreign country, but it is not operated, because the purifying facility has not been completed. There is nothing difficult about its construction. All that is needed is to dig the ground, bury pipes and purify waste water before it is drained off. If the officials of South Hwanghae Province had been enthusiastic about starting paper production as soon as possible, they could have constructed the purifying plant in a short time, even through the mobilization of social labour.

In our country there are large paper mills not only in Sinuiju and Haeju, but in Kilju and Namhung, and small ones in nearly all the counties. All the officials must get down to the operation of paper mills to solve the acute paper problem quickly by whatever means.

Textbooks must be reexamined and recompiled to suit our situation. Many years ago I got the textbooks of the university of agriculture recompiled to suit our situation. When I was directing agriculture myself, I discovered that the textbooks of the university of agriculture contained much translation from foreign books. Large countries with large areas of farmland can afford to farm by the random scattering of seeds over spacious fields, but in our country such a method would not enable us to produce enough food to live on. We must not copy the farming methods of large countries. One year, during my field guidance in North Hamgyong Province, I talked to the scientists of the Academy of Agricultural Science about tobacco cultivation. At that time they said that if more than 12 plants were sown to a phyong, tobacco would not thrive because of poor air circulation. I asked them where they had learnt it, and they answered that they had learnt it at the university of agriculture and that foreign textbooks contained the same information. According to information I obtained from a magazine, at least 30 plants were sown to a phyong in some countries where tobacco was widely cultivated. Subsequently, I got 100,000 plants sown per
hectare in the Kaechon and many other areas on an experimental basis. The results of close planting were excellent. I invited the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees to the experimental farms to see the crop situation, and since then I have got at least 30 plants sown per phyong in other areas as well.

Not everything in the textbooks of large or developed countries is good. Some things suit our situation and some do not. This explains why those who have studied abroad are not so well informed as those trained at our university.

Apparently, the textbooks for the railway university are problematic. On my visit to a foreign country in 1982, they told me that they were planning 10,000-ton hauls of coal by train on each run. It was marvellous that a single train could haul so much coal. On returning from the visit I instructed that the introduction of heavy-duty rail tracks be accelerated. However, our officials said that it was difficult to do it because of the steep gradients of our railways and the weak supporting strength of their bridges. On another visit to that country last year I asked them about the matter, and they answered that their railways were also of steep gradient. So I got 100-ton-capacity waggons produced in our country. It appears that our officials now understand the possibility of using 100-ton wagons on our railways.

Textbooks for our university still contain a lot of outdated information about science and technology. We must reexamine the textbooks for the railway university, commercial university, fishing university and others and recompile them to suit our situation.

2. ON PUBLIC HEALTH SERVICE

The report has dealt with public health service in detail, so I shall only touch upon a few problems.

The socialist health service system established in our country is an
excellent, developed system for the people. The system by which a doctor is in charge of his medical district, for instance, is excellent in that under this system the state takes care of the health of all the people on its own responsibility. We must consolidate and develop this good system to take better care of the people’s health.

We must, before all else, implement thoroughly our Party’s policy on preventive medicine.

To do this, we must further consolidate and develop the doctors’ district responsibility system.

In step with the increase in the number of doctors in the future, we should develop the district responsibility system gradually into one whereby a doctor takes charge of 20, ten and then five households, so as to raise the level of medical service. If we do this, we shall be able to implement our Party’s policy for preventive medicine more thoroughly and improve health protection for the people.

We must advance Koryo medicine in every possible way.

An important task in this work is to increase the production of Koryo drugs.

Koreans have applied these drugs since the remote past. Nowadays, there is a tendency among European people to take Koryo medicines. They also produce and use quantities of injections with Koryo drugs.

A world-renowned foreign physician, who was in our country during the Fatherland Liberation War and has paid several visits to our country in subsequent years, advised me to take Koryo medicine instead of chemical medicines. Korea is the home of Koryo medicines, he added, saying that Koryo medicines and folk remedies are very effective in treatment. If we produce Koryo medicines in large quantities, it will be good for the treatment of diseases and will also help towards solving the problem of drugs, because it will dispense with the need to import a lot of medicines.

Some people are now in the habit of using chemical medicines and ask only for teramycin, syntomycin and various other “cins”. We must help the people understand that Koryo medicines are good for treatment and health protection, so that they use them as far as possible.
Koryo medicines should be highly effective and convenient to take. If these medicines are decocted with much water, as in the old days, they are inconvenient to take. Koryo drugs can be processed into tablets, powder, like *insam* tea, syrup or jelly.

We must plant medicinal herbs widely to increase the production of Koryo drugs. Counties must lay out herb production bases to increase their output and meet their own demands for Koryo medicines. They must also build pharmaceutical factories to produce Koryo medicines. We must organize the dissemination of good methods of making them, so that they can be produced in many parts of the country.

We should improve the people’s hospitals in counties and ri (sub-counties–Tr.) and take thorough measures to supply sufficient medicines to them. No matter how well the hospitals are equipped, they will be of no avail unless they are provided with medicines. The problem of medicines can be solved if Koryo drugs are produced in large quantities.

We must see that children are brought up healthy and strong.

In our country all the children are brought up at state and social expense. As many as 3.5 million children are now growing up in creches and kindergartens, and as many as five million pupils and students are learning in different educational institutions, ranging from primary school to university. Nearly half the total population are growing up or studying at state and social expense.

In our country the state is the nurse for all the children, so to speak. We must perform the duty of nurse in a responsible manner and bring them up to be thick-boned, tall and strong.

I emphasized a long time ago that our children should be brought up tall, but the children are not very tall yet. Our officials are to blame entirely for their low stature.

To raise strong children, we must mass-produce and supply children’s food that contains a variety of nutrients, including calcium, protein and the like. All the provinces, cities and counties must build children’s food factories.

Pyongyang has constructed many good factories to produce
children’s food. Other cities, provinces and counties must do the same. In addition, they must take thorough measures to keep children’s food factories supplied with raw materials.

The children’s food factories must mass-produce powdered cabbages, powdered spinach, powdered carrots, powdered tomatoes, powdered fruit, powdered kidney beans, rice flour, glutinous rice flour, bone powder and the like. They should also produce a lot of kelp powder, fish meal, powdered mussels and similar things for our children in the future, when we have developed aquaculture on a large scale.

We must also work hard to provide milk for children. We must obtain high-yielding soy bean seeds, grow the crop well and feed soya milk to children. If it is impossible to produce a large amount of soy beans domestically, we shall have to import them to ensure the supply of soya milk to children.

We must launch a mass movement to improve the diet of the people.

Since olden days Koreans have eaten a lot of salty and peppery food. Because they eat too much strongly stimulating food, many of our people suffer from stomach troubles and colitis. We must disseminate general knowledge of diet to dissuade our people from eating too much strongly stimulating food and encourage them to improve their dietary habits gradually.

We must step up physical culture and sports as a mass movement, so that everyone hardens himself and promotes physical strength.
I should like to talk about the situation around our country and tasks for accelerating socialist economic construction.

Geographically, our country is a peninsula surrounded by big countries. Looking back on history, our country has been influenced considerably by its big neighbours. Still nowadays, some of our officials have a tendency to look curiously over reported developments in these neighbours. That is why I have always stressed that we must strengthen our Juche character and maintain independence.

The circumstances and concrete reality of each country are different from one another. The revolution in a country is the responsibility of the party of that country. If a party of a certain country adopts a new policy, it is certainly for its own nation. We must maintain our independence, and also respect the independence of other countries. We must respect the policies pursued by the parties of other countries.

It is not necessary, however, for us to copy what other countries do. We must on all accounts proceed from the specific situation in our country. If we committed errors in the past, we ought to examine them and correct them. So far, however, we have made no mistake, so we do not need to follow in the footsteps of other countries simply because
they are correcting something.

We have pursued policies that suit our actual conditions, firmly based on the Juche standpoint, and they have all borne excellent fruit.

No party is now so tightly-knit organizationally and ideologically as ours. We are the most powerful party, full of revolutionary spirit. Our Party has correctly inherited the revolutionary traditions and has been consistently faithful to its revolutionary lines.

In former days a change of dynasty was always accompanied by a change of policy. When a new king or an emperor came to the throne, he would set a new policy. For revolutionaries, however, it is not necessary. Since they are to continue their advance towards communism, regardless of a change in leadership, they must hold fast to their original revolutionary lines.

Everything our Party has created and decided since the first day of its founding is correct and just. Therefore, our Party has been carrying forward all it has done.

True to the method of mass leadership, for example, the officials of our Party have been mixing with the masses all along, listening to them and working with them, as required by the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method. Our Party’s Chongsanri method is a most advantageous work method.

The Taean work system, which our Party created, is also a most advantageous economic management system. It is a work system whereby problems are discussed with the masses, whose opinions are incorporated into decisions through discussion by the Party committee; then the manager implements the decision through his administrative authority, while the Party secretary organizes and mobilizes the masses politically. This system also requires that trade unions and other working people’s organizations, under the guidance of the Party committee, organize and mobilize the masses actively for the implementation of the Party committee’s decisions. We can say that no other work system or economic management system is better than the Taean work system.

If there is anything still to be desired in mass leadership, it is that
our officials should fully understand the Party’s method of work with the masses and the requirements of the leadership system and apply them thoroughly to the actual situation. Given the facts, there is nothing on which to base a complaint about the mass leadership system, method of work with the masses and the economic management system created by our Party. We must strictly and continually adhere to our Party’s Chongsanri spirit and method as well as the Taean work system.

As I have emphasized on several occasions, there is no better programme for socialist rural construction than our rural theses. The theses on the socialist rural question elucidate all the ways for settlement of the rural question, including carrying out ideological, technological and cultural revolutions in the rural areas. When irrigation, electrification, mechanization and chemical application are introduced in the rural area, as dictated by the task of technological revolution set by the rural theses, it is possible to deliver farmers from backbreaking, arduous labour and boost agricultural production rapidly.

The validity of our Party’s theses on the socialist rural question has already been verified through practice. We must move on towards further strengthening of the cooperative economy and gradually turn it into a system of large-scale farms under the ownership of all the people, upholding our Party’s rural theses.

Great is our Party, and glorious indeed is the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, which enjoys the leadership of our Party. Our Republic is thoroughly implementing the revolutionary line of Juche in ideology, independence in politics, self-sufficiency in the economy and self-reliance in defence.

Our people are also great. No other people in the world are so firmly united organizationally and ideologically as our people are.

In our country all the people, to say nothing of Party members, are leading an organizational life under the leadership of the Party. Children are leading a collective life in nurseries and kindergartens, young boys and girls, organizational life in the Children’s Union,
youths in the League of Socialist Working Youth, workers in the trade
unions, farmers in the Union of Agricultural Working People and
women in the Democratic Women’s Union. In our country everyone is
studying. Cadres are studying collectively every week under the
Party’s system of study and public lecture. Not only the cadres, but
also the whole Party, all the people and the entire army are studying.

As for the socialist system we established in our country, it is the
most advantageous social system.

In our country there are no people out of work wandering about
hunting for a job. In our country the state provides every living
condition for all the working people—food, clothing and housing—and
everyone without exception is guaranteed the right to eat the moment
he is born. Our food supply system, which enables all the people to
take food, is an important communist policy.

In our country everyone has the right to education. The children of
preschool age have the right to go to nurseries and kindergartens, while
school-age children and youths exercise their right to eleven years of
compulsory education and university education. Those who are
qualified, whoever they are, can study at the full-time universities, and
those who are not in a position to go to university can still study to their
heart’s content under the study-while-working system, including
evening colleges. All the young people under our educational system,
ranging from primary school to university, are receiving education free
of charge.

In our country a system of free medical care has been introduced
whereby all the working people are freed from worry about medical
treatment. It is said that in a certain country with the introduction of
paid medical treatment the quality of service on the part of medical
personnel has improved; it is a mistake to attempt to solve problems
with money.

Our socialist system is indeed an advantageous system. There is no
better system than our socialist system, under which everyone has a
stable job, enjoys the benefits of a free, compulsory educational system
and free medical care system and leads a happy life without even
knowing the term tax. We must work, with a single desire to maintain, further consolidate and develop this excellent system and to hasten the complete victory of socialism.

We can be justly proud that we have a great Party, great government and great people and that we have set up the most advantageous socialist system.

What I want to emphasize to you today is that we must always hold up the revolutionary banner of Juche and live our own way. In the future, however the situation may change, we cannot flinch even an inch on the revolutionary road we have already chosen. We must fully support and implement our Party’s policies and advance vigorously along the road of independence, self-sufficiency and self-reliance in defence, with a strong revolutionary spirit.

We must further step up socialist economic construction.

As I have said on several occasions and as mentioned in the letter of the Party Central Committee to all Party members, it is important in economic affairs at present to put production on a steady basis, implement the Party’s export-first and agriculture-first policies, make railways fit for heavy duty and switch them over to electric traction, and promote the construction of major projects. If we raise our economy to a higher stage by successfully fulfilling these five tasks, our country will rank among the developed countries and ascend the high peak of socialism. Then our people will be better off and without envy.

First, factories and enterprises must put production on a high, steady level.

This is extremely important.

In our country today the people’s ideological and mental state is sound and everything is going well. If there is anything that is insufficient, it is the supply of commodities and meat. However, this problem, too, can surely be resolved if we make some effort.

The economic assets we have created are great. We have a large number of light-industry factories, including textile mills, garment factories, knitwear factories, footwear factories, flour-processing
mills, riced corn factories and cornstarch factories, as well as machine factories and other heavy-industry factories. Nearly all the needed factories are available in our country. If we run the existing factories and enterprises efficiently, we can be quite well off.

When factories and enterprises produce at a steady level, all problems can be resolved satisfactorily. Then the problems of clothing and essential goods will be beyond question.

The factories and enterprises are now failing to ensure regular production, not because of short supply of raw and other materials, but because the senior officials of the Administration Council, the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees are not working devotedly as befits masters.

For steady production steel and coal must be produced in great abundance. The leading economic officials, however, have not taken effective measures to increase their production.

The Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex is now said to be producing little steel owing to a short supply of iron ore, whereas the Musan Mining Complex is producing large quantities of iron ore. Last year I assigned the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex the task of carrying by ship the iron ore concentrate produced by the Musan Mining Complex. This task can certainly be fulfilled if officials organize shipping. Iron ore is available not only in the Musan Mining Complex but also in mines on the west coast, such as the Thaethan Mine and Unnyul Mine. Officials of the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, however, simply say they cannot produce enough steel owing to a short supply of iron ore without thinking of bringing iron ore from these mines or taking any measures for carrying the concentrate from the Musan Mining Complex. Such is the way our officials work, and this is the cause of unsteady production.

In our country, augmenting the production of machine tools is the most urgent requirement at present. Machine tools are needed in great quantities in many sectors. Repair bases must be set up for the People’s
Army for its large quantity of modern weapons and equipment, and the rural economic sector must also establish repair bases for its large number of tractors and trucks. Meanwhile, each province must build its own machine factory to produce necessary machines and equipment for itself, and large factories must have well-furnished repair and maintenance shops. To this end, many machine tools are required. I have calculated how much more capacity for producing machine tools needs to be created during the Third Seven-Year Plan to fully meet the demand for machine tools, and concluded that if the existing machine-tool factories produce at a steady level, it is possible not only to fully meet the domestic demand for machine tools, but also to export a large number of machine tools.

The quality of our machine tools is by no means low. Many countries are now asking for the export of our machine tools. Some time ago a vice-minister of the machine-tool and instrument industries of a foreign country visited our country and said he would buy large numbers of our machine tools, proposing a joint-venture machine-tool factory on condition that his side supply materials.

Whether or not factories and enterprises put their production on a regular basis depends entirely on how the senior officials of the Administration Council and other leading officials organize economic work and guide production. The senior officials, chairmen and ministers of the Administration Council, chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees must organize economic work and direct production properly, with a high sense of responsibility.

Second, you must implement the export-first policy to the letter. New Year’s morning, while setting five tasks to be carried out in this year’s economic work before the Premier and vice-premiers of the Administration Council, I emphasized export, but the export plan is not being fulfilled satisfactorily.

The export plan is not being fulfilled, not for lack of export sources, but because the officials have made no effort. That large numbers of
machine tools were not exported on time was owing to the Administration Council’s failure to supply timber for packing. If I had not learned the facts and taken measures in time, those machine tools would still not have been exported.

We must fulfil the monthly export plan by making every effort. According to the Chairman of the State Planning Commission, who keeps me informed now of the state of fulfilment of the export plan, this month’s plan can certainly be fulfilled.

We must implement the export-first policy without fail. Members of the Party Central Committee include managers and Party secretaries of factories and enterprises and chairmen and ministers of the Administration Council. You must all strive to fulfil this year’s export plan with no conditions attached. If we fail in the export plan, we shall be unable to import crude oil and coking coal. Then we can neither produce steel nor get trucks to run.

In future, officials who fail to fulfil the export plan must be called strictly to account by the Party and administrative authorities as well as legally.

Third, you must carry out the agriculture-first policy.

We have been self-sufficient in food for a long time. Some years ago our country even hosted a symposium of non-aligned and other developing countries on increasing food and agricultural production. In recent years, however, our officials have not paid attention to farming. The Premier, who is supposed to show deeper concern than others for farming, has not paid attention to it and has not visited the countryside frequently. Owing to the officials’ neglect of farming, last year’s output was not satisfactory.

I believed that last year’s farming would be successful, because a series of measures had been taken to assist the countryside materially and technically and many irrigation canal projects had been completed in South Hwanghae Province, but last year’s farming was poor.

Our officials, however, have done nothing to find out the cause of last year’s poor results. I thus sent inspection teams to provinces to check up on last year’s farming, and later got a meeting to be held in
each province. In the course of this I found out the main reason for last year’s poor farming.

The main reason for last year’s poor rice crop was that rice seedlings did not grow strong and they were not transplanted at the right time.

Rice seedlings must stay in the seedbed for 50 days, until they get six or seven blades, before being transplanted. Otherwise, striking root after transplantation will take a long time. To sow rice seeds in time and grow strong seedlings, there should be enough plastic sheets. Last year the agricultural sector was not supplied with enough sheets. Therefore, strong rice seedlings could not be grown. Last year quick-growing cold-frame rice seedlings were grown and transplanted before they had six or seven blades, resulting in the death of many of them.

According to the experience I gained during my personal guidance of farming in past years, timely rice transplantation is extremely important. Once I went to Jaeryong County, South Hwanghae Province, and talked with the farmers. They said that the per-hectare yields of rice plants bedded out on May 25 and June 5 differed by nearly one ton. In other words, if rice seedlings are transplanted ten days later, the per-hectare yield drops by one ton. Therefore, if rice transplantation is a day late, the yield diminishes by 100 kg per hectare. In the subsequent years I confirmed that the farmers were correct. Rice plants develop many tillers when the days are warm and the nights cool. In our country from May to mid-June the daytime temperature rises high and the nighttime temperature goes down, whereas after the end of June the difference in temperature between day and night is not so great. Therefore, from the end of June rice plants do not tiller well, and even if they do, the tillers do not bear seeds. Accordingly, only when rice seedlings are transplanted before May 25, can they tiller properly under suitable temperature conditions. Last year, however, the transplanting of seedlings was not completed before May 25.

The main reason for the poor maize crop last year was that maize was sown directly on nonirrigated fields. Seeds sown directly on
nonirrigated fields cannot sprout well.

Long ago I instructed that maize be sown directly only on irrigated fields, not on nonirrigated fields. Last year, however, in South Hwanghae Province maize was sown directly on irrigated and nonirrigated fields indiscriminately. As a result, many seeds did not germinate. Later additional planting was done to make up for the loss, but it resulted in a very irregular growth of the crop. Eventually the maize farming of this province yielded a poor harvest.

Now that I am not able to go to the countryside for field guidance as frequently as before, our officials should guide the farming more efficiently, but they are not doing so.

This year, even though you may have to leave some other work unattended, you must do farming well by implementing the agriculture-first policy to the letter.

For good farming, you must fully meet the requirements of the Juche farming method.

The cooperative farms must grow rice seedlings for 50 days, so that they get six or seven blades, before transplanting them. They must ensure that rice seedlings are transplanted on the main plots by May 25 and on the seedbeds by the end of May.

In order to farm as required by the Juche farming method, enough sheets must be supplied to the countryside. Originally it was my intention to supply enough sheets to cover 88 per cent of the rice seedbeds this year, but since officials said they could provide only enough to cover 70 per cent, I agreed to it.

According to my recent inquiry into preparations for this year’s farming, the preparations have not been made well, particularly for sheets. Officials know quite well that if sheets are in short supply, they cannot ensure good farming, but they are careless about the production of sheets. Had they allotted every month small amounts of the high-pressure polyethylene produced by the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex from June to December last year for the production of sheets, they would not have to worry now.

To provide sheets to cover 70 per cent of the rice seedbeds as
planned, some have to be imported by the central authorities, some have to be obtained by the provinces themselves, some have already been provided and some have to be produced in future. The problem in the production of sheets is how to ensure the production of high-pressure polyethylene.

Some time ago the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex was reportedly not producing high-pressure polyethylene owing to an insufficient supply of naphtha, so I told the Premier that even though he might not be able to attend to some other work he should keep a tight rein on the production of high-pressure polyethylene and fertilizer at the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex. At the current plenary meeting the chief secretary of the Party committee of the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex pledged to increase the production of fertilizer, so as to fulfil the plan within the fertilization year and produce and supply the amount of high-pressure polyethylene assigned to his complex; he must do so without fail. Unless the factory works properly, this year’s farming may end in failure. Still this morning I was worrying about the problem of sheets; it is a good thing that the complex has decided to produce all the high-pressure polyethylene required. In a few days seeding cold-frame beds will begin, so sheets must be supplied to the countryside as soon as possible.

The commissions and ministries under the Administration Council and the factories and enterprises must supply all the things needed for this year’s farming in a responsible manner. You must supply the agricultural sector with oil for ploughing on a preferential basis, enough spare parts for repair and maintenance of tractors and small farm implements.

For good farming this year you must make the land under cultivation fertile and tend it properly.

After I set the task at a session of the Central People’s Committee of spreading large quantities of manure over paddy and nonpaddy fields this year, I have been receiving reports on its implementation; it seems to me provinces and counties are making quite a few false reports about it. Travelling around by train, I saw many plots not covered with
manure, so I instructed an official to make a trip around Sukchon, Mundok and Taedong Counties in South Phyongan Province and Junghwa and Kangnam Counties in Pyongyang. According to his report, not many plots are covered with manure.

The chairmen and ministers under the Administration Council, chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees and chairmen of the provincial rural economy committees must effectively guide farming by adhering to the agriculture-first policy. Especially, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the chairmen of the provincial rural economy committees must give effective and responsible guidance to farming in their provinces. After the current plenary meeting you must return home quickly and step up farming.

Fourth, you must wage a vigorous struggle to introduce heavy-duty railways and electrify them.

Important for introducing heavy-duty service on railways is to manufacture large numbers of wagons of 100-ton capacity. Now wagons of 60-ton capacity are carrying goods; if wagons of 100-ton capacity are manufactured, they can handle far greater amounts of goods. A train hauling 50 wagons of 60-ton capacity can carry loads weighing only 3,000 tons, whereas a train composed of 50 wagons of 100-ton capacity can carry 5,000 tons of goods. Some time ago a train composed of wagons of 100-ton capacity carried coal to the Pyongyang Thermal Power Plant and the workers there were very pleased. To solve the problem of transport, we must definitely manufacture and use many wagons of 100-ton capacity.

In order to produce many wagons of 100-ton capacity, you must supply the steel needed. There is no other problem for the production of these wagons. The production of many wagons of 100-ton capacity depends, in the long run, on whether or not the necessary steel is produced and supplied. The Administration Council must make every effort to ensure an increased production of steel to supply sufficient amounts of it for the production of wagons of 100-ton capacity.
Rails do not pose a big problem in making the railways fit for heavy duty. Even if they are not replaced with heavy-duty rails, the existing rails can be used for carrying waggons of 100-ton capacity. It would be better, however, to produce and lay large quantities of heavy-duty rails.

Along with the introduction of heavy-duty service on railways, you must complete the electrification of railway tracks not yet electrified. According to my inquiry while dealing with the problem of coal, quite a few railway tracks are still not electrified. If they were all electrified, many more goods could be carried. The provincial Party committees, provincial administration and economic guidance committees, and commissions and ministries under the Administration Council must put great efforts to electrify the railway tracks not yet electrified.

Fifth, you must promote the construction of major projects.

The major projects we must stress this year are the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex, the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, the construction of coal mines and power stations, and the construction of Kwangbok Street and other important structures in Pyongyang.

Above all, you must concentrate on the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex.

The Sunchon Vinalon Complex, when constructed, will produce annually one million tons of carbide, 750,000 tons of methanol, 100,000 tons of vinalon, 900,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer, 250,000 tons of vinyl chloride, 250,000 tons of caustic soda, 400,000 tons of sodium carbonate and a variety of other chemical products and 300,000 tons of protein feed. Then we can solve the problem of clothing and food for people more satisfactorily, and our country will be rich.

If 100,000 tons of vinalon are produced by the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, the problem of fabric will be resolved completely. If we add up the vinalon produced by the Sunchon Vinalon Complex and the February 8 Vinalon Complex, acetate fibre by the Chongjin Chemical Fibre Complex and the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Complex, and acrylic
and movilon, the amount of chemical fibre to be produced annually will be 220,000 tons. Then we shall be able to attain the target of 1,500 million metres of fabrics envisaged in the Third Seven-Year Plan.

Vinalon alone can resolve many problems. However, the problem is that quality cloth is still not woven from vinalon and the quality of vinalon yarn is poor. You must solve the difficult scientific and technological problems, so as to knit quality cloth, yarn and the like with vinalon.

When the Sunchon Vinalon Complex is constructed, the problem of nitrogenous fertilizer, too, can be fully solved. In our country there are only two large bases for the production of nitrogenous fertilizer, in Hamhung and Namhung, at present; consequently, if one of them fails to fulfil the production quota for fertilizer, there will be a shortage of nitrogenous fertilizer, causing hindrance to various sectors of the national economy. When we establish the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, we shall have three large bases for the production of nitrogenous fertilizer. Then we shall be able to meet demands for nitrogenous fertilizer in full.

If the Sunchon Vinalon Complex produces 900,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer, several hundred thousand tons will remain, even though one ton per hectare is administered to paddy and non-paddy fields in our country. If we export the remaining nitrogenous fertilizer and import potassic fertilizer, we can also solve the problem of potassic fertilizer.

With hundreds of thousands of tons of nitrogenous fertilizer to spare, we can resolve the matter of blasting powder, too. Several sectors of the national economy are now hindered in their production and construction by an insufficient supply of blasting powder. Coal mines, ore mines and several construction sites are said to have an insufficient supply of blasting powder; now that a new method of making blasting powder with ammonium nitrate has been developed, there is no need for us to worry about blasting powder, so long as we have ammonium nitrate. The workers in the Musan Mining Complex succeeded in making blasting powder with ammonium nitrate,
displaying creative initiative. Factories and enterprises that use blasting powder must now make blasting powder with ammonium nitrate themselves for their own consumption, as the Musan Mining Complex does, refraining from relying only on blasting-powder factories.

The People’s Army is said to be hindered in its construction of the highway between Pyongyang and Kaesong because of a shortage of blasting powder. It must also make blasting powder itself. The army can do it if it is supplied with some TNT and ammonium nitrate.

Every sector can make blasting powder for itself if it follows the example of the Musan Mining Complex. The blasting powder, however, must at all times be made and used only under the control of social security organs.

For the various sectors of the national economy to make blasting powder for their own use, they need ammonium nitrate. This problem can also be solved, provided the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, after its construction, produces nitrogenous fertilizer. Of course, the complex is not to produce ammonium nitrate, but urea. However, the problem will be resolved if the urea fertilizer produced by the complex is supplied to the agricultural sector in exchange for ammonium nitrate to be given to sectors making blasting powder.

Whether or not we achieve the planned production capacity of 100,000 tons of vinalon and 900,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer in the Sunchon Vinalon Complex depends largely on whether or not the Ryongsong Machine Complex and the Songjin Steel Complex produce and supply in time the ordered equipment and stainless steel needed for it. The chief secretary of the Party committee of the Ryongsong Machine Complex has expressed his determination to ensure the production of compressors and converters necessary for creating the production capacity of 900,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer; he must not fail to carry out his determination, which he has confirmed at the Party plenary meeting.

When construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex is completed and it is operating on a steady basis, some of the forces engaged in its
construction will be mobilized to reconstruct the February 8 Vinalon Complex.

You must channel efforts into the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex.

When it is constructed, the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex will produce 510,000 tons of potassic fertilizer and 420,000 tons of alumina.

The Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex will have great significance in solving the food problem.

The most pressing problem in boosting agricultural production at present is potassic fertilizer. At the close of last year, when I went to the Yonphung area to talk with the farmers, the chairman of the management committee of the Pobu Cooperative Farm, Kaechon County, told me that in previous years the farm had administered large quantities of potassic fertilizer, but that year it could not do so. Unless potassic fertilizer is administered, good farming cannot be expected. If the crops do not imbibe potassic components, grains cannot ripen well. If nitrogenous fertilizer alone is administered to the crops, without using potassic fertilizer, the crops thrive when green and look as if promising a rich harvest, but in autumn they bear a lot of dead grains because of poor ripening. Crop farming without potassic fertilizer is as good as grass farming. The rate of fruit bearing in our country over the recent years has been low also because potassic fertilizer had not been used. To produce and supply potassic fertilizer can be said to be vital to farming in our country.

When the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex, after it is constructed, produces 510,000 tons of potassic fertilizer, a sufficient amount of potassic fertilizer needed for agricultural production can be supplied. It is reasonable in our country to spread 200 kg per hectare of potassic fertilizer over paddy and nonpaddy fields. The total arable land of our country is two million hectares; therefore, when the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex produces 510,000 tons of potassic fertilizer, it will be more than enough for 200 kg per hectare. We need no more than 510,000 tons of potassic fertilizer.
In the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex it is envisaged that this year only the process for calcining one million tons of potassic feldspar is to be set up, not the process for separating alumina. As setting up the process for separating alumina necessitates the construction of a power plant and the establishment of a boiler, it will be difficult to produce and supply the ordered equipment, so it is planned to create only the process for calcining one million tons of potassic feldspar this year and produce calcined silicon-potassic fertilizer. Then next year the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex can produce calcined silicon-potassic fertilizer, finding a solution to the problem of potassic fertilizer.

It is said that if the process for calcining one million tons of potassic feldspar is set up in the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex, two million tons of calcined silicon-potassic fertilizer, containing 7 to 8 per cent potassic component, can be produced. I think that is reasonably good. Since the content of potash of the standard potassic fertilizer is 50 per cent, if the two million tons of calcined silicon-potassic fertilizer, with 8 per cent potassic component, are calculated in terms of standard fertilizer, the amount will be 320,000 tons. This is not a small amount.

If we process three million tons of potassic feldspar in the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex, we can obtain 420,000 tons of alumina, enough to produce some 200,000 tons of aluminium. This is a great amount. If we sell that amount of aluminium on the international market, we can earn foreign currency amounting to several hundred million dollars.

Because the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex is important, you must concentrate on it. It is planned to create only the process for calcining one million tons of potassic feldspar this year because it is difficult to ensure the production of ordered equipment; next year you must, while creating more calcining capacity in that process, also set up the process for separating alumina.

You must finish the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron
The cold-rolling workshop of the branch rolling mill of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex has long been established, but its equipment has not yet been put at full capacity. Thus cold-rolled products are still imported. If we do not properly operate such a modern, big factory, built with a large investment, we cannot be prosperous. If we operate the cold-rolling equipment of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex at full capacity and sell only its cold-rolled products, we can earn a large sum of foreign currency.

In order to operate the cold-rolling workshop of the branch rolling mill in the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex at full capacity, you must complete the second-stage expansion of this complex. When the project is finished, the hot-rolling capacity will also be increased. If the second-stage expansion is completed and a refiner furnace is set up in future, the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex will be capable of producing large quantities of high-quality cold-rolled steel.

We could not accelerate the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, though we wanted to, because the important equipment to be imported was not delivered, but now that problem is resolved.

The equipment to be imported for the second-stage expansion is expected to be delivered within this month; you must concentrate on this project and finish it by April 15 this year.

You must quickly finish the project and operate the rolling equipment at full capacity, so as to begin augmenting steel production from July.

The Second Metal Plant Construction Complex, after completing the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex by April 15, must retain only small forces needed for finishing touches and direct its main forces to the Musan Mining Complex.

As I mentioned in my New Year address this year and as is pointed out in the letter of the Party Central Committee sent to all Party members, the Musan Mining Complex must be built into a modern, large-scale base for the production of iron ore concentrate with a
capacity of, for the present, 10 million tons and, in future, 15 million tons.

To this end, last year I appointed a member of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee chief secretary of the Party committee of North Hamgyong Province. His important task is to complete the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex as soon as possible and put steel production on a steady basis, to increase the production capacity of iron ore concentrate at the Musan Mining Complex to 15 million tons, and to create a production capacity of three million tons of unbaked briquettes there.

The forces of the Second Metal Plant Construction Complex to be transferred to the Musan Mining Complex after completion of the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex must strive to create a production capacity of three million tons of unbaked briquettes, on the one hand, and to expand the Musan Mining Complex, on the other. Only then can the problem of iron ore concentrate to be supplied to the metallurgical plants in the western area be solved.

The Second Metal Plant Construction Complex must direct some of its forces to the western area to build a new steel plant with a capacity of two million tons for the Chollima Steel Complex. When this new steel plant is constructed, it will contribute greatly to the Chollima Steel Complex’s reaching the steel target for the Third Seven-Year Plan.

The new steel plant will produce steel with iron made from unbaked pellets. Therefore, it can be said that this iron industry relies entirely on domestic fuel. If we produce steel by using home-produced fuel, we need not ask other countries for coking coal.

The steel plant to be built in the Chollima Steel Complex is also a major project to be finished soon. Construction of the plant raises the problem of how the rolling equipment necessary for the plant is to be obtained. There are only two solutions: to manufacture it at the Taean Heavy Machine Complex from our own designs or to import it. Both ways must be considered. Some officials say that the rolling equipment
can be imported, but importing it is not safe. The best way to solve the problem of rolling equipment is to manufacture it ourselves.

You must put effort into the construction of coal mines.

The national economy’s demand for coal is very great, but coal production is lagging behind it. We must increase coal production sharply by concentrating on the construction of coal mines. The coal-mining industry must reconstruct or expand coal mines in the Anju, Sunchon, Kaechon, Tokchon and northern areas and major coal mines, such as the Ungok Coal Mine, and open up many new coal mines.

Along with the augmentation of coal production through the large-scale construction of coal mines, you must strive to economize and effectively use coal.

You must ensure that only the major heavy-industry factories that produce steel or carbide use high-calorific anthracite, while light-industry factories, local industries and households use low-calorific coal or meta-anthracite. The matter has already been mentioned in the decision of the Central People’s Committee issued before. Party organizations must work to economize coal as much as possible, dealing with the matter as an important political issue.

The Hamhung Woolen Textile Mill is said to be burning coal produced by the Kumya Youth Coal Mine by modifying its boiler to use low-heat coal; it is a very good thing. South Hamgyong Province is using large quantities of anthracite carried from other provinces; it must in future burn as little anthracite as possible.

You must introduce central heating for rural houses by manufacturing a variety of boilers fuelled by low-calorific coal or meta-anthracite. For the fuel necessary for cooking in households, you can produce marsh gas or electricity with wind-driven generators or generators in the form of water wheels. In future, when methanol is produced in large quantities, households can use it for cooking. Some time ago an experiment was done on cooking with methanol; emitting no smell, it was better than cooking with kerosene.

You must soon finish the construction of power stations in hand.
Above all, you must channel efforts into construction of the Thaechon Power Station.

Because of the slow progress in the construction of the Thaechon Power Station, meetings were held on several occasions to deal with the matter, but the construction has not yet been finished. You must make every effort and finish it quickly.

There will be no knotty problems in the construction of the Thaechon Power Station, because all the tunnels have already been dug out. If officials organize work well, construction can be finished soon. For its immediate completion the Songwon Dam must be built quickly, as planned. When it is constructed, the Thaechon Power Station will be capable of producing several hundred thousand kilowatts of electricity, thus considerably easing the strain on electricity.

You must also finish the construction of the Wiwon Power Station as soon as possible. Even after it is constructed, the Thaechon Power Station will not be able to produce electricity properly if it runs short of water. Only if the Wiwon Power Station is constructed soon, can it supply electricity securely even if the Thaechon Power Station is unable to produce electricity properly. You must finish construction of the Wiwon Power Station as soon as possible and commission it.

When construction of the Wiwon Power Station is completed, half the electricity to be produced there will be used by us, half by the Chinese. Some time ago the Thaephyongman Power Station, constructed by the Chinese, was commissioned; we can use about 100,000 kW of the electricity produced there.

You must also complete construction of the third-stage project of the March 17 Power Station soon.

If we finish construction of the Thaechon Power Station, Wiwon Power Station and the third-stage project of the March 17 Power Station and receive about 100,000 kW of electricity from the Thaephyongman Power Station, we can obtain more than one million kilowatts of electricity. As mentioned in the letter of the Party Central Committee to all Party members, the electric power industry must create a generating capacity of more than 1.2 million kva within the first half of this year.
You must hasten the construction of Nyongwon and Namgang Power Stations.

The construction of these power stations is significant in protecting Pyongyang from flood damage. After suffering from heavy floods in 1967, we constructed the Taedonggang Power Station, West Sea Barrage, Mirim Barrage and several other barrages on the Taedong River. So Pyongyang is now free from floods. No one, however, can say for sure that a deluge will not happen in future. In order to protect Pyongyang more securely from flood damage, we must construct the Nyongwon and Namgang Power Stations. When these power stations are built, Pyongyang will remain safe from any unprecedented deluge.

In the construction of the Namgang Power Station transport is not a big problem, whereas in the building of the Nyongwon Power Station transport is the knottiest problem. The soldiers now constructing a power station in Nyongwon are not making great progress in their work because of the transport problem. Construction of the Songwon Dam of the Thaechon Power Station proves that carrying materials by truck is very difficult. However many quality trucks are mobilized, they do not carry cement properly, because they soon go out of order on the high passes and rugged roads. It has been suggested that the cement necessary for construction of the Nyongwon Power Station be carried by rafts after the river thaws, but this suggestion cannot ensure completion of the project in the scheduled time.

I think it reasonable to lay a cableway to solve the problem of transport, a bottleneck in the construction of the Nyongwon Power Station. A cableway will save fuel, do away with the problem of trucks, and carry materials more quickly. Since construction of a power station is planned in Taehung County, too, the cableway must be laid as far as Taehung County. The Economic Planning Department of the Party Central Committee, the Administration Council and the State Planning Commission must make good calculations about it.

For the successful construction of the Nyongwon and Namgang Power Stations you must produce and supply a sufficient amount of cement.
You must complete the reconstruction project of the Pusanri Cement Factory and use the cement produced there for construction of the Nyongwon Power Station. The Administration Council, the Party committee of South Phyongan Province and the administration and economic guidance committee of South Phyongan Province must take full responsibility to finish the reconstruction project of the Pusanri Cement Factory within the first half of this year.

In future the electricity to be produced by the Nyongwon and Namgang Power Stations must be supplied to Pyongyang.

You must accelerate energetically the construction of Kwangbok Street and the major projects within Pyongyang.

It is known worldwide that our country will host the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students next year; therefore, you must go full steam ahead on the construction of Kwangbok Street and the major projects in Pyongyang and finish them quickly.

Holding the world festival of youth and students in Pyongyang has a significance far greater than that of the Olympic Games. If, with good preparations, we ensure a successful festival, we can fully demonstrate to the whole world the might of our Republic and our people’s honour and pride in living in the era of the Workers’ Party.

You must put the efforts of the whole Party and nation into the construction of Kwangbok Street and the major projects within Pyongyang, so as to finish them by April 15 next year. You must supply in time the steel, cement and other materials necessary for the construction and launch a broad campaign to obtain foreign currency to assist in the construction of Pyongyang in every possible way.

You must undertake aquaculture on a large scale.

Raising mussels and kelp does not need various articles of materials. Saltwater farming needs only rafts and ropes. When the Sunchon Vinalon Complex is constructed, it can provide a sufficient amount of vinalon rope, making it possible to undertake aquaculture on a large scale. Assuming that one ton of vinalon rope is needed for creating one hectare of saltwater farm, 10,000 tons will be enough for 10,000 hectares.
It is advisable for you to create about 10,000 hectares of saltwater farm this year by adding up the existing saltwater farms and, from next year onwards, launch a struggle to create 10,000 new hectares of saltwater farm every year. Then by the end of the Third Seven-Year Plan the saltwater farms will be, all told, as large as 60,000 hectares, making it possible to solve the problem of nonstaple food more satisfactorily.

According to information, on one hectare of mussel farm Spain produces 600 tons of mussels and India, 500 tons. Our officials, however, say that one hectare of saltwater farm can yield 400 tons of mussels. Suppose one hectare of mussel farm yields 400 tons of mussels, then if we raise mussels and sell them to foreign countries, we can earn much foreign currency.

A hundred tons of kelp per hectare can also be cultivated in the mussel farms. Kelp is very expensive. If 100 tons of wet kelp are dried, they weigh 10 tons; the dried kelp, depending on its quality, sells at 1,000 to 1,800 dollars per ton on the international market. Assuming that one ton of dried kelp earns 1,000 dollars, if the kelp yielded by one hectare of mussel farm is dried and sold, the earnings can buy 100 tons of maize.

At this plenary meeting I appeal that we all launch a determined struggle to create 10,000 hectares of kelp farm and mussel farm on the eastern coast every year. If we create 10,000 hectares of saltwater farm every year and raise kelp and mussels there, we can sell kelp to buy grain and mussels to buy meat.

Mussels contain a lot of protein. Some time ago I tasted a meat roll made of powdered mussel meat, and I found it delicious. The mussel meat roll will prevent arteriosclerosis.

According to the information I read a few years ago, an ancient Greek king ate varieties of dishes made of mussels in order to live long. It seems mussels have been raised in large quantities in Greece since ancient times.

It is reasonable for you to set the target of creating about 100,000 hectares of saltwater farm in the future and strive to attain it. It will be good to wage the struggle right now to make more than 10,000
hectares of saltwater farm in a year, but it is impossible to supply the materials necessary for that undertaking at present. There is no problem in making rafts, because they can be made of either cement or iron sheets. The problem lies in the supply of ropes. Only when the Sunchon Vinalon Complex produces 100,000 tons of vinalon a year, can about 10,000 tons be allocated for the purpose; it is impossible at present. Recently I had 5,000 tons of Tetoron wool imported for the light-industry sector in exchange for 5,000 tons of vinalon wool to be supplied for the construction of saltwater farms but 5,000 tons of vinalon wool can create only 5,000 hectares of saltwater farms.

If we are successful in saltwater farming we can improve the diet of our people markedly. When mussels are raised on 10,000 hectares of saltwater farms, four million tons will be produced a year, of which three million tons will be exported, while the remaining one million tons can be consumed by our people. In order to improve the level of the people’s diet, it seems to me that of four million tons of mussels, one or two million tons must be consumed by our people.

On the western coast you must reclaim tidelands in the main and on the eastern coast undertake aquaculture. On the eastern coast you must promote saltwater farming throughout the area, from north of Kosong to Sosura. If you undertake aquaculture on a large scale on the eastern coast, you will be able to buy large quantities of grain by selling only the surplus after meeting the demands of the inhabitants. North and South Hamgyong Provinces and Kangwon Province can raise mussels and sell them to buy maize, wheat or soya beans, thus solving the problem of grain for themselves. It is said that the sea off South Hwanghae Province is also good for saltwater farming. You must undertake saltwater farming even on the western coast south of Nampho.

The People’s Army, too, must create about 10,000 hectares of saltwater farm. It must buy ropes to step up the building of saltwater farms and reexamine its plan for the creation of saltwater farms before assigning an accurate plan to each corps. By doing so, it can feed its soldiers so that they can fight well in the event of an emergency.
Landlocked provinces, such as Jagang and Ryanggang Provinces, must undertake aquaculture on coasts belonging to other provinces and distribute their products to their population.

You must not raise shrimps in large numbers. Shrimps eat too much feed for us to supply it. Raising chickens and producing eggs with the feed needed to raise shrimps is better than raising shrimps. As for the raising of shrimps, I think it would be good to create a small shrimp farm and make a study of it.

For efficient saltwater farming, scientific research should be intensified. I think it would be better to farm mussels and kelp together in a saltwater farm.

In future, you must set it as a major task to construct saltwater farms and vigorously push the work ahead by concentrating efforts.

Last, I should like to talk about some problems in launching the 200-day campaign.

If we complete the construction of major projects and start their operation by vigorously conducting the 200-day campaign as the 40th anniversary of the founding of our Republic approaches, we can solve many problems and provide a sure guarantee for carrying out the Third Seven-Year Plan successfully. In future, when the targets of the Third Seven-Year Plan have been attained, the economic foundation of our country will be strengthened further.

Foreigners, too, are observing carefully how we carry on the 200-day campaign. Our officials, however, are still not actively setting about the campaign, giving it poor direction.

The leading officials must not give way to defeatism. If they are infected with defeatism, they cannot continue the revolutionary struggle.

It is not in the least because we were stronger than our enemy that we defeated the Japanese imperialists during the anti-Japanese armed struggle and the US imperialists during the Fatherland Liberation War, and it is not because we had great funds that we could carry out reconstruction and rise up again on the ruins of war. We could emerge victorious in one battle after another, because we always fought with
high spirits and confidence in victory.

We are now making revolution under incomparably far more favourable conditions than those of former days. We have a powerful Party, great people and a strong foundation for a self-sufficient national economy. Therefore, nothing is impossible for us to do at present. All the officials must wage a vigorous struggle to attain the objectives of the 200-day campaign set by the Party, full of courage and confidence.

The objectives of the 200-day campaign have already been set clearly.

The major problems we must deal with during the 200-day campaign are, first, the production of electricity, second, the production of steel and coal, third, the production of cement and timber and fourth, transport. If we tackle these problems with proper guidance, we can boost the production of export goods and supply sufficient amounts of farming materials.

As I mentioned before, it is extremely important to finish the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex quickly. I believe that the Party committees of North Hamgyong Province and Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex and the Party committees of the related factories and enterprises will certainly complete the second-stage expansion of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex as planned, by pooling their efforts.

We must organize and direct the 200-day campaign efficiently.

I shall take the office of supreme commander of central headquarters for the 200-day campaign. My three deputy commanders will be the Premier of the Administration Council, the secretary of the Party Central Committee in charge of economic planning department and the vice-premier in charge of the metal and extractive industries. The Chairman of the State Planning Commission will assume the duty of director of the operations bureau. The chairmen and ministers of the Administration Council are equal to corps commanders in the army. All officials must guide the work of their respective sectors responsibly.
The Premier, while performing his duty, must take charge of the economic work of North Phyongan Province.

There are many things to do in North Phyongan Province. The province must finish the project to achieve a production capacity of 20,000 tons of acetate fibre in the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Complex during the 200-day campaign. Unless the project is finished, it will be impossible to weave cloth properly, even though the Sunchon Vinalon Complex produces 100,000 tons of vinalon.

You must step up the development of a glauberite mine. The soldiers have been undertaking this project, but are not proceeding as smoothly as planned because of an insufficient supply of equipment and materials.

You must also run the paper mills on a steady basis.

All the machine factories in North Phyongan Province must put their production on a steady level. Especially, the Ragwon Machine Complex must produce 12 oxygen plants, excavators and other machines and equipment as planned, and the August 8 Factory must produce and supply the ordered equipment without fail.

The most important task facing North Phyongan Province during the 200-day campaign is to finish the construction of the Thaechon Power Station.

The Premier must work for 20 days a month in North Phyongan Province and for 10 days at the Administration Council. As for any problems arising during the time the Premier works in North Phyongan Province, the Chairman of the State Planning Commission, director of the operations bureau, must get my approval before dealing with them.

The secretary of the Party Central Committee in charge of economic planning department must take charge of the economic work of South Hamgyong Province. The economic work of South Hamgyong Province is important. The province must not fail to fulfil the plan for the production of lead, zinc, magnesia clinker and chemical fertilizer. Especially, the Ryongsong Machine Complex must produce and supply in time the ordered equipment necessary for construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex.
The vice-premier in charge of the metal and extractive industries, while supervising the work of the metal and coal-mining industries, must guide the economic work of South Phyongan Province and Nampho. In particular, he must take responsibility to see that the Taean Heavy Machine Complex produces in time the equipment to be supplied to major construction projects.

The vice-premier-cum-chairman of the Commission of Construction and the Building-Materials Industry must do his bit in solving the problem of cement production.

The commander of the 200-day campaign for each province is the chief secretary of the Party committee of each province. Since the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees hold the chairmanship of the provincial people’s committees concurrently, they hold both Party authority and administrative authority. Therefore, they must duly be the commanders of their provinces. The deputy commanders of the provinces are the chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees.

As the task of the 200-day campaign is assigned to each province, the provinces must organize and direct the 200-day campaign efficiently. Especially, North and South Phyongan Provinces and North and South Hamgyong Provinces must conduct the 200-day campaign well. Only when these provinces carry out their tasks without fail, can the state export plan be fulfilled satisfactorily and all sectors of the national economy put production on a steady basis.

The daily report on the 200-day campaign must be submitted to the Administration Council, the State Planning Commission and me. I shall not get the daily reports of all sectors, only those of major sectors.

Success in the 200-day campaign depends on the role played by the members of headquarters. The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, chairmen and ministers of the Administration Council, to say nothing of the members of central headquarters, must all perform their duty with credit.

Officials must further train their Party spirit and assimilate themselves into revolutionary and working-class patterns. Some of our
officials are still revealing tendencies showing lack of Party spirit and nonassimilation into revolutionary and working-class patterns. At the Party Conference held in 1966, I emphasized that all members of society must transform themselves into revolutionary and working-class patterns. Since then, over 20 years have passed. During this period a large number of officials have become leading officials of the revolution under the care of our Party. All officials must make every effort to train their Party spirit and transform themselves on revolutionary and working-class lines.

Since the Party Central Committee has recently sent a letter out of trust in the cadres and Party members, all officials must end the 200-day campaign with victory and celebrate the 40th anniversary of the founding of our Republic significantly, thus proving themselves worthy of the trust and expectations of the Party.

The provincial Party committees and Party organizations at all levels, as instructed by the Party, must hold Party meetings to discuss the measures for carrying out the tasks set by the Party Central Committee in its letter sent to all Party members and the plan of the 200-day campaign and then forcefully organize and mobilize Party members and other working people for their fulfilment.
TALK TO A DELEGATION OF THE LABOUR PARTY OF SWITZERLAND

April 24, 1988

On behalf of the Central Committee of our Party and the Korean people I warmly welcome the visit to our country by the delegation of the Labour Party of Switzerland, headed by you Comrade General Secretary.

Your current visit to our country will make a great contribution to developing friendly relations between our two parties and peoples.

I have received the report on the talks you had with senior officials of our Party. The talks were very beneficial.

Switzerland declared neutrality a long time ago and has not participated in any war; the people of your country have lived peacefully. With the declaration of neutrality your country has not worried about being conquered by big powers; it solves a very important question. It is laudable for small countries to adhere to a policy of neutrality, nonalignment and peace, evading being conquered by large countries.

We wish to build an independent and neutral state that is not a satellite of any other country and live in peace, but we are harassed by many countries which are trying to conquer our country.

Our country is a small peninsula surrounded by big countries. Located near the Soviet Union, China and Japan, she faces the United States across the ocean. Japan occupied our country for a long time in the past. The United States has long tried to eat our country. She has
occupied half our country and is trying to eat the northern half of Korea. How can we live in peace even a moment in this situation?

Should neutrality not be achieved, our country will be conquered by big countries or become involved in their scrambling. If that happens, only the interests of our country, a small country, will be harmed; as the saying goes shrimp are crushed by fighting whales.

We wish to build a neutral state after reunification, but the imperialists do not believe our stand.

Communists demand peace by nature. Only when peace is ensured, can socialism be built successfully. If they continue to make guns, they cannot speed up the building of socialism. Monopoly capitalists, however, go on producing guns and threaten peace, so the communists have no other way but to oppose them with guns.

The imperialists are saying that we are “bellicose”, but in fact, the imperialists themselves are bellicose. In order to disguise their warlike true colours, the imperialists are resorting to a crafty trick of branding the communists “warlike”. Americans allege that they have nuclear weapons because the Soviet Union is threatening them with nuclear weapons. This is a lie. The United States was the first to make nuclear weapons. Since she made nuclear weapons and threatened the world, other countries had to produce such weapons to deter them. It was also the United States that used nuclear weapons for the first time in the world. She dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki in Japan, killing innumerable people.

Today, the United States has deployed more than 1,000 nuclear weapons in south Korea and is threatening us. She is carrying on a misleading propaganda that it has deployed nuclear weapons in south Korea to prevent our “invading the south”. In the northern half of Korea there are no nuclear weapons, and we have no intention of “invading the south”. Such false propaganda is aimed at deceiving the world’s people. The US has deployed a lot of nuclear weapons in south Korea in an attempt to invade us and stand against the Soviet Union and China.

We maintain that the Korean peninsula should be made a
nuclear-free peace zone.

You asked what response south Koreans gave to our proposal to make the Korean peninsula a nuclear-free peace zone. Briefly, the south Korean people support it, but the United States and the south Korean authorities are opposed to the idea.

Workers, youth, students, and intellectuals, including press people in south Korea, actively support our proposal; the south Korean peasants, too, support it. We do not make any proposal that the south Korean people will not support. The youth and students in south Korea are fighting in support of our proposal, even though they are arrested by the enemy and imprisoned. They are courageously fighting under the slogans that the Korean peninsula must be converted into a nuclear-free peace zone, that the US imperialists must take nuclear weapons out of south Korea, and that the US army must withdraw from south Korea.

The south Korean authorities do not agree with our proposal to make the Korean peninsula a nuclear-free peace zone. Even if they wanted to agree, they would have to get the approval of the United States. The United States lords it over south Korea. “ROK-US Combined Forces” Commander is an American who holds the entire prerogative of commanding the south Korean puppet army. The south Korean authorities have no right of decision.

Since the south Korean authorities have no say, we cannot expect any success even if we have talks with them about creating a nuclear-free peace zone. In order to find a solution to this problem, we must negotiate directly with the United States, which has the decisive power. However, the United States has no intention to sit face to face with us. The United States and south Korean authorities not only reject our proposal, but also harshly suppress the youth and students and other people in south Korea who support our proposal. Nowadays, the south Korean young people and students watch our TV programmes and listen to our radio broadcasts and introduce their contents on wall posters. The youth and students who put up posters are all arrested and imprisoned.

You said that an important task for progressive people throughout
the world is to achieve peace and arms reduction and make all people
live in harmony. I think you are right.

In order to prevent war and ensure a durable peace, all the peoples
in the world must unite their efforts against an armaments race among
the imperialists.

At present, monopoly capitalists continue to produce new weapons
for moneymaking, first making one-warhead rockets, then more
developed two- or three-warhead rockets. If one country makes two- or
three-warhead rockets, another country that has only one-warhead
rockets also tries to produce such rockets. Competitive arms
production thus serves as a means for monopoly capitalists to make
money.

Without eliminating the monopoly capitalists it is impossible to
prevent competitive arms production and ensure a durable peace. To
remove the monopoly capitalists from the globe requires a long fight.

In capitalist countries monopoly capitalists dominate everything.
Presidents, too, in these countries are under their control. The president
of a European country happened to visit our country as the head of the
socialist party before he became president. At that time he said that if
he were elected president, he would strive to set up a new international
economic order that would meet the interests of third-world countries
and make Europe independent. After he took office, however, he
became obedient to monopoly capitalists. In capitalist countries even a
progressive figure has to serve them once he has assumed the post of
president. Presidents of capitalist countries are the proxies of the
monopoly capitalists.

Now is when the communists must be more than ever alert. The
imperialists are pursuing a policy of threatening and alluring other
countries, demonstrating their dissolute life with a nuclear weapon in
one hand and money in the other. They are trying to threaten socialist
countries with nuclear weapons, allure third-world countries with
money and demoralize the revolutionary people by leading them a
merry dance. The communists must not be deceived by such tricks of
the imperialists; they must maintain revolutionary principles and
thoroughly oppose all the imperialists’ manoeuvres, whether the imperialists threaten them with nuclear weapons, allure them with money or disseminate their fast life through ideological and cultural infiltration. The communists must awaken and unite the masses of the people more firmly and intensify the struggle against imperialism.

The imperialists are now bragging that socialist countries are lagging behind them economically, so that the former cannot make a living without help from the latter.

We are building socialism through our own efforts, without asking the imperialists for the loan of a dollar.

You visited the West Sea Barrage today. We carried out that gigantic project on our own. After we built the West Sea Barrage, a big capitalist of one country visited our country. Seeing the barrage, he asked our officials how much money we had spent on building it. When one of our officials replied that we had spent about 4,000 million dollars, he said it might have cost 7,000 million dollars in his opinion. He continued that since we must have incurred a lot of debts to other countries, he could lend us some money. Our official told him that as we had built the barrage with our equipment, our materials and our manpower, we had borrowed no money from other countries, and we did not need to borrow money from him.

We are now building the Sunchon Vinalon Complex on a large scale; we need a huge amount of money for it, too. A certain capitalist of a big country suggested through people in another country that he would lend us the money needed for the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex. We replied that we would not borrow money, and although it might be a little burdensome, we would build it by ourselves in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude.

We are building Kwangbok Street and carrying on other important projects in Pyongyang; we are also building power stations and many factories in different parts of the country. After visiting the construction sites of Kwangbok Street and Rungrando Stadium, a VIP of a foreign country on friendly terms with me said that we must have borrowed a lot of money to build so many projects, and he was worried
that our people would have to endure hardships to pay off the debt. I told him: We carry out all the projects to make our people better off; in order to provide them with a more affluent life, we must build more modern houses, stadiums and theatres; we must build nicer hotels, so that foreigners can enjoy sightseeing, staying in our country without any inconveniences; it is true that we need money to build so many projects; but we are carrying out these projects on our own without borrowing money from other countries. At present, the imperialists are trying to subordinate other countries by lending them money. It is preferable to carry out construction on one’s own, though it may be somewhat difficult. Our people led a hard life in hemp knee breeches before liberation. Today our people say they are now fairly well off and will become better off gradually if they carry out socialist construction successfully. When we complete all the important projects now under way, we shall soon be able to recover the investment and our people will lead a more affluent life.

As you have seen at the West Sea Barrage today, we built the barrage by walling off rough seas. Since completion of the West Sea Barrage, the Taedong River has been turned into a large lake. Now that we have built the West Sea Barrage, salty seawater does not come into the river; that is good. We are pumping river water for irrigation.

You asked if any changes have occurred in fish living in the Taedong River or in their varieties since completion of the West Sea Barrage. Apparently no great change has taken place as yet. Since completion of the West Sea Barrage, marine fish live in the sea and freshwater fish live in the river as before. However, we have experienced some difficulty in farming such fish as grey mullet that breeds in the sea and lives in fresh water. Big grey mullet can swim through the fishway of the barrage, but it is difficult for young ones. I met a scientist who had studied how to hatch the spawn of grey mullet in fresh water, so I asked him if we could breed grey mullet artificially in the Taedong River. He said that even in the river we could hatch the spawn of grey mullet artificially and propagate them. So I told him to hatch the spawn of grey mullet artificially and raise them on a large
scale. From olden times the grey mullet soup of Pyongyang has been famous. There is a saying that people cannot say they have been to Pyongyang if they have not tasted grey mullet soup.

Besides grey mullet there are many other fish in the Taedong River. It also abounds in surf clams. When Luise Rinser, a West German woman writer, visited our country last year, I enjoyed boating with her on the Taedong River. We served her a dish made of clams caught there, and she said it was very delicious.

I am always thinking about how to prevent the Taedong River from being polluted.

In order to protect the natural environment, we have enacted an appropriate law and issued a presidential decree. Our people are making every endeavour to protect the natural environment. To keep the Taedong River from being polluted, they are taking thorough steps to prevent pollutants from towns, factories and enterprises from flowing into it.

The problem is that vessels are polluting the sea and the river. That is why we do not allow oil tankers to pass the West Sea Barrage but make them unload crude oil at other ports. In future we shall not allow many vessels to navigate on the Taedong River. I intend to build a port for 200,000-ton-class vessels at Sok Island outside the barrage. Cargo ships will stay there, and only vessels equipped with filtering facilities will be allowed to pass the barrage. Then we shall be able to prevent the Taedong River from being polluted.

You have not visited Mt. Paektu this time. You had better come again in summer and climb that mountain. Mt. Paektu is 2,750 metres above sea level and has a large lake on top of it. Many rare plants thrive around the Mt. Paektu area. There are also many plants that are good for people’s health, such as rhododendron, ganoderma and blueberry. I was told that decocted rhododendron and ganoderma are good for one’s health. Blueberry is also beneficial to health. Blueberry thrives on mountains 1,400 metres above sea level. Liquor made of blueberry is delicious, so blueberry liquor is frequently served at banquets.

If you come to our country in summer, you will be able to bathe in
the sea. The temperature of our seawater in summer is 23 to 24 degrees, which is suitable for swimming. We can bathe in the sea at 15 degrees. In the hot season in our country the seawater rises to 27 degrees sometimes. I hope you will visit our country again in summer.

I think it is very good to have close relations between our two Parties. Our Party thoroughly maintains independence and your Party, too, advocates independence. If our two Parties respect each other without interfering in each other’s domestic affairs, the friendship between them will be further strengthened and developed. If our Party respects your Party’s policies and we give active support to your work and vice versa, relations between our two Parties will become closer and they will be united more firmly.

I believe that your current visit to our country provides an opportunity to strengthen and develop relations between our two Parties. I wish you good health during your stay in our country.
I warmly welcome your visit to our country.
I express my gratitude to the Chairman of the Revolutionary Party of Tanzania for sending his greetings to me.

Your current visit to our country shows that our two Parties and peoples have a very close relationship.

You said that you learned about our experience in building the Party and the state during your stay in our country; party building is a very important question in developing countries. Only when developing countries build a strong party and enhance its role, can they mobilize the masses of the people to build a new society successfully.

Bourgeois parties in developed capitalist countries are assembly centres where capitalists gather for election campaigns. Many developing countries are building their parties like those in developed countries; they must not follow such methods. Those parties are not powerful enough to mobilize the masses of the people to build a new society. Developing countries must organize and develop their parties not for the sake of election campaigns but so as to be able to mobilize the people for building a new society.

The most important question facing developing countries at present is to organize and motivate the people in the building of a new society. Developing countries have abundant natural resources. However, they
do not have the funds or up-to-date machines needed to develop such resources. In fact, all they have are people. Under such conditions mobilizing the strength of the people is the only way to exploit natural resources and make effective use of them.

Tanzania has a large territory and abounds in underground resources and water. You are short of funds and up-to-date machines, but you have the masses of the people; if you enlist their energies in land reclamation and irrigation works, you will be able to enjoy a good harvest, provide people with enough food and make them well-off. After all, the strength of the masses is the most powerful weapon in Tanzania in the building of a new society.

To organize and mobilize the masses of the people skilfully, you must build a revolutionary party and strengthen it. Using only a president’s baton, without a party, you cannot organize the people efficiently.

We always carry on the revolution and construction by strengthening the Party and mobilizing the people. The masses of the people have inexhaustible strength. Organizing and mobilizing the masses of the people make it possible to carry out the revolutionary struggle and construction work successfully.

I started my revolutionary activities by going among the people and organizing them. When we were starting the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we had not a rifle to speak of. We began our activity by forming a revolutionary organization with young patriots and building it up; we rallied the broad masses through this organization and roused them to the anti-Japanese struggle. In the course of this we captured weapons from the enemy to arm ourselves and expanded the anti-Japanese armed struggle. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle we had to fight under extremely difficult conditions; we had nothing to rely on but the people. I raised the slogan “As fish cannot live out of water, so the guerrillas cannot live without the people,” and saw to it that the soldiers of the People’s Revolutionary Army always loved, fought for and relied on the people. At that time our people gave active support and assistance to the
People’s Revolutionary Army. Thanks to the people’s active support and aid, we could fight for nearly 20 years against the one-million-strong Japanese imperialist army, equipped with airplanes, guns and other up-to-date weapons, finally smashing the Japanese imperialist aggressors and liberating the country.

After liberating the country, we also built a new country by organizing and mobilizing the strength of the masses.

After liberation we started to build a new society on the debris. Fleeing our country following their defeat, the Japanese imperialist aggressors destroyed most of our factories and enterprises. Our people had nothing to eat, because the Japanese plundered all our rice.

Shortly after my return to the motherland, some workers in a railway factory created a disturbance, asking for rice, because they were too hungry to work. However, we had no rice to give them, so I appeared before the workers and made a speech: You are demanding rice now, but no rice is available for us who fought the Japanese imperialist aggressors for a long time on Mt. Paektu in order to take back our lost country. We returned home with only the empty knapsacks we carried on our backs on the mountains. Rice must be produced by our own efforts by raising good crops. If you do not overcome the present food crisis and instead cause trouble, the situation of our country will become more difficult. Causing a riot is not a solution to the rice problem; only when we work hard in firm unity, can we obtain food and become well-off. Hearing my speech, the workers expressed their support, saying that what I said was right.

Afterwards we carried out agrarian reform in the rural areas and launched irrigation projects to help the peasants. In those days I went among the masses with a shovel on my shoulder and encouraged people by working with them. I saw to it that all cadres and Party members led the van of the masses to mobilize them for the struggle to build a new country. By organizing and mobilizing the masses in this way we obtained food and overcame the difficulties facing us.

In 1950, less than five years after the country’s liberation, US imperialists launched an invasion against our people, and our people
had to fight them. The US imperialist aggressors were equipped with modern weapons and other combat equipment, whereas our People’s Army was in its infancy with old-fashioned weapons and military equipment. Nevertheless, we emerged victorious in this war, too.

We could emerge victorious in the war against the US imperialists, a big power, because we had powerful unity among our people. They all came out and fought heroically, convinced that our system was a most excellent system for the people and that the people’s committee represented genuine people’s power. They fought determined to win the war in response to the call of the Workers’ Party and as taught by General Kim Il Sung, in order to defend the benevolent system and people’s power, which gave land to the peasants and made all people well-off.

During the Fatherland Liberation War everything in our country was burnt, destroyed and reduced to ashes. During this three-year war the US imperialist aggressors not only bombed and destroyed towns and farm villages, but also even burnt trees on mountains with incendiary bombs. After the war no cement, steel or brick was available.

After the ceasefire we had to carry out reconstruction, but our officials only sighed; they were at a loss as to what to do. When the people were hesitating over how to carry out reconstruction, I appealed to them: As long as we have the land, the people, the people’s government and the correct leadership of the Party, we can rise up again even on the debris. Is it impossible to carry out reconstruction when we have defeated the US imperialists, who boasted of being the “strongest” in the world? Let us all come out for reconstruction. By powerfully drawing all the people into the struggle for reconstruction, we rebuilt the destroyed towns, farm villages and factories in a short span of time and won a great victory in the postwar reconstruction.

Today we are advancing dynamically to reach a high eminence of socialism. All our people are waging a struggle to carry out the Third Seven-Year Plan. If they fulfil this task, our economy will reach a high level. We have the capability of developing the economy rapidly. It
comes from the strength of the masses, who have rallied solidly behind the Party and the leader. This September we greet the 40th anniversary of the founding of the Republic. For this festival our people are launching a 200-day campaign for accelerating socialist economic construction. I am the commander-in-chief of this battle. The tasks of this battle are being carried out satisfactorily now. The rail transport sector is hauling 20,000 tons more every day than the planned figure and the coal industry is exceeding its target every day by 20,000 to 30,000 tons. The electricity industry and other sectors, too, are exceeding their targets. In a nutshell, everything is going well in our country under the leadership of the Party.

You said that you would learn from the success and experience in the building of our Party and carry on the revolutionary struggle vigorously. I think you had better learn about the method of strengthening the Party and the unity of the people, the method of organizing and mobilizing the strength of the people and the like.

In order to carry out revolution and construction successfully, it is necessary to strengthen the party first. Only when the party is consolidated, is it possible to rally the masses of the people firmly, and only when the masses are united, can they shape their destiny by their own efforts, creating more and better material wealth for themselves.

Strengthening the party requires, first of all, the firm unity and cohesion of the whole party, centring on the leader. Just as worker bees form a group and live in a disciplined way, centring on a queen bee, so the collective must have a centre and discipline. Since the party is a revolutionary organization, all its members must be rallied firmly behind it, centring on the leader, and live under strict discipline. Only then can the party become powerful and lead revolution and construction correctly.

In order to strengthen the party, party organizations must be built soundly and enhance their role. The work of educating party members, uniting the masses of the people and mobilizing them to implement revolutionary tasks is realized through party organizations. Without building up party organizations, the party would become impotent.
In strengthening the party, it is important to set up a proper system of educating its members. In our Party a well-organized system has been established to educate Party members and working people. In our country all the working people are educated and trained politically and ideologically through the life in their organizations.

Our Party has made it a rule for all officials to study half a day every Saturday, to take part in labour on Friday and to attend intensive courses for a month a year. Today is Friday. On this day, except those who are as old as I and those engaged in external affairs, all officials, including the Premier and vice-premiers, participate in physical labour. Physical labour benefits people’s health and also has a major effect on revolutionizing people. Tomorrow is Saturday. On this day all cadres and Party members work at their jobs in the morning, and in the afternoon they study Party policies by their study groups. In our country all cadres attend Party schools or other political schools one month a year. In these one-month courses they study the Party’s line and policies in depth and, based upon them, reexamine and criticize the shortcomings revealed in their work and life.

If a cadre is left without reeducation, his brain may be spoiled and become rusty, and in the long run he may degenerate. We help cadres rectify their defects in and out of work promptly through organizational life, as people wash their faces every morning. In other words, if they get stained with capitalist dirt, they must wash it off, and if they are contaminated with revisionist dirt, they must clear it away. Because our Party educates cadres on a regular basis in this way, they do not become affected with capitalism or revisionism, and if they do, they wash it off quickly. Only when the cadres continually cultivate their minds through such education, can they remain ideologically sound and work faithfully with a revolutionary heart and attitude.

Nowadays, the parties of some socialist countries are neglecting ideological education for their cadres, party members and other working people. Consequently, those parties fail to strike root deep among the people, who go so far as to stage demonstrations and go on strike against their parties. When parties fail to strike root among the
masses and do their bit, they will naturally be forsaken by the people.

Neither demonstrations nor strikes against the Party take place in our country; such disturbances will never occur in future either, because our Party is rooted deep among the people, fights for the interests of the people and enjoys their unqualified support.

When I met the President of Tanzania last year, I suggested that our two countries cooperate with each other in launching an irrigation project and running a joint-venture farm in Tanzania. Our two countries have already started joint-venture farming. I was told that some of our agricultural technicians and specialists in your country were suffering from disease. Our officials are unwilling to go to your country, because they are not immune to endemic diseases, so I persuade them to go there for the sake of the revolution and to help the Tanzanian people. If you exert sincere effort for several years and become capable of supplying enough food to the people, it will mean that the Revolutionary Party of Tanzania has won a great victory.

I hope that the Revolutionary Party of Tanzania will build an independent national economy, displaying the spirit of self-reliance, and convert your country into a prosperous people’s country where all the people live happily, and that in the course of this your Party will develop and strengthen into the most brilliant and militant party in Africa.

I wish you, on your return home, to convey my greetings to the chairman of your party, the President and other friends of mine and the greetings of our Party and our people to the members of the Revolutionary Party of Tanzania and the Tanzanian people.
At this session of the Central People’s Committee, I should like to talk about raising the revolutionary spirit among officials, increasing the production of paper and fertilizer and a few other matters.

1. ON RAISING THE REVOLUTIONARY SPIRIT AMONG OFFICIALS

Our Party is a revolutionary party, fighting for the interests of the working class and the masses of working people. Major traits required of members of a revolutionary, fighting Party are revolutionary spirit, Party spirit, working-class spirit and popular spirit. Especially, revolutionary spirit is the major trait for Party members to display to a high degree. Without revolutionary spirit, one cannot overcome the difficulties encountered in the course of revolutionary struggle or devote his all to the struggle for the Party, working class and people. So I used to say that revolutionary spirit is a major character and trait of
revolutionaries. A Korean proverb says: “Even if the sky fell in, there would be a way out.” It means that however great challenges they may encounter, people can find a way out if they work with a high revolutionary spirit. For a man of strong revolutionary spirit, nothing is impossible. So at every opportunity I say that officials must have a high revolutionary spirit.

My experience in the revolutionary struggle also shows that if one has a revolutionary spirit, one can surely break through whatever difficulty. While leading the revolutionary struggle and construction work during the past 60-odd years, I have undergone innumerable difficulties and critical moments. The revolutionary road we traversed in the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, the Fatherland Liberation War, postwar reconstruction, socialist revolution and so on was not so smooth as a boat sailing in a fair wind. True, all revolution is arduous, in that it is an undertaking to overthrow the old and create the new, but our revolution was unprecedendently arduous and complicated. However, I have never vacillated before difficulties, fighting on against them.

During the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we had neither a home front provided by a state nor any assistance from a regular army. We ourselves had to obtain weapons, ammunition, food, clothing, and everything else needed for the armed struggle. Worse still, the Japanese imperialists hurled numerous troops nearly every day into their frantic “punitive” operations against the anti-Japanese guerrilla army and attempted by all means to undermine it from within. The anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle was, indeed, an unprecedendently arduous revolutionary war in which we had to fight against overwhelming odds, against the one-million-strong Japanese imperialist Kwantung army. However, I never wavered on the revolutionary road to which I had pledged my commitment and fought unyieldingly while solving all problems on my own at all costs, thus defeating the Japanese imperialist aggressors, who were armed to the teeth, and liberating the country.

The Fatherland Liberation War was a grim war, deciding the
destiny of our people. Then the US imperialists, ambitious to crush our young Korea in its cradle, unsparingly mobilized their army and weapons as well as mercenaries from 15 satellite countries for the Korean front. However, I was not frightened at all. Believing in the indomitable revolutionary spirit of our People’s Army and people, I led the war to victory, full of confidence and optimism all the time. Let me refer to one event that happened at that time. Due to the sudden landing at Inchon by the US imperialist aggressors through the mobilization of huge troops, we had to make a temporary, strategic retreat. Because the enemy landed at Inchon, severing the front from the rear, the main force of the People’s Army, which had been advancing south, liberating areas, was encircled by the enemy. The sudden turn in the situation caused some foreigners who were staying in our country in those days to express their anxiety, telling me that we were about to be defeated. I told them: “Our soldiers in the south, though surrounded by the enemy, will all come to us. They will return even by mountain routes, carrying all they can on their shoulders or back, except for big guns or the like.” Afterwards these soldiers all came back to us, breaking through the enemy’s encirclement, as I had anticipated. I saw to it that they were rearmed and went on the counteroffensive, thus forcing the US imperialist aggressors, who had boasted of being the “mightiest” in the world, to kneel down and achieving historic victory in the Fatherland Liberation War.

We defeated the US imperialists and emerged victorious in the Fatherland Liberation War, but the ravages of the war were indescribable. Factories and enterprises were all destroyed, towns and countryside were reduced to ashes and the people were in dire poverty. In a word, there were only heaps of ashes in our country after the war. In this situation, rehabilitation and construction were not a simple job.

To reconstruct the destroyed towns, factories and enterprises we had to lay bricks, but we had not a single good brick and we had few experienced bricklayers. So, to train bricklayers, I ensured that construction workers were sent abroad to learn the technique of bricklaying. On their return home they constructed the Taedonggang
Hotel and the building of the Ministry of the People’s Armed Forces.

After the war the Kangnam Ceramic Factory and the Taesong Ceramic Factory, though constructed, could not be run for some time because the chimneys were not set up. Since our country had been a colony of the Japanese imperialists for a long time, no one knew the technique of building chimneys. This fact alone clearly shows the miserable circumstances of the former colonial countries.

During the postwar rehabilitation many difficult problems arose. We had no cranes. One morning when the postwar reconstruction was in full swing, I looked around several construction sites in Pyongyang and found large numbers of broken bricks, with only some in good shape. To investigate the cause of their breaking, I went to where ships were unloading them near Taedong Bridge. I found workers unloading the bricks by throwing them one by one, so I told the officials not to unload bricks by throwing them one by one, but to make wooden boxes or mesh bags for the bricks, lifting them by wooden derricks set up like a large water dipper. The wooden boxes or mesh bags can be compared to the containers used nowadays. When I was young, I had seen my grandfather making a mesh bag out of straw and, filling it with melons, carrying it on his shoulder. I thought it would be good to use such a thing to unload bricks and instructed to do so. When the bricks were put into mesh bags and attached to the long arm of the derricks to be lifted round, like drawing water from a well with a large dipper, it was easy to unload them. Afterwards the bricks did not break.

So long as they have a revolutionary spirit, officials can develop their ingenuity and find solutions to knotty problems.

During the great Chollima upswing, too, we surmounted the obstacles in our way by fully displaying revolutionary spirit.

The situation in our country after the war was extremely difficult and complicated. The enemy stepped up their machinations to ignite another aggressive war against the northern half of Korea, while the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists who had been lurking in the Party directly attacked the Party with the backing of the great-power chauvinists, who also brought pressure to bear upon us. In
order to remove the obstacles to our revolution, we had to effect a fresh, revolutionary upswing in all sectors of socialist construction. The Chollima Movement was an all-people mass movement that we initiated and promoted by giving full scope to the revolutionary enthusiasm of the masses of the people, in order to break through the difficulties and effect a great upsurge in revolution.

Not only during the great Chollima upswing, but also today I ensure that officials resolve all difficult and complicated problems by displaying their revolutionary spirit. At every meeting I tell our officials how we have overcome the challenges during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, Fatherland Liberation War, postwar rehabilitation and great Chollima upswing, because I want them to possess a high revolutionary spirit through learning from such a fighting spirit.

Some officials, however, are now revealing a lack of revolutionary spirit frequently. It finds expression in officials’ not making painstaking efforts to implement the Party’s lines and policies. As I always say, the Party is a political organization to make a revolution. To fulfil its mission and duty, it must formulate correct lines and policies and ensure that they are implemented to the letter. All the lines and policies our Party has adopted up to now are valid and correct. The point in question is how our officials implement them.

The problems of paper and of fertilizer put on the agenda for discussion at this session of the Central People’s Committee clearly show how hard our officials are working to implement the Party’s policy, and how strong their revolutionary spirit is.

As for the problem of paper, our officials can certainly solve it if they pay a little attention to it, but they are not making efforts to increase the production of paper through the efficient running of paper mills nor do they suggest any effective measures for solving the problem. If the local paper mills are not running because of a shortage of caustic soda, they will have to take measures to make groundwood pulp for producing paper. Producing paper with groundwood pulp does not use caustic soda. The officials, however, are not promoting their
work in a revolutionary manner, while making complaints about conditions. If making effective use of the Amnokgang Marine Transport Company increases the rate of operation of ships, North Phyongan Province can supply the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Complex with reed in time, but it has not taken any measures for the purpose. When I asked the officials of North Phyongan Province why they were not increasing the production of paper, they replied that they were not carrying reed in time for lack of barges. If the Amnokgang Marine Transport Company is unable to carry reed in time for lack of barges, the senior officials of the province will have to inquire into the rate of operation of barges and take measures for mobilizing more barges. At the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee we discussed effecting a new turn in the work of science and education. To implement the decision of the plenary meeting, therefore, officials must investigate how many more and what kinds of schools should be constructed and how many more textbooks should be supplemented for students and organize the work of producing and supplying sufficient numbers of textbooks and notebooks for the students.

Our officials are also not working enthusiastically to implement the Party’s policy on establishing a production base for double superphosphate of lime.

When I asked officials when the decision on establishment of this base was adopted, some of them did not even know at which meeting it was discussed and when it was to be set up. This shows that our officials are not studying Party policies assiduously and lack the spirit of absolutely and unconditionally carrying out Party lines and policies.

Our officials’ lack of revolutionary spirit is due mainly to their inexperience in training through arduous struggle and hardship. As they have not undergone training amid arduous revolutionary struggle, instead living a comfortable life free from worry about food and clothing, like the children of wealthy men in former days, our officials are not attempting to break through even a slight difficulty faced in their work by their own efforts.

As I have said on several occasions, some people are now feeling so
content with the present standard of living, which has been raised to some extent, enabling them to live free from worry about food, clothing and housing, that they are revealing a tendency to live in comfort, instead of making a continued effort to develop the revolution to a higher stage. That is a mistake. We must never be content with today’s standard of living. We must continue the revolution to build a communist society, an ideal society of mankind, on this land. All officials must work energetically to achieve a final victory of our revolutionary cause, with high revolutionary spirit.

In order to get high revolutionary spirit, officials must intensify the training of their Party spirit. Party organizations must launch a vigorous struggle among officials, especially among cadres, to train their Party spirit, so that they carry out their revolutionary duty to the end against any adversity, with high revolutionary spirit.

2. ON INCREASING THE PRODUCTION OF PAPER

Increasing the production of paper is of great significance in carrying out the cultural revolution. The amount of paper produced is a measure of the cultural level of a country.

Our officials, however, are not paying due attention to paper production. That is why paper production per capita is not great, and this is holding back the cultural revolution.

All officials, fully determined to effect revolutionary change in paper production, must boost paper production quickly by concentrating their efforts on its development.

Favourable conditions have been created in our country for increasing paper production. There are many large paper mills, such as the Haeju Paper Complex, Hoeryong Paper Complex, Hyesan Paper Complex, Chongjin Chemical Fibre Complex, Kilju Pulp Mill, Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Complex, Sinuiju Pulp Mill and Mill No. 121. Not a
few cities and counties have their own paper mills.

Our country abounds in raw materials, such as wood, reed, shrubs and straw, for making paper.

We must launch a vigorous struggle to reach the target for paper production envisaged in the Third Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule by effectively using existing conditions and possibilities.

To produce large quantities of paper, you must operate centrally run paper mills at full capacity, especially the Hoeryong Paper Complex, Hyesan Paper Complex, Haeju Paper Complex, Kilju Pulp Mill and Sinuiju Pulp Mill.

You must supply them with enough raw and other materials by specifying the amount in the state plan.

It is necessary to supply caustic soda to the Hoeryong Paper Complex, Hyesan Paper Complex and other enterprises that produce kraft paper and set up a process for recovering caustic soda in such industries. The process for recovering caustic soda must be set up well in the Hoeryong Paper Complex and Hyesan Paper Complex. They are now complaining that they cannot produce a sufficient amount of paper because of a shortage of caustic soda, while making no effort to set up a process for recovering caustic soda. You must not pay only lip service to this work, but assign the task of establishing the process for the Hoeryong Paper Complex to one machine factory and for the Hyesan Paper Complex to another machine factory, so that they take full responsibility for carrying out their assignments. If the May 10 Factory is given responsibility to set up the process for the Hoeryong Paper Complex, it will be able to do it immediately.

Measures must be taken to supply enough wood to the Hoeryong Paper Complex and Hyesan Paper Complex. It would be reasonable to attach a lumber station to the Hoeryong Paper Complex for the purpose. The Hyesan Paper Complex is now producing kraft paper for packing cement to be exported, thanks to the good supply of quality wood by the lumber station attached to it, whereas the Hoeryong Paper Complex is not producing quality kraft paper, because it is supplied with low-quality imported wood. You must give the Hoeryong Paper
Complex’s wood to other paper mills and supply it with quality wood, so that it can produce quality kraft paper. If the Hoeryong Paper Complex fails to produce properly in the future, the lumber station attached to it should be considered as not having fulfilled its plan, though it carried out its plan for timber production.

Measures must also be taken to supply coal to the Hoeryong Paper Complex and the Hyesan Paper Complex. Supplying coal to them will not be a big problem, because the coal problem has been resolved in North Hamgyong Province and a coal mine has been opened in the Paegam area of Ryanggang Province. If Ryanggang Province finds it difficult to supply coal to the Hyesan Paper Complex under present circumstances, it must develop another coal mine in the Paegam area that will supply coal to the complex.

You must equip the Hoeryong Paper Complex and the Hyesan Paper Complex with lumber stations and coal mines, so that they will not encounter any problem of wood or coal in their production.

It is important to put the production of local paper mills on a steady basis. You must examine in detail why it is difficult for provinces and counties to run their paper mills at full capacity and solve their problems, so that they can ensure normal production in local paper mills.

In order to produce large quantities of paper, it is imperative to increase the capacity for paper production. You must expand centrally run paper mills that need expansion by including them in the state plan.

You must increase our country’s production capacity for kraft paper to about 100,000 tons. Since the country is expected to produce 22 million tons of cement annually by the last year of the Third Seven-Year Plan, large quantities of kraft paper will be needed for packing them. To increase the production capacity for kraft paper to 100,000 tons, you must not build new factories, but increase the production capacity of the Hoeryong Paper Complex and Hyesan Paper Complex to 50,000 tons each.

Along with augmenting the production capacity for kraft paper, you must launch a struggle to improve the quality of kraft paper.
When centrally run paper mills produce paper with semichemical pulp in the future, they must take thoroughgoing measures to prevent rivers and streams from pollution.

If paper is produced with semichemical pulp, it will produce waste water, which may flow into rivers and streams, polluting them, resulting in the loss of fish and damage to the willows on the bank, impairing the scenery. To prevent the pollution of rivers and streams, paper must be produced without using semichemical pulp. Producing paper without using chemicals is the most reasonable way. Producing paper with semichemical pulp is not agreeable, since it may pollute rivers and streams. It does not mean, however, that paper mills should not make semichemical pulp or that they should close all existing semichemical pulp shops. If paper is to be produced with semichemical pulp, you must purify the waste water, so that rivers and streams are not at all polluted. You must ensure that not even a drop of unpurified waste water flows into rivers and streams.

Our country is known throughout the world for its fine scenery and clean water. Few countries can equal ours in this respect. One year the chairman of the management board of the Mangyongdae Cooperative Farm went to a socialist European country for relaxation. On his return home he told me: “President, during my stay in that country I was dying to drink the refreshing, clean water of my country. Clean water is available everywhere in our country, whereas all the rivers of that country are full of muddy water. What I found better in that country than in ours were the good houses and wide roads. We can build as good houses and wide roads as theirs in the future. It may be possible for that country to build good houses and wide roads, but it cannot make clean water available everywhere, as we can.”

Years ago when a senior official in the mining industry told me of the plan to open up a gold mine on Mt. Myohyang, I had the project stopped right away. Mt. Myohyang is a good scenic spot with clean water running down every valley. If a gold mine had been opened up and an ore-dressing plant set up on it, however, not only its clean water but even the water of the Chongchon River would have been polluted.
You can still find the place on Mt. Myohyang where the ground was dug for the gold mine. It is good that measures were taken at that time not to open the gold mine.

Many foreigners visit Mt. Myohyang, and are all envious of its beautiful scenery. They are said to have been moved with admiration by our official’s explanation that years ago I dissuaded some officials from opening up a gold mine on it, because it would impair the beautiful scenery of the mountain.

Paper mills producing paper with semichemical pulp must strictly observe the principle of not in the slightest damaging the work of adding more value and beauty to the beautiful scenery of the country, a precious asset of our people. You must ensure that the paper mills set up good purifying grounds for waste water. If they fail to do so, you must not allow them to operate.

As for the large paper mills, such as the Hoeryong Paper Complex, Hyesan Paper Complex, Haeju Paper Complex, Kilju Pulp Mill and Sinuiju Pulp Mill, the Commission of the Chemical and Light Industries must take the responsibility to give them guidance, and other commissions, ministries, provincial Party committees and administration and economic guidance committees must also assist them effectively, setting up the necessary facilities for them immediately.

It is necessary to construct local paper mills on a large scale to increase paper production capacity.

It is now calculated that by the end of the Third Seven-Year Plan, besides the paper to be produced by the centrally run paper mills, the paper to be produced by local paper mills will amount to 11.3 kg per capita; this amount is too small. The local production of 11.3 kg of paper per capita will not meet the ever-growing demand for paper. Provinces need a lot of paper for notebooks, office paper, floor paper and wallpaper, as well as for printing newspapers and books. Books will have to be printed at the provincial level; printing them at the central level alone cannot meet the demand for them. Local areas will need a lot of paper for many purposes. So the provinces must set
ambitious goals for paper production and launch a dynamic struggle to attain them. I think it reasonable to increase the production capacity of local paper mills to 15 to 20 kg of paper per capita. I think it good for provinces to organize competitions for increased paper production among cities and counties. Cities and counties whose paper mills produce 15 kg of paper per capita can be judged as having reached the standard of “pass”, and those that produce 20 kg of paper per capita will be “best”.

Cities and counties must expand paper mills needing expansion and construct new ones if necessary.

Local paper mills must produce paper without using caustic soda. This is certainly possible. Immediately after liberation local areas produced white paper with paper mulberry, not using caustic soda at all. At the gateway to the temple of Mt. Myohyang a factory was producing white paper using paper mulberry. I was there. Such factories no longer exist, but immediately after liberation they were set up everywhere in the country.

While waging revolutionary struggle against the Japanese, I stayed a long time in Fusong. People there and in the Antu area were producing white paper by grinding straw and were not using caustic soda. Since even in the past paper was made without caustic soda, our officials’ arguments that they cannot produce large amounts of paper because of a short supply of caustic soda hold no water.

To produce paper without using caustic soda, local paper mills must make and use groundwood pulp. Making groundwood pulp is nothing special. Just cut down a tree, strip its bark, cut the tree into small pieces and put them in a grinder. If paper is produced using groundwood pulp, rivers and streams will not be polluted, since the process will not use caustic soda. Changsong County is not contaminating rivers and streams while making paper, because it has established a paper mill using groundwood pulp. Therefore I say it is good for local paper mills to make and use groundwood pulp to produce paper.

Supplying raw materials will be no problem in this process. All kinds of trees in the mountains can be used for making groundwood
pulp. Our mountains are rich in varieties of trees.

The trees county paper mills will need to produce groundwood pulp can be supplied fully by instructing office workers on Friday Labour Day to climb a mountain and bring back a load of wood each. The amount gathered in this way on one Friday Labour Day alone will be enough for county paper mills to produce large quantities of paper.

As for the trees necessary for making groundwood pulp, you can plant fast-growing trees and cut them for the purpose. Aspen, poplar and alder trees grow fast. If poplar trees are planted along roads, in five years they can be cut to make groundwood pulp. If aspen, poplar and other fast-growing trees are planted, they can be used for producing quality white paper.

As most counties in our country have mountains, every county can plant trees with which to make paper. South Hwanghae Province is situated in the lowlands, but its counties, too, can surely plant trees, because they all have mountains.

Shrubs can also be used for making groundwood pulp. Shrubs are available in every province and county—everywhere in our country. They may not be abundant in such areas as Yomju and Pakchon Counties of North Phyongan Province. Such counties can still use straw in place of shrubs.

There is no better way for local paper mills to produce paper than by using groundwood pulp. They must mainly adopt this way for their production.

As for the machines and equipment necessary for local paper mills to make groundwood pulp for paper production, you must supply steel to provinces so they can produce and supply equipment to their factories on their own.

Provinces must manufacture paper machines for their local paper mills. How they can serialize the production of paper machines and supply them poses a problem. I think it would be reasonable to let each large province build one paper-machine production base for its own use, while allowing two small provinces to build one base for their cooperative use. For the paper-machine production base, it is not
necessary to build a separate factory; a shop can be added to a large machine factory.

The provinces must also produce grinders on their own and supply them to their local paper mills. Grinders need no special manufacturing technique, so any machine factory, if supplied with steel, can manufacture them. For instance, in North Phyongan Province the Ragwon Machine Complex can serialize the production of grinders and supply them.

Electric motors needed for local paper mills must also be made by the provinces themselves.

The wire meshes, screen belts and boilers needed to produce paper with groundwood pulp will have to be supplied by the state. The manufacture of wire meshes and boilers can be unified by setting up a shop in a large machine factory. You must calculate well what kinds of machines and equipment the state must make for local paper mills.

The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees must not think only of receiving machines and equipment from the state, since the latter is to manufacture some of them for them, but make what they can in their provinces.

In future the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees must shoulder the responsibility to produce enough paper to satisfy the demands of their provinces. Whether or not they solve the problem of paper for their provinces can be said to depend on their ability and talent.

Provinces must unconditionally reach the paper production goal to be achieved by the last year of the Third Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule by tapping their manpower and material resources to the maximum and giving full scope to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude. They need not necessarily attempt to attain the goal only in the last year of the Third Seven-Year Plan, since, with their local paper mills producing paper with groundwood pulp, they will not face any big problem.
The measures taken at the current session to increase paper production are good in all respects. Provinces, cities and counties must build up their local paper mills quickly and launch the struggle to attain the paper production goal ahead of schedule.

3. ON INCREASING FERTILIZER PRODUCTION

In order to increase cereal production by implementing the Party’s agriculture-first policy to the letter, fertilizer must be produced in large quantities and supplied to the countryside. However hard you try to reap a good harvest, you will not be able to do so unless you have fertilizer. Especially on our arable land, good harvests cannot be expected without fertilizer, because the land’s fertility has been diminished as farm crops absorbed nutrient elements over the years. On land under cultivation, grain output depends on the amount of fertilizer applied.

The current discussion of fertilizer production by the Central People’s Committee is aimed specifically at producing and supplying sufficient fertilizer for next year’s farming.

It is imperative, above all else, to produce large quantities of phosphatic fertilizer.

For a good harvest it is important to produce great amounts of both phosphatic and nitrogenous fertilizer. If you spread only nitrogenous fertilizer on paddy and dry fields, you cannot gather in heavy crops. Only when you put large amounts of both nitrogenous and phosphatic fertilizer, can you harvest a high yield of grains. Paddy and dry fields, if not spread with enough phosphatic fertilizer, may yield many empty heads of grain. This year you have failed to supply sufficient phosphatic fertilizer to the countryside; next year you must increase the production of this fertilizer to send large quantities to the countryside. Every year the period from May 21 to the following May 20 is the time for applying
fertilizer, so you must promote phosphatic fertilizer production from now on, so as to have it ready for next year’s farming.

In future we expect to put about 1.5 million tons of nitrogenous fertilizer on paddy and dry fields, which means you must produce 1.7 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer. Our country has the capacity to produce this amount of phosphatic fertilizer. If the production capacities of the Nampho Smeltery Complex, Munphyong Smeltery, Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, Haeju Smeltery, Ssangryong Mine, Jongju Microelement and Superphosphate of Lime Fertilizer Factory, and Chongsu Chemical Factory are added up, the sum is 1.7 million tons. For this amount of phosphatic fertilizer to be produced, the Chongsu Chemical Factory must produce 150,000 tons of fused phosphatic fertilizer. This fertilizer is not very effective on paddy and nonpaddy fields. Some officials say that it is no less effective than superphosphate of lime and more efficacious than the latter on sand. Their assertion, however, is not reasonable. During my field guidance of rural communities in the past, I met farmers and they told me that fused phosphatic fertilizer spread over paddy and dry fields would have only a slight effect on crops after a long while.

Superphosphate of lime and fused phosphatic fertilizer can be compared to boiled white rice and maize. Boiled white rice is easy to digest, but maize is not. If fused phosphatic fertilizer were better than superphosphate of lime, there would be no need to go to the effort of producing sulphuric acid for superphosphate of lime. Even foreign technical information says that only if phosphatic fertilizer is mixed with acid can it easily be taken in by farm crops. It is said that a mixture of fused phosphatic fertilizer and superphosphate of lime is effective when spread over paddy and dry fields. Probably this assertion, too, is, in the final analysis, based on the fact that superphosphate of lime contains acid. Fused phosphatic fertilizer, spread over the land, may make the soil fertile, because it supplements it with phosphorus, but it is not so good for crops to take in as superphosphate of lime. I proved this through experiment while directing agricultural work myself.

I think it would be good not to produce fused phosphatic fertilizer in
the future. As it is not very efficacious and its production takes a lot of electricity, it is necessary to stop its production in future when superphosphate of lime is produced in large quantities. However, as it is difficult to solve the problem of phosphatic fertilizer immediately with the production of superphosphate of lime alone, fused phosphatic fertilizer will have to be produced for the time being.

If a total of 1.75 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer, including 1.6 million tons of superphosphate of lime and 150,000 tons of fused phosphatic fertilizer, is produced in the new manuring year, it will be good, but it is difficult to supply phosphoric concentrates. The supply of phosphoric concentrates will not be enough for the production of 1.7 to 1.75 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer during the new manuring year. The Administration Council and the State Planning Commission have made a plan for the production of 1.7 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer during the new manuring year, intending to import enough phosphoric concentrates to make up for the shortfall. However, if they fail to import, it will create a big problem. Our officials always resort to importing whenever they find something difficult, and this is not a correct method. You must not think of importing phosphoric concentrates, but launch a struggle to produce them in our country. The basic way to solve the problem of phosphoric concentrates is to either expand our existing apatite mines or develop new ones. Therefore you must solve the problem of phosphoric concentrates for the production of phosphatic fertilizer by either expanding or developing such mines.

Since a shortage of phosphoric concentrates will prevent production of 1.7 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer, it is reasonable to produce 1.3 million tons in the new manuring year, which means the ratio of nitrogenous fertilizer to phosphatic fertilizer to be spread over paddy and dry fields must be 1 to 1 on paddy fields and 1 to 0.9 on dry fields. Then 1.3 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer can be spread evenly over all croplands. When the production of phosphatic fertilizer increases to 1.7 million tons, nitrogenous and phosphatic fertilizers must be administered to paddy and dry fields at a ratio of 1 to 1.2.

In producing superphosphate of lime, it is good to increase the
quantity of double superphosphate of lime and granulate it. When superphosphate of lime is spread over paddy and dry fields in the form of powder, only 15 to 30 per cent can be absorbed by crops, the remaining 70 to 85 per cent turning into compounds insoluble in water. If granulated, however, only 7 to 15 per cent becomes insoluble in water, while the rest is all dissolved, letting crops absorb much more. If phosphatic fertilizer is granulated and spread over paddy and dry fields, its waste can be diminished. Some time ago I read that foreign countries, too, were granulating phosphatic fertilizer for farm crops. That is why two years ago I assigned the task of producing and granulating double superphosphate of lime to the Commission of the Extractive Industries. The task, however, has not been carried out properly. I have no objection to the suggestion that the Chongsu Chemical Factory no longer produce fused phosphatic fertilizer, but instead set up a production base for double superphosphate of lime. In future the fertilizer production sector must change from production of superphosphate of lime to that of double superphosphate and granulate it.

In order to increase the production of phosphatic fertilizer, large factories and enterprises must give unstinted assistance to phosphatic fertilizer factories. Each must help one phosphatic fertilizer factory with the repair and maintenance of its machines and equipment and the granulation of phosphatic fertilizer.

Nitrogenous fertilizer must be produced in large quantities. Considering that nitrogenous and phosphatic fertilizers are to be spread over paddy and dry fields at a ratio of 1 to 1.2 , 1.7 to 1.75 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer require about 1.5 million tons of nitrogenous fertilizer. In our country about 1.5 million tons of nitrogenous fertilizer will be enough for paddy and dry fields. Since our paddy and dry fields, including those for vegetables, cover no more than 1.5 million hectares, 1.5 million tons of nitrogenous fertilizer are enough for one ton per hectare. However, as we plan to produce 1.3 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer next year and to spread nitrogenous and phosphatic fertilizers at a ratio of 1 to 1 over paddy fields and 1 to 0.9 over dry fields, it is necessary to supply about 1.4 million tons of
nitrogenous fertilizer to the agricultural sector. If phosphatic fertilizer is not administered to fields in great quantity, nitrogenous fertilizer must be spread accordingly. Great quantities of nitrogenous fertilizer alone will not have great effect.

Besides the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex and Namhung Youth Chemical Complex, the Sunchon Vinalon Complex must produce nitrogenous fertilizer during the new manuring period. It will be good if it produces 200,000 to 300,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer during this period. When it can produce 900,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer, our country will produce a total of 2.7 million tons of nitrogenous fertilizer, which will be more than enough to meet the need.

You must supply the agricultural sector with the calculated 300,000 tons of potassic fertilizer during the new manuring period.

To this end, you must ensure that the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex produce calcinated potassic fertilizer and import some. You can barter nitrogenous fertilizer for potassic fertilizer with a foreign country. It is reported that on the international market now, one ton of the former can be exchanged for 1.2 tons of the latter; thus it will be possible to exchange 100,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer for 120,000 tons of potassic fertilizer.

Next year we must by all means provide 1.4 million tons of nitrogenous fertilizer, 1.3 million tons of phosphatic fertilizer and 300,000 tons of potassic fertilizer and spread the complete assortment of fertilizers over paddy and dry fields. The complete assortment of fertilizers means a mixture of nitrogenous, phosphatic, potassic and silicon fertilizers in reasonable proportion.

Silicon fertilizer will pose no problem, because the calcinated potassic fertilizer to be produced by the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex contains much silicon.

As much *hukposan* fertilizer as possible must be produced, using either peat or slaty coal available in the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex or Kumya Youth Coal Mine. The amount of *hukposan* fertilizer produced by the Kocham Coal Mine is not large enough to be counted in the plan.
4. ON IMMEDIATE FARMING
AND OTHER PROBLEMS

It is important to transplant humus-cake maize seedlings in the right season.

If you transplant them too early, they may suffer frost damage. Last year that happened in some areas, and those areas had to grow seedlings again. In the Pyongyang area the last frost occurs around May 10, so the maize seedlings may be damaged if transplanted before that time.

Even if humus-cake maize seedlings are transplanted a little late, there is no danger of their not maturing in time.

In the Pyongyang area, even if humus-cake maize seedlings are transplanted after the barley harvest, it is still possible to reap a good harvest of maize. When I was directing agriculture myself, I found that the maize crop planted after the barley harvest in the Pyongyang area was fully productive. In those days Pyongyang planted humus-cake maize seedlings on the edges of barley fields and transplanted them after the barley harvest for a double crop. I saw to it, however, that maize was planted for a single crop, not a double crop, because the yield of the latter was lower than that of the former.

Humus-cake maize seedlings planted too early may grow in vain. Some time ago, on the way towards Onchon County, South Phyongan Province, I had the car stop and some humus-cake maize seedlings brought to me. I found not a few growing in vain because of early planting.

The leading officials in the agricultural sector, after making the humus-cake maize seedlings grow in vain because of their unnecessarily early planting, are now saying the seedlings are not transplanted early. I cannot understand what makes them do so.
If the humus-cake maize seedlings are transplanted too early, large quantities of plastic sheeting will be needed for growing them. If the transplanting is done at the right time, plastic sheeting will be needed only for beds of the seedlings to be transplanted earliest, while the rest can be covered only at night with thatch. However, because the transplanting is now done too early, plastic sheeting has to be imported annually, spending a lot of foreign currency, to cover all the seedling beds throughout the country.

The leading officials in the agricultural sector are now suggesting that it is difficult to solve the problem of manpower unless the maize seedlings are transplanted early; otherwise this work will coincide with the rice transplanting. They need not worry. The maize seedlings are not transplanted by cooperative farmers alone, but by supporting people as well. It can be said that in our country farming is actually done not by the cooperative farms alone, but by the whole country. The leading officials in the agricultural sector, worrying unnecessarily that they might not get the project done in time, are insisting upon the early transplantation of humus-cake maize seedlings. In future they must do the work at the right season, refraining from doing it too early.

You must not prevent cooperative farms from covering rice-seedling cold frames with flat-top plastic tunnels.

Recently I inspected Onchon County, South Phyongan Province, and it seemed to me that the flat-top plastic tunnel would not be bad. You drive in stakes around the seedling beds at a reasonable height for the rice seedlings to grow until they have six blades and stretch straw ropes around them, then put plastic sheets on top. This method seems to provide seedling beds with better ventilation and make plastic sheets tear less easily than the arched plastic tunnel using bent sticks. If the cold frame for rice seedlings is covered by an arched plastic tunnel using bent sticks driven in, it is difficult to supply so many bent sticks, and the sheets may flutter in the wind, tearing easily.

You must supply the polyethylene necessary for the production of sheets for next year’s farming on a priority basis.
The Commission of the Chemical and Light Industries has proposed that it sell polyethylene to buy nitrogenous fertilizer; it must not do so. Its suggestion that it can produce and supply the polyethylene necessary for the production of sheets for next year’s farming and still sell polyethylene to buy nitrogenous fertilizer is not convincing. Last year our officials recklessly sold polyethylene to a foreign country, causing difficulties in the production and supply of sheets. How much polyethylene should be supplied for the production of sheets for next year’s farming can be calculated by figuring out how many more sheets must be produced next year, which can be learned only through detailed inquiry into how many sheets are available in the countryside at the present time and how many will become unusable after this year’s farming. When you calculate the number of sheets to be produced for next year’s farming, you must fix in the state plan the amount of polyethylene to be supplied every month to produce the calculated amount of sheets and supply it unconditionally. This year you must earmark the necessary amount of polyethylene for the production of sheets for next year’s farming and then distribute the rest to other sectors or for export. You must establish a rigid discipline of supplying necessary materials for farming; otherwise you cannot do good farming.

You must launch a vigorous campaign for rice transplantation from May 10. To this end, it is necessary to supply machines, fuel and fertilizer to the countryside in a concentrated way. You must also send out soon all the auxiliary manpower for the campaign to support the countryside. From now on all forces must be mobilized solely for rice transplantation. You must not allow the transplanting of too young rice seedlings on the excuse that you are urged to start the project from May 10. You must ensure that only those with six blades are transplanted.

You must soon build a pilot plant for the production of steel by the superelectric steelmaking process. It is high time our country discarded steelmaking by coke and adopted the superelectric steelmaking process.
The process of producing steel by making pig iron with coking coal is outdated. This process requires three furnaces—a coke oven, sintering furnace and blast furnace—as well as a blower and a variety of large auxiliary facilities. Therefore the metallurgical industry must discard this process and adopt the superelectric steelmaking process, which does not need much electricity.

When the metallurgical industry adopts this new process, using no coking coal, there will be no need to import coking coal. For our country to adopt this process can be said to be a revolution.

There will be nothing problematic in adopting this process. It will be necessary to solve the problem of pitch electrode, a transformer of large capacity, a computer and other automatic equipment. If we manufacture the equipment necessary for this process on our own, we shall fully effect the Juche orientation of our metallurgical industry.

I intend to introduce the process first in the two-million-ton-capacity steel works being built in the Chollima Steel Complex and then in Songjin Steel Complex, Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and all other metal works. By doing so we must break with the blast furnace and coking coal.

In order to introduce the superelectric steelmaking process in the new two-million-ton-capacity steel works to be built in the Chollima Steel Complex, it is imperative to build a small pilot plant first and experiment there. If the process is not tried out sufficiently in a small pilot plant, but introduced immediately in the two-million-ton-capacity steel works, resulting in abnormal operation, it will be a great loss. So I have decided to have a small pilot plant built for experimenting with the superelectric steelmaking process, and at the consultative meeting of senior officials in the metal industry I set the task of building such a pilot plant.

The officials in leadership positions must give active assistance to constructing this pilot plant for the production of steel by the superelectric steelmaking process, fully aware that this is not an undertaking that concerns only a particular unit, but an undertaking to effect a great turn in the metallurgical industry of our country.
Scientists working in the metal industry must also concentrate their efforts on constructing this pilot plant.

We must take steps to implement the decisions of the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee. The plenary meeting discussed measures for improving and stepping up the work of science, education and health service and adopted relevant decisions. The senior officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council must pay deep attention to carrying out the decisions.
Today is the fifty-second birthday of respected Madame Monique Sihanouk. I congratulate Madame on her fifty-second birthday.

Madame Sihanouk is a faithful supporter of you, Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, a Cambodian patriot. Madame invariably helps you, Samdech Norodom Sihanouk, in your work, in both joy and sorrow. Figuratively speaking, you, Samdech, are the driver and Madame is your reliable assistant.

I am grateful to Your Royal Highness Samdech for the kind words you have just addressed to me.

You, Samdech, are working energetically to solve the Cambodian question in the interests of the Cambodian people. I consider that your proposal to form a four-group coalition government for national reconciliation and organize a Cambodian national army out of the four armies is a reasonable one, making it possible to solve the Cambodian question in a rational way. Anyone desiring a fair solution of the Cambodian question will support your proposal. If the four groups of Cambodia form a coalition government for national reconciliation by coming to terms with one another and uniting in accordance with your proposal, the Cambodian people will welcome this.

Cambodia must become an independent state. It must not become a satellite of a foreign country. It would be best for Cambodia to become a completely sovereign, independent, neutral, non-aligned nation. No
one else but you, Samdech, is able to turn Cambodia into such a country. A handful of people in Cambodia are trying to be backed by other countries, but this is not desirable. I consider that you, Samdech, were right when you said that the Cambodian question could not be settled properly by depending upon others.

To solve the Cambodian question and satisfy the desire of the Cambodian people for independence, above all else foreign troops should withdraw. If foreign troops remain in some parts of Cambodia, it faces the danger of being divided. If Cambodia is divided into two, it will not be able to win complete independence.

With regard to the Cambodian question, I remain on the side of the Cambodian people and support the proposals you, Samdech, have advanced. You have given the deepest thought to the correct solution of the Cambodian question and grieve at the misery of the Cambodian people more than anyone else. Samdech, you understand the Cambodian question in full and are working most painstakingly for a solution to this question. Whenever foreign heads of state visit our country, I openly say to them that I support only the proposals advanced by you, Samdech, with regard to the Cambodian question. When the General Secretary of the Central Committee of the Czechoslovak Communist Party visited our country recently, I told him the same. After listening to me, he said that he had gained a full understanding of the Cambodian question.

Each country has its own sovereignty. The Cambodian question belongs to the sovereignty of the Cambodian people. Therefore countries that advocate independence must support the proposals put forward by you, Samdech, for the solution of the Cambodian question.

I consider that the Cambodian question will be solved fairly if you, Samdech, work efficiently with foreigners to make outside forces take their hands off Cambodia, and if the four groups in Cambodia reconcile and unite with one another. The Cambodian people are now supporting you, Samdech.

If the Cambodian question is solved and you, Samdech, become the head of state, I intend to visit Phnom Penh, the capital of Cambodia,
even if I fail to visit other countries. When you, Samdech, were in power in the past, our officials had many occasions to visit Cambodia, but I never had any occasion to do so. Comrade Vice-President, present here, visited Cambodia and so did the ex-chairman of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly. Our officials said that they had got a favourable impression of Phnom Penh during their visit to Cambodia. Once the head of a certain state said that it would be advisable for me to visit Phnom Penh and that you, Samdech, were managing the country’s economic life with care. I dislike hot places, so I told him that I was not quite willing to go to Phnom Penh, because it was hot there. To this he said that there were cool places in Phnom Penh, too. I regret not having gone there at that time. So I should like to visit Phnom Penh if you, Samdech, become the head of Cambodia and return there.

The Cambodian question can be solved earlier than Korea’s reunification if things go smoothly.

Our country was divided by the US imperialists after World War II. The US imperialists, who dream of dominating the world, have occupied half our territory and are acting as masters there. It is very difficult to realize our country’s reunification, because the Americans are not willing to give up south Korea. The United States is making crafty moves to create “two Koreas” by dividing Korea forever. We shall never tolerate our country’s being divided into “two Koreas”.

The south Korean authorities are claiming that south Korea will enter the UN separately, following the scheme of the United States to create “two Koreas”. We oppose the separate entry of south Korea into the UN, but must wait and see whether it does or not, because some countries may exercise a veto against it if the south Korean authorities submit this matter before the UN Security Council.

Young people and students in south Korea are now bravely fighting for national reunification, aware that if our country’s division continues for a long time, south Korea will become a permanent colony of the United States. They have proposed opening a north-south youth and students’ talk at Panmunjom and are holding a
demonstration to realize it.

The struggle of south Korean youth and students is proceeding well in an organized way. Students of almost all the universities and colleges in south Korea are joining the struggle. Even those students who were not willing to participate in demonstrations in the past are taking an active part in them.

South Korean young people and students intend to wage a struggle on a larger scale on August 15 this year, the day when our country was liberated from the colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists. It is gratifying that the young people and students of south Korea are resolved to launch a struggle of greater scope on this day.

They listen to my speeches over the radio and study our proposal for national reunification. We intend to reunify Korea by founding the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo. There is no better way than founding the DFRK to realize the reunification of Korea. The south Korean newspapers also comment in this vein and their journalists say so as well. The south Korean authorities have no proposal for national reunification.

You have said that you will always stand firmly on the side of our people with regard to the question of Korea’s reunification. We are grateful to you for this.

I shall convey your admirable and kind remarks about Comrade Kim Jong Il to him.

When you stay in our country or in other countries, Comrade Kim Jong Il tries to give you, Samdech, pleasure, regarding you as my admirable comrade-in-arms, brother and friend. In other words, he wishes you, Samdech, to enjoy pleasure at all times. You have said that you are grateful to Comrade Kim Jong Il for the care he took of you for the production of the Cambodian film The Mystery Palace in the Mountain. You may suggest anything to him with regard to creation of the film. He will help you solve everything you suggest.

Madame Samdech has said that during her inspection of the Korean Film Studio several days ago she found it considerably changed. We have built mock-up location streets there. The buildings and facilities
enable us to shoot films of various subjects.

We intended to build a film studio immediately after we liberated the country. However, we had no money and no buildings to use as a studio in those days. During Japanese imperialist rule a hosiery factory was located on the site where the Korean Film Studio is situated now; it was left empty after liberation. Our officials proposed turning it into a hosiery factory. I told them to turn it into a film studio instead, because we could produce hosiery somewhere else. This is how the Korean Film Studio was founded. We made our first feature film, My Home Village, in 1949. The People’s Actor who appears in the Cambodian feature film The Mystery Palace in the Mountain, which you, Samdech, are now producing, is the very same actor who played the leading part in My Home Village. Three of leading players who appeared in My Home Village, are still alive, and they are People’s Actor and People’s Actresses. At the suggestion of Comrade Kim Jong II, last year I posed for a souvenir photograph with the actors and actresses of the Korean Film Studio when it celebrated its fortieth anniversary.

Comrade Kim Jong II is fond of art and well versed in it. In his university days he frequently visited the Korean Film Studio to give guidance to the production of films till late at night. The first feature film produced under the personal guidance of Comrade Kim Jong II was The Path to Awakening. Afterwards, the feature films Five Guerrilla Brothers and We Are the Happiest appeared in succession. These films are all masterpieces.

If I judge Comrade Kim Jong II, he is loyal to the country and the people and filial to his family.

Although the words loyal and filial are derived from feudal Confucian doctrine, they cannot be regarded as wrong. It is a good thing for a man to be loyal to his country and filial to his parents. The whole world admits this.

Comrade Kim Jong II works with complete devotion to the country and the people. He works day and night, taking charge of both the big and small affairs of the country. It is a good thing to work without sleep
for the country and the people.

Comrade Kim Jong Il works efficiently with people and rallies them firmly around the Party. He boundlessly appreciates and cares for the people and the people wholeheartedly respect and follow him.

Comrade Kim Jong Il makes great efforts to give me pleasure at all times. For my seventieth birthday he sought all the historic materials concerning me and inquired as to what problems I had long planned to solve had not been implemented and then carried them out one after another.

I had said on several occasions in the past that a modern maternity hospital should be built in Pyongyang. Comrade Kim Jong Il met my desire by building it. He also had the Ice Rink, Changgwang Health Complex and Kim Il Sung Stadium built to please me.

I once saw children figure skating in an ice rink during my visit to a foreign country. At that moment I wondered when our children would be able to figure skate in an ice rink as much as they pleased, like the children of that country. On my return home I told some officials how good it would be if we built an ice rink so our children could figure skate. Young as he was at that time, Comrade Kim Jong Il bore deep in mind what I had told them and ensured that an ice rink was built on the occasion of my seventieth birthday.

One winter I visited Sinchon County, South Hwanghae Province, in company with Comrade Kim Jong Il and saw swimmers training in an indoor swimming pool built by making use of a spa there; the pool water was not clean and smelt bad, so I felt uneasy. I told Comrade Kim Jong Il that it was small wonder that excellent swimmers could not be trained when swimmers were training in such a swimming pool because of our failure to build a proper indoor pool. Then I suggested that we build a good indoor swimming pool when the country’s economy improved in future. Comrade Kim Jong Il kept what I said in mind and ensured that the modern Changgwang Health Complex was built in Pyongyang.

I met you, Samdech, the first time in Jakarta, Indonesia. Comrade Kim Jong Il accompanied me to Indonesia at that time. In Jakarta I saw
a stadium built by foreigners. About half the stadium was roofed. I asked the President of that country how much it cost to build the stadium; he said 80 to 100 million roubles. I said it was still difficult for our country to build such an expensive stadium, but I was very envious of the stadium covered with a roof. That evening, sharing dinner with Comrade Kim Jong Il, I suggested that we also build a good stadium in future. He kept my remarks in mind and built the excellent Kim Il Sung Stadium we see today.

Comrade Kim Jong Il also had the Grand People’s Study House constructed according to my plan. I once said that if we raised enough money, we should build a grand people’s study house, so that not only university graduates, but also everyone else could study there. Comrade Kim Jong Il determined to construct the Grand People’s Study House before my seventieth birthday and called upon our young people, telling them: The leader will greet his seventieth birthday. Let us young people, his sons and daughters, build the Grand People’s Study House and give pleasure to him. In hearty response to the call of Comrade Kim Jong Il, all the young people applied themselves to the task and built the splendid Grand People’s Study House.

Comrade Kim Jong Il pays close attention to my health and rest. Almost every day he emphasizes to the officials concerned that they should take good care of my health. He sends me new foreign films, doing everything possible to obtain them, not to mention those produced in our country.

Comrade Kim Jong Il tries very hard to realize my plans, so I always say that he is intensely loyal to the country and the people and a dutiful son to his parents.

You, Samdech, have expressed your intention to visit our country again early in August, and I think it would be a good idea to do so.

I hope that you, Samdech, will pay special attention to your health and safety during your forthcoming visit to Southeast Asian countries. I should like to request Madame Samdech to take good care of the health of His Royal Highness Samdech.
ON OUR PEOPLE’S STRUGGLE
FOR SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION
AND NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

Talk to a Delegation from the Communist Party
of the United States of America

June 24, 1988

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea
I should like to warmly welcome the delegation from the Communist
Party of the United States of America, headed by Comrade General
Secretary, to our country.

I am grateful to you, Comrade General Secretary, for your detailed
introduction of the political situation in the United States and of the
activities of the US Communist Party as well as for your admirable
speech in strong support of the struggle of our Party and our people for
socialist construction and national reunification.

Our Party and people are now implementing two tasks: firstly, the
complete victory of socialism through accelerating the building of
socialism in the northern half of Korea and, secondly, the independent,
peaceful reunification of our country as soon as possible through joint
efforts with the south Korean people, who are fighting for
independence, democracy and national reunification.

In accordance with the policy advanced by the Sixth Party
Congress, we are now waging an energetic struggle to achieve the
complete victory of socialism.

The Sixth Congress of our Party defined imbuing the whole of
society with the Juche idea to be the general task of our revolution and set the attainment of the complete victory of socialism as the immediate fighting task in modelling the whole society on the Juche idea.

In order to build a communist society by transforming the whole of society in accordance with the Juche idea, we must capture two fortresses, in other words, the ideological fortress and the material fortress. We cannot build a communist society if we take only the material fortress. We must conquer the ideological fortress as well as the material fortress, and we must give priority to efforts to occupy the ideological fortress. Unless we remould all people along communist lines, we cannot seize the material fortress of communism either. However, this does not justify neglecting the work to take the material fortress. If people experience inconvenience in their daily life because of a shortage of goods owing to unsatisfactory work to scale the material fortress, they may not support socialist and communist society with all their heart, no matter how fully they are prepared ideologically.

The basic means of achieving the complete victory of socialism and building a communist society is to vigorously promote the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural. This is essential for succeeding in capturing both the ideological and material fortresses of communism. Our Party has defined the three revolutions as the basic content of the revolution that must be carried out in a socialist society, as the task of the uninterrupted revolution that must be carried out until communism is built, and is directing great efforts into effecting these revolutions.

Above all else, our Party is giving strong impetus to the ideological revolution.

The ideological revolution aims to turn all members of the society into communist-type people through reeducation. In other words, it works to revolutionize them and assimilate them into the working class.

To achieve the complete victory of socialism, it is extremely
important to intensify educational work to remould people into revolutionary and working-class patterns. Only when ideological education is increased among people, will it be possible to establish in the whole of society the communist tone of working and living—one for all and all for one. If a working-class party neglects ideological education after it has carried out socialist revolution and established a socialist system, obsolete ideas lingering in the minds of people will grow. In the end, people will become degenerate ideologically and inclined to lead an easy life, disliking work. If this happens, opium addicts and drunken brawlers may appear, and, in consequence, it will be impossible to build a socialist and communist society successfully.

The revolutionary education of people must be further intensified as the revolution advances and life becomes prosperous. When people are in need, their enthusiasm to make revolution is high and they work in good faith. However, when they have no worries about food, clothing or housing, they will become contented, their revolutionary zeal may gradually cool and they may show no enthusiasm for their work.

Under the Japanese imperialist colonial rule in the past our people lived in extreme poverty. At that time they were slaves, exploited and oppressed not only by the Japanese imperialists, but also by the landlords and capitalists. However, at present our people all lead a good life. It cannot be said as yet that they enjoy a rich material life, but they are leading a happy life, with no worries about food, clothing and housing. In our country everyone is entitled to be supplied with provisions by the state from the moment he or she is born. Our industrial and office workers are supplied with provisions by the state at nominal prices. The state buys rice from the peasants for 60 jon per kilogramme and supplies it to industrial and office workers for 8 jon. In fact, the money the state charges industrial and office workers for provisions hardly covers transport costs. In our country the people are provided with housing free of charge. The state builds housing not only for industrial and office workers, but also for cooperative farmers. All our people enjoy the benefits of free medical care. If anyone falls ill, he or she can undergo medical examination and get medicine gratis at a
hospital. If necessary, one may receive hospital treatment. Universal eleven-year free and compulsory education is in effect in our country. In order to ensure that pupils and students have no difficulties in their studies, the state supplies school uniforms free of charge and sells school requisites at considerably cheaper prices than other goods. The state even provides scholarships to university and college students. Therefore, if we are to ensure that our people enjoy more prosperous and cultured lives, we must step up ideological education, so that they will work with great enthusiasm, displaying creativity and highly conscious of being masters of the revolution.

The most important thing in carrying out ideological revolution is to induce the members of society to strengthen their life in a revolutionary organization. In our country all members of society belong to a political organization and receive ideological training through their life in the organization. Schoolchildren lead their life in the Children’s Union, young people in the League of Socialist Working Youth, and Party members in the Party organization. Furthermore, workers lead their life in the trade unions, cooperative farmers in the Union of Agricultural Working People, and women in the Women’s Union.

In our country the entire Party, the whole nation and all the army study. Everyone raises his or her political and ideological level by belonging to a study and lecture network, according to his or her intellectual level and to the characteristics of his or her profession. In our country people study regularly, cadres in the study group for cadres and Party members and other working people in the study group for Party members and other working people. All people attend public lectures twice a month. In our country even the members of the Children’s Union, to say nothing of the cadres, Party members and other working people, arm themselves with the ideas and policies of our Party and receive communist education regularly.

We have achieved great success in revolutionizing people and assimilating them into the working class by pressing ahead with the ideological revolution, giving definite priority to it over all other work.
Today the ideological and mental state of our people is very good. We are also vigorously promoting the technical and cultural revolutions.

Our technical revolution aims at freeing the working people from difficult and arduous labour. We intend to free our working people, who have been emancipated from the exploitation and oppression of the imperialists, landlords and capitalists, even from difficult and backbreaking work.

In order to free the working people from difficult and arduous labour, in all sectors of the national economy outdated techniques must be replaced by new techniques, and mechanization, semi-automation, automation and robots must be introduced into work. In this sense the technical revolution is essentially a mechanical revolution. In the United States, a developed capitalist country, it will not be so difficult to lay the material foundation commensurate with a socialist society once the capitalists are overthrown and the people seize power. However, it is not at all easy for our country, which has taken over a backward colonial economy, to introduce mechanization, semi-automation, automation and robots into all production processes. To attain this in our country, we still have to do a lot of work, and this will require considerable time.

We are channelling great efforts into stepping up the rural technical revolution.

The basic task we have set forth for the rural technical revolution is to attain irrigation, electrification, mechanization and the use of chemicals in agriculture. Only when this is achieved, can agricultural production be increased and peasants freed from difficult work, working eight hours a day like workers. We have already accomplished the tasks of irrigation and electrification of agriculture. We are now working to complete comprehensive mechanization and the use of chemicals.

We are developing the socialist rural economy strictly in our own way. It is said that some socialist countries are effecting a system of individual responsibility for production or a household piecework
system in rural areas. However, we are not doing so. We are steadily consolidating and developing a socialist cooperative economy in accordance with the policy set forth in the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country. I published these theses a long time ago. They clearly expound the principles and ways to develop agriculture in a socialist society. Our country, which is thoroughly implementing the socialist rural theses, raises good crops every year. We are not yet able to sell grain to other countries, but we have attained self-sufficiency in food. It is not easy to attain self-sufficiency in food for our country that has a small crop area in comparison with its population. Our real life clearly shows the validity and vitality of the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country. Some socialist countries are said to be introducing reform and restructuring, but our country is not doing so. In the course of building socialism we have already reformed and restructured what was wrong. Therefore there is nothing more to be reformed and restructured.

We intend to turn cooperative ownership into all-people ownership and develop the cooperative farms into large socialist farms in future. Our country has been managing large socialist farms on a trial basis for a long time. We have provided sufficient modern farm machines to a state farm that has 8,000 hectares of arable land, enabling it to do all farm work with the help of machines. On that farm each worker is now cultivating 30 hectares of crops. This shows that in socialist countries turning farms into large state farms is an absolutely correct way of developing the agricultural productive forces and freeing the peasants from difficult and arduous labour.

Agriculture is developed in the United States and the level of mechanization is high. At present the United States produces a large amount of grain and exports some of it. According to publications, the developed state of agriculture in the US is attributable to large farms having been organized and crops raised on a scientific and technical basis. In the US the owners of large farms are agricultural capitalists, and the products of the farms are mostly owned by them. Therefore the agricultural labourers hired by the farms cannot display creativity.
However, because the level of mechanization is high on these farms, they achieve a success in agricultural production that cannot be attained by a small-scale farm economy.

The large farms we intend to form in our country in future are fundamentally different in character from those of the United States. The owners of our large farms will be agricultural workers and the products of the farms will be entirely owned by them. For this reason the agricultural workers will display all their creative initiative for society and themselves. In future, when we develop our cooperative farms into large state farms, they will display incomparably great superiority and vitality than large capitalist farms.

We are now working to carry out the Third Seven-Year Plan for Development of the National Economy. This plan ends in 1993. By that time we shall annually produce 10 million tons of steel, 100,000 million kWh of electricity, 120 million tons of coal, 22 million tons of cement, 7.2 million tons of chemical fertilizers, 1,500 million metres of fabric, 1.7 million tons of nonferrous metals, 15 million tons of grain and 11 million tons of seafood. We shall also have reclaimed 300,000 hectares of tidal flats by that time. When all this is achieved, our country will rank among the developed countries.

Along with the ideological revolution, the cultural revolution aims at turning people into communist types. The cultural revolution is closely related to the ideological revolution. People can become genuine communist types when they have not only revolutionized themselves and assimilated themselves into the working class, but also attained a high cultural and intellectual level. Only when people have attained a high cultural and intellectual level, will they not commit misdemeanours and work more conscientiously. Only then will it be possible to successfully take the material fortress of communism.

Promoting the cultural revolution vigorously was particularly important for our country, which was a colony of Japanese imperialism for 36 years in the past. When we regained our motherland by fighting the Japanese imperialists, there were a large number of illiterates in our country. However, as a result of our vigorous promotion of the cultural
revolution, all the working people in our country have now received general secondary schooling and attained a high level of cultural and technical knowledge.

An important policy put forward by our Party in carrying out the cultural revolution is to raise the cultural and intellectual level of all the people to that of a college graduate. In other words, it is to assimilate the whole society into the intelligentsia.

There were not many intellectuals in our country in the past. Occupying our country and enforcing their colonial rule here for a long time, the Japanese imperialists prevented Koreans from receiving higher education. In the days of the Japanese imperialist colonial rule Koreans had to change their names to Japanese names if they wanted to receive higher education. Even those who received higher education before liberation studied mainly law and literature instead of natural sciences, including engineering. In those days Koreans could not hold important posts even after graduating from university, but merely worked as scriveners or novelists. Nevertheless, at that time they could not write novels in praise of their country.

The greatest problem in building a new society after we liberated the country was the shortage of Korean technicians. The men of the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army, who had fought the Japanese imperialists shoulder to shoulder with us, were good at making speeches and shooting, but they lacked technology. In those days the correct solution of the problem of the intellectuals was a very serious problem, affecting the success in building a new society. Although the main motive force of the revolution is the working class and the peasantry, we cannot succeed in the revolution and construction with the working class and peasants alone. In the revolutionary struggle and construction work the intellectuals play no less important a role than the workers and peasants. Therefore, when we were founding our Party, we defined the intellectuals as an important component along with the workers and peasants. The emblem of our Party has a hammer, a sickle and a writing brush, symbolizing the workers, peasants and working intellectuals that comprise the Party.
After we liberated the country, we sent letters to the intellectuals scattered in various parts of the country and ensured that they were brought to us. In those days intellectuals came to us from south Korea, too. Nevertheless, very few had scientific and technological knowledge. We regarded the small number of intellectuals as priceless assets. We did not take issue with the intellectuals, although they had been born into rich families and received education at Japanese universities and colleges. We regarded them as “brood hens” for training our own cadres. The intellectuals who played the role of “brood hens” in those days have become doctors and academicians and are now working at universities, colleges and scientific research institutes. Their hair has turned grey. They have hatched a large number of “chicks”. We are now rich in intellectuals. We have a huge army of 1.3 million intellectuals. Our new intellectuals do not find it hard even if they sit up all night working.

When the three-year-long Fatherland Liberation War was over in our country, we had to build many houses. However, at that time there were very few people who were able to lay bricks properly, so we sent over 600 workers abroad to learn brick-laying skills. Now our officials are good at building houses. Because our technicians and workers are efficient at construction, other countries request us to build deluxe buildings such as theatres and hotels.

Today our people are firmly armed with the Juche idea of our Party and are stepping up the great project of socialist construction, fully confident of victory. Judging by their present fighting spirit, I believe that the task of achieving the complete victory of socialism will be accomplished before long in our country.

If you personally witness our people working for grand socialist construction during your visit to our country, you will have a better understanding of our country’s socialist construction.

At the same time as stepping up socialist construction in the northern half of Korea, we are working to reunify the country.

At the Sixth Congress of our Party we put forward a proposal for reunifying the country by founding the Democratic Federal Republic
of Koryo and a ten-point policy to be carried out by this republic.

The proposal for founding the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo is to reunify the country by forming a federal state, leaving the ideas and social systems existing in the north and south of Korea as they are. For a long time different ideas and social systems have existed in the north and south of our country. Therefore, if we are to reunify the country, no side should try to force its ideas and social system on the other side. The north should not try to force the socialist system on the south or to swallow it up, and the south should not try to force the capitalist system on the north or to invade it. If each side tries to force its ideas and social system on the other side, it will be impossible to reunify the country peacefully.

In the ten-point policy to be carried out by the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo we clarified that this republic should be a fully independent and sovereign state and a non-aligned nation that is not a satellite of any other nation and does not depend on any foreign forces. In the ten-point policy we also made it clear that we would leave the capital invested by other nations in south Korea prior to reunification of the country intact and continue to guarantee the concessions of these countries. Capital from not only the United States but also from many other countries, including Japan, France and West Germany, has made inroads into south Korea. Those who have invested capital in south Korea fear they will be deprived of it when our country is reunified.

It would be a good idea for you, Comrade General Secretary, to read the report to the Sixth Congress of our Party if you can find the time. If you read this report, you will clearly understand the stand of our Party with regard to national reunification, including the proposal to found the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo.

At present the general internal and external situation is changing in favour of our people’s struggle for national reunification.

The south Korean people are gradually gaining a correct understanding of our Republic and are getting rid of their idea of worshipping and kowtowing to the United States. With a view to concealing their crimes as stooges of the US imperialists, the south
Korean reactionaries have conducted a lot of false propaganda against the northern half of Korea among the south Korean people, labelling us communists someone’s lackeys. However, now the south Korean people know well that we set store by independence more than anyone else and consistently follow an independent policy in our state activities. In the past they regarded the US imperialists as their “benefactors”, believing them to be their “liberators” and “helpers”. Nevertheless, seeing with their own eyes how the US imperialists have turned south Korea into an advance nuclear base for their aggression, occupying south Korea and pursuing a colonial enslavement policy there for a long time, they have gradually come to see the true colours of the United States. The south Korean people have come to realize that the US imperialists are not “liberators” but aggressors, not “helpers” but predators. They have also come to realize that it is none other than the US imperialists who obstruct the reunification of our country. They have come to realize all this not by hearing anyone else’s propaganda, but through their own protracted experience.

The south Korean youth and students have now turned out for national independence, social democracy and the reunification of the country. Their spirit is soaring. On June 10 this year they called for holding talks with their counterparts from the northern half of Korea in Panmunjom and rose up in the struggle to put this into effect. The south Korean reactionaries mobilized over 60,000 policemen to repress their struggle. We recorded on videotape the struggle of the south Korean youth and students. If you have some spare time, you will be able to see it.

The situation in south Korea is now developing favourably. However, we still must solve many problems if we are to drive the US imperialists out of south Korea and reunify our country.

There are also many international problems that must be resolved in order to settle the Korean question. Needless to say, the masters of Korea are the Korean people, and the Korean question must be solved by the efforts of the Korean people themselves in all circumstances. However, it is difficult to solve the Korean question in isolation from
international relations, because it is closely connected with these relations. The US imperialists are holding on to south Korea as a military base in order to check and invade the Soviet Union and other socialist countries. They have deployed over 1,000 nuclear weapons in south Korea. If they intended to invade only the DPRK, three small nuclear bombs would be sufficient. In deploying more than 1,000 nuclear weapons in south Korea, the US imperialists aim at checking and invading not only the DPRK, but also the Soviet Union, China and other socialist countries. For a speedy solution of the Korean question problems related to it must be resolved, and we must also get help from progressive people throughout the world.

At the Sixth Congress of our Party we made it clear that independence, friendship and peace represent the underlying theme of our Party’s foreign policy. In accordance with this theme, we are developing friendly and cooperative relations with the political parties, organizations and progressive people of various countries that advocate independence and love peace.

Our Party has been hoping for a long time to further develop its relations with the Communist Party of the United States of America. I think that developing these relations is important for both the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Communist Party of the United States of America, because US imperialism is the target of struggle not only of the US Communist Party but also of our Party. US imperialism is guilty of the division of our country; it is the sworn enemy of the Korean people, obstructing the reunification of our country. The Workers’ Party of Korea and the Communist Party of the United States of America must wage a dynamic joint struggle against US imperialism.

The Workers’ Party of Korea and the Communist Party of the United States of America can wage a joint struggle against the US imperialists’ armaments race and their manoeuvres for arms buildup. At present the Soviet Union is holding talks with the United States on the problem of reducing nuclear weapons and discontinuing their production. We support the discussion of the problem of nuclear
disarmament at the USSR-US summit talks, for these talks benefit the peace and security of the world and the solution of the reunification question of our country. The arms drive must be stopped. The US government must agree to the proposal of the Soviet Union to reduce strategic offensive weapons by 50 per cent and must discontinue the production of nuclear weapons.

Now that the Soviet Union and the United States are holding talks on nuclear disarmament, we intend to fight more dynamically to have the nuclear weapons and the US troops withdrawn from south Korea and to reunify our country in a peaceful way.

I think that you and the Communist Party of the United States of America can do many things conducive to the struggle of our people for national reunification. If you give the American people, including the progressives, as well as our compatriots living in your country, full information of our Party’s policy for national reunification and of the south Korean people’s struggle for national independence, social democracy and national reunification, this will greatly contribute to the reunification of our country. It is said that more than 800,000 Koreans are residing in the United States. If they are given full information of our Party’s policy for national reunification, they will extend active support for our country’s reunification. We are not now working with our compatriots in the United States as efficiently as with those in Japan. We hope that the Communist Party of the United States of America will help us by exerting a positive influence on the Koreans residing in America, so that they will support our cause and commit themselves to the struggle for national reunification.

We also believe that you can help us in promoting talks between the DPRK and the United States.

We hope to hold talks between the DPRK and the United States or tripartite talks with the participation of the DPRK, the US and south Korea to replace the Korean Armistice Agreement with a peace agreement and adopt a nonaggression declaration between the DPRK and south Korea. However, the US government opposes tripartite talks because of its misunderstanding of us. The US government
misunderstands us because it has heard only the south Korean reactionaries or the misguided words of some foreigners who have nothing to do with the Korean question. The south Korean reactionaries cannot convey the earnest desire of the Korean people to the US government. To improve relations between the DPRK and the United States, the US government’s misunderstanding of our country must be dispelled. To this end, we and the US government must have face-to-face talks. Unless both sides sit down together, the misunderstanding cannot be removed.

I hope you will strive to hew a channel for talks between the DPRK and the United States. We can have both open and closed talks with the US government. In any case we want to create an opportunity to tell the US government directly of our Party’s just stand for national reunification. We want to remove the distrust between the DPRK and the United States and ease tension in the Korean peninsula by all possible means.

I am extremely pleased to have the opportunity to talk with you today. I should like to meet you again and have more talks with you, but I cannot afford to do so, because I have to leave soon for a visit to Mongolia. I regret this. My visit to Mongolia will take about ten days. You plan to stay in our country for about one week, but it would seem advisable for you to stay here a week longer than scheduled and rest. If you do so, I shall be able to meet you again, have more talks with you and accompany you to inspect some places upon my return from Mongolia.

I hope you will spend joyful days during your stay in our country, relaxing and visiting various places.
ON SOME PROBLEMS IN DEVELOPING THE SHIPBUILDING INDUSTRY

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Officials in the Shipbuilding Industry

July 11, 1988

At this consultative meeting I should like to refer to some problems in developing the shipbuilding industry.

It is very important for our country to develop the shipbuilding industry, because it is a maritime country bounded on three sides by the sea. The development of the shipbuilding industry is essential for the development of the fishing and shipping industries and for increasing our defence capability. Since the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists are now watching for an opportunity to invade our country, we must develop the shipbuilding industry and build many warships.

The development of the shipbuilding industry will also enable us to export vessels and earn a large amount of foreign currency. If we build good ships, we can sell as many of them as required. At present many countries ask us for ships.

On my way from my visit to Mongolia recently, I stopped off at Khabarovsk and met representatives of the central and far eastern regions of the Soviet Union. I discussed with them the economic problems between our two countries, and they expressed their desire to buy many ships from our country. I asked them why they wanted to import ships instead of building their own, and they replied that it is
difficult to build ships in the far eastern region, because it is cold there. In this region they can work in the open air only a few months every year because of the bitter cold. This is not the case in our country, where December, January and February are winter, March, April and May are spring, June, July and August are summer and September, October and November are autumn. Therefore, it is quite possible to work outdoors for the nine months from March to November. Some time ago the Premier returned from a visit to some Southeast Asian countries. According to him, these countries have also asked us for fishing vessels and cargo ships, saying that they would like to buy many of these ships.

Our country has built sound bases for the construction of a large number of vessels. We have seven large shipyards, such as the Nampho Shipbuilding Complex, the Hambuk Shipbuilding Complex, the Wonsan Shipyard and the Sinpho Dockyard. It is a great achievement for our small country to have seven large shipyards. Despite this, our country has not built and exported many ships, although it has a number of large and good shipyards, mainly because our officials did not have a definite plan for the development of the shipbuilding industry and have not been efficient in their external activity to export many vessels.

We must adopt drastic measures to construct more vessels by developing the shipbuilding industry.

We must, above all, make strenuous efforts to produce our own fittings for the ships.

In order to build many ships, we must make fittings ourselves, taking whatever measures needed. At present such large shipyards as the Hambuk Shipbuilding Complex and the Nampho Shipbuilding Complex fail to build many vessels because of a shortage of fittings. These shipyards build only a few 3,750-ton vessels, for instance, every year because of the shortage of fittings, though the engines needed for these vessels are available. Although they are unable to build many vessels because of the shortage of fittings, the officials of the shipbuilding industry are not working hard to solve this problem and
do not take any measures to this end. Unless the problem of fittings is solved, it will be impossible to build many vessels and earn a large amount of foreign currency. We can earn a lot of money if we export vessels equipped with our own fittings, but will not earn much if we sell vessels equipped with imported fittings, as now. Because we now sell vessels equipped with imported fittings, we virtually get only the price of sheet steel and the cost of labour. It is a disgrace for such a large shipyard as the Hambuk Shipbuilding Complex to build and sell only small barges of welded steel sheets, instead of building and exporting large cargo ships. Only when we export ships equipped with our own fittings, will we be able to earn a large amount of foreign currency and buy the equipment needed for the building of large craft.

If the officials would only exert effort, we should be quite able to make fittings from our own resources. It is unreasonable that we are unable to make fittings when we produce modern machines and equipment.

We shall be perfectly able to produce domestically the fittings needed for the building of ships if the officials of the Ministry of the Shipbuilding Industry and the Ministry of the Machine-Building Industry set their minds to it and make detailed arrangements. The senior officials of the Economic Planning Department of the Party Central Committee, the Administration Council, the State Planning Commission and the Ministry of the Shipbuilding Industry must discuss in detail and define the kinds of fittings that need to be produced for the building of ships, and determine the factories capable of producing them, and the machine factories to be assigned to the task of producing the specific items. Then they should call either the managers or chief engineers or even the shop managers, when necessary, of the factories concerned, show them the fittings to be produced and give them definite tasks by determining the number of fittings and the date by which they should be produced.

Since a new task of producing fittings is given to some factories and enterprises, it would be a good idea to allow them to set up fittings shops and the like. You must provide all the machine tools needed for
the building of the workshops producing fittings.

Fittings for shipbuilding that are not required in great quantity or are difficult to produce domestically must be permitted to be imported with some of the foreign currency we earn by selling our ships.

The senior officials of the shipbuilding industry must bear in mind that it will be impossible to build ships if they merely tell each shipyard to build how many vessels, without taking measures for the production of fittings; they must take all necessary measures.

If we are to produce the ship fittings by our own efforts, we must do away with departmentalism. The Ministry of the Machine-Building Industry and other commissions must not be indifferent to the production of fittings needed for shipbuilding, claiming that this is the task of the Ministry of the Shipbuilding Industry, nor should many shipyards be allowed to produce the same kind of fittings, each in its own way.

The machine-building industry is now indulging in extreme self-centredness. Because the machine factories are now each producing the things they need, taking a self-centred attitude, their quality is not high.

The problem of casting is a case in point. I have been emphasizing for a long time the need to specialize in the production of castings. If the machine-building industry had set up good centres for the production of castings in some areas or units and made them specialize in the production of the necessary castings, as I instructed, their productivity would have increased greatly and their quality improved considerably. However, our officials do not implement as they should the Party’s policy on specializing in the production of castings. After their inspection of our machine factories foreigners also remarked on how each factory had its own foundry. Some time ago people from a European company visited our country. I was told that they said that although their company has many machine factories, only one of them specializes in the manufacture of castings to meet the needs of all these factories, so their productivity and quality are high, but in Korea each machine factory has its own foundry, and this lowers productivity and
the quality of the goods produced.

Take the problem of coating, for example. Our country has many machine factories, but it has no proper coating factory. Because coating is done by each machine factory, its quality is not high. Once when I visited China, I inspected a coating factory in Harbin. The factory was small and the majority of the workers there were women. However, because this factory specialized in coating, its quality was very good. The manager of the factory told me that his factory met not only the needs of Harbin for coating, but also those of far-off regions. I referred to the need to build a good factory specializing in coating at a meeting of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee and also emphasized this matter more than once at the consultative meetings of senior officials in charge of economic affairs. Nevertheless, our officials have not yet carried out the task I gave them. This alone clearly shows how rampant departmentalism is.

Coating must be specialized, so as to raise coating skill and make economical use of the materials needed for coating. It would be a good idea for the war industry, the Ministry of the Machine-Building Industry and the Ministry of the Shipbuilding Industry to each set up a coating centre. If several good coating shops are established throughout the country, the need for coating will be met in full.

With this meeting as a momentum, the machine-building industry must make a great advance in the specialization of casting and coating.

Fittings of the same kind needed for the building of vessels must not be made separately for civilian needs and for war needs. One factory must make fittings for both civilian and war needs.

Officials must thoroughly eliminate flunkeyism and national nihilism. If we are to make something by our own efforts, we must do away with flunkeyism, expressed in depending on big or developed countries, as well as with national nihilism, expressed in considering that we cannot make modern things with our own efforts. Some people still retain the flunkeyist idea of looking up to developed countries and the nihilistic thoughts of slighting our own nation. If one is imbued with flunkeyism and national nihilism, one will not think of making
even those things quite within one’s power. If a man takes to flunkeyism and national nihilism, he will become a fool.

In order to speedily develop our country into an industrial state, I convened a congress of scientists at the Moranbong Underground Theatre in 1952, when the war was at its height. Afterwards I founded the Academy of Sciences, comprising all the scientists throughout the country. I trusted our scientists and set the task of industrializing our country, relying on their strength and intelligence. However, one scientist of the Academy of Sciences argued as to how we could build a modern industry when our country was unable to make even a measuring tape. As a matter of fact, it was not easy to make a measuring tape in the then prevailing situation of our country. Several years later I had a medical appliance factory built in Hyangsan. I said to the workers and technicians of the factory, “A certain scientist of our country is critical of us, claiming that our country is unable to make even a measuring tape. Doesn’t he slight Koreans too much? You try to make a measuring tape.” Then I gave them a measuring tape as a sample. I also gave them razor blades, gifts to me from foreigners, and told them to make such blades, too. Later on, the Myohyangsan Medical Appliance Factory made a high-quality measuring tape and a sharp razor blade. Our measuring tapes are exported because of their good quality.

At present this factory produces a variety of medical appliances, including dentist equipment. The efficiency of the equipment for dental treatment is reasonably good. Almost all the facilities for dental treatment now used by county people’s hospitals have been made at the Myohyangsan Medical Appliance Factory.

A strong struggle must be waged in all sectors against flunkeyism, looking up to big or developed countries, as well as against national nihilism, looking down on our own nation.

The production of engines must be increased. We must produce ship engines by our own efforts by all possible means.

The engine production capacity of the August 8 Factory must be increased. This factory has been producing engines since the
immediate postwar days, so it has some foundation and technical force. Therefore, it would be a good idea to increase its engine production capacity.

The August 8 Factory was built after the war for the production of engines. Once after the armistice I visited a foreign country, taking with me Comrades Jong Jun Thaek, Jong Il Ryong and other economic officials. At that time I told Comrade Jong Il Ryong to discuss the matter of delivery of fishing vessels with the people concerned of that country and I myself left for a local tour. On return from the local tour I asked Comrade Jong Il Ryong how many fishing vessels they would give us. He answered they had said they would give us four trawlers and even that number several years later. Because all our fishing boats had been destroyed during the Fatherland Liberation War, we would be unable to provide our people with fish with only four trawlers, so I consulted with the officials of the machine-building industry as to whether we would be able to make hot-bulb engines ourselves. They said that this was quite possible. In those days we made the August 8 Factory produce hot-bulb engines. We built a variety of fishing boats, including angle-net boats, with the hot-bulb engines made by that factory and caught yellow corvina and mackerel for the people. At that time we built fishing boats of wood instead of sheet steel, because not much steel was available. Later on, we made 400-hp diesel engines from the model of a foreign one.

It is impossible to fully meet the demand for engines for the building of vessels with the present engine production capacity of the August 8 Factory. On this occasion I have examined the proposed plan for an increase in the engine production capacity of the August 8 Factory. The plan does not seem to be correct. Needless to say, if this factory can make both small and big engines, we may allow it to produce even small ones. However, it is advisable for this factory to make only big engines rather than making such small engines as 100-hp ones. This factory must be made to produce 1,000-hp or larger engines, because it has some experience in engine production. This factory must also produce the large engines needed for building
14,000-ton and 20,000-ton freighters. Our country is also to build 20,000-ton freighters, so we must produce the engines to be used for these freighters as well.

In case the August 8 Factory does not produce 100-hp and 200-hp engines, the hot-bulb engine factories under the Fisheries Commission must be made to produce these engines. Since 100-hp and 200-hp engines are mainly used for small-scale fishing, it is advisable for these factories to make them. If only the design is given and the necessary machine tools are supplemented to the factories they will be perfectly able to make 100-hp engines.

The Fisheries Commission has hot-bulb engine factories on both the east coast and the west coast. On the west coast the Nampho Ship Repair Yard makes hot-bulb engines. Therefore, it will be possible to assign this factory the task of making 100-hp or 200-hp engines.

The Chongjin Machine Factory can also be made to produce engines. This factory is already producing auxiliary engines; therefore, if this factory is a little better equipped, it will be able to produce engines. The shipbuilding industry must make a plan for the production of engines at the Chongjin Machine Factory.

You must not spread out the production of engines too much because you are told to produce them in various places. If we are to improve the quality of engines, we must specialize their production. If the production of engines is spread out, it will be impossible to improve their quality. However, if some factories specialize in their production, their quality can be raised.

It is advisable to make the new large engines, to be produced in future, from imported designs. If we are to build many vessels, we shall have to make new engines. It may be faster to produce these engines from imported designs instead of developing them by our own efforts. If we are to produce engines from our own designs, it will take a long time, because we have to go through many experimental stages. We must continue to produce the engines we are now making until new designs are imported. When new designs arrive, we must produce new engines from them.
The officials concerned must conduct more detailed examination of engine production. It is pointless to produce many outmoded engines without taking proper measures for the production of engines.

You should determine again, after detailed consideration, the capacity and number of the engines to be produced by the August 8 Factory and by other particular factories.

Shipbuilding must be specialized. Fishing vessels and freighters have their own specific features. Therefore, it is only when their building is specialized that better vessels can be built. In future you must designate which shipyards will take exclusive charge of the building of fishing vessels and which will build only freighters and see that they fulfil their respective tasks.

It is important to build many large vessels capable of catching fish even in high waves. This is the only way to succeed not only in winter fishing operations, but also in summer fishing operations. We cannot catch pollack as we should in winter with small boats incapable of putting to sea in high waves. Pollack shoals stream to our seas during two winter months, so fishing vessels must catch this fish at this time. Nevertheless, small boats cannot put to sea for many days during these months because of hard winds and high waves. If we use only small fishing boats, we may lose the chance of catching a large amount of the pollack streaming to our seas. No matter how many small fishing boats we build–boats unable to put to sea even in slightly high waves–we shall only waste manpower and not benefit much from them. Therefore, the shipbuilding industry must accurately consider the tonnage and number of fishing vessels to be built and build according to this calculation.

Fishing vessels of 485 tons must not be built. These vessels are not bad for catching fish, but their drawback is that they cannot ride high waves. They can catch fish only for a small number of days in winter. The existing 450-ton and 485-ton fishing vessels are said to be capable of putting to sea only during 60 per cent of all days of the year. This means that they put to sea for 17 or 18 days every month, but I think they put to sea for fewer days than these. In the past, when I kept
myself directly informed of fishing operations, sometimes fishing vessels were unable to put to sea for several successive days because of high waves.

There is no need to build more 600-ton fishing vessels, either. These vessels are inefficient for fishing operations, because they also cannot ride high waves. We must use the existing 600-ton fishing vessels, but not build any more.

It has been suggested to build 140-ton fishing vessels, but this must not be done. It has been proposed to produce two hundred 200-hp engines to build 140-ton fishing vessels, but I think there is no need to do so. The time is past when fish were caught with such small boats as angle-net boats. Using 140-ton fishing boats, which can catch fish only in coastal waters, is less effective than catching fish with fyke nets. Several days ago I heard that men of the People’s Army caught fish by using fyke nets, so I told them to bring me the whole catch in one net. The amount was enormous. In the net were all kinds of fish, such as Atka fish, herring and octopus. We need small boats such as the 140-ton boats for fishing operations, but the existing number of these boats is not small, so there is no need to build any more.

If we are going to build new fishing vessels, it will be beneficial to build large ones capable of conducting fishing operations even in high waves. The 3,750-ton and 1,000-ton fishing vessels can fish even in high waves. So far these vessels have put to sea every day even when the waves were high. However, the 3,750-ton vessels seem to be too large for fishing vessels. We build these large vessels because processing facilities, such as for fish refrigeration and making fish meal, are installed in them, but there is no need to install these facilities there. If we install various kinds of processing facilities in fishing vessels, this will only create congestion and it will not be possible to make wide use of these installations. We need not build any more 3,750-ton fishing vessels. Their present number is not small and this is reasonably good.

It will be a good idea to build a large number of 1,000-ton fishing vessels in future. Formerly officials in the fishing sector said that these
vessels were not suitable for fishing operations. However, the use of these vessels shows that they are reasonably good. Our experience has proved that 1,000-ton vessels equipped with fish-freezing facilities are good for fishing operations. At present we are unable to build many 1,000-ton fishing vessels. We must produce a large number of 1,000-hp engines and build more of these vessels. If we have scores of 1,000-ton fishing vessels, we shall dispense with the need to build other kinds of fishing vessels.

It is advisable to build freighters in a reasonable combination of 20,000-ton, 14,000-ton and 5,000-ton capacities. Only when the marine transport sector has freighters of various sizes, will it be able to ship cargo promptly by sending a large vessel to a place with a large volume of cargo and a small one to where there is a small volume of cargo. Freighters must be fully loaded. Therefore, if a large vessel is sent to a place where there is only a small volume of cargo, it will have to wait there until it becomes fully loaded. If large freighters are not fully loaded, they will only waste a large amount of oil and their transport costs will increase. Therefore, you must not recklessly order the kinds and number of freighters to be built without considering in detail how many 20,000-ton, 14,000-ton and 5,000-ton freighters should be built respectively. Officials of the shipbuilding industry, together with officials of the marine transport sector and trading officials, should consider how many of each of these vessels must be built in future. Our officials have now accumulated some experience in marine transport in the course of doing this work for many years, so they must know well the kinds and number of vessels needed for this purpose.

The main cargoes that must be shipped by vessels at home in future are pellets and logs. Not many freighters will be needed to carry them. Some six 20,000-ton freighters will be sufficient for shipping pellets from east coast areas to west coast areas, because the distance between them is not so long. If this number of these freighters is available, two of them can load cargo, two can ship cargo and two can be on their way to load cargo. Two 20,000-ton freighters will be enough for carrying
logs from east coast areas to west coast areas. Not a very great number of logs must be shipped annually along this route. If only some 30,000 cubic metres of logs are shipped every month, 300,000 cubic metres can be shipped in ten months. Their transport problem will be solved if two 20,000-ton freighters ship them once a month. It takes about one week for a freighter to reach Nampho from North Hamgyong Province. Therefore, it is quite possible for a freighter to make one return trip of this distance every month.

In future freighters may not be largely required at home, but the demand for them may be great in our trade with foreign countries. At present we do not need many freighters, because the amount of our exports and imports is not very large. However, we shall need many of them by the end of the Third Seven-Year Plan. At that time we shall export an enormous amount of cement alone. You must carefully calculate the kinds and total number of freighters that will be needed in future for shipping our export goods, including cement. If the calculation is made in detail, ship engines can be produced in accordance with this calculation.

We must produce from our own resources the broad sheet steel needed for the building of ships. Unless we do so, we shall be unable to build ships properly or earn a large amount of money, even if we sell our ships to other countries. The Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex must adopt measures for the production of the sheet steel needed for building ships. I have been told that the plate steel now produced by this complex cannot be used for building large ships because of its poor heat treatment. Measures must be taken for improving heat treatment.

We must also build oil tankers. We are now importing oil from socialist countries. Nevertheless, it is undesirable to depend only on these countries for oil, because it is an important source of power and raw material. If we depend only on socialist countries for oil and if we fail to import it from these countries on a regular basis, this may greatly affect production and construction. At the same time we bring in oil from socialist countries, we must also import it from other countries. We intend to buy several million tons of oil from Asian countries.
annually until we produce it from our own resources in future.

However, if we import oil from these countries, shipping it will be a problem. If we charter foreign oil tankers instead of using our own, the transport costs will be heavy. The cost of shipping oil once via a chartered 200,000-ton tanker is said to be nearly two million dollars. If a 200,000-ton tanker is to carry four million tons of oil, it will have to make 20 trips, so the shipping expenses alone will be nearly 40 million dollars. If we ship this amount of oil by chartering a foreign tanker, it will be tantamount to losing 40 million dollars.

If we are to ship oil from Asian countries, we shall need at least three tankers. Only when we have this number of tankers, will we be able to ensure that one is on its way to load oil, another is leaving for our country with a load and yet another is unloading cargo or undergoing repairs.

We must build two oil tankers by our own efforts. The shipbuilding industry must build a shipway for the building of a 200,000-ton tanker. At the same time it must try to build a tanker by making one section at a time. The shipbuilding industry intends to use this method to build a 200,000-ton tanker in two years. It is a good idea to do so. The industry may not succeed in adopting this method to build a 200,000-ton tanker, but there is no harm in trying. As the saying goes, “It will be none the worse for the loss.” We need not consider building a large tanker by this method to be beyond our power.

It will take us some time to build our own tanker. Since, in the meantime, we cannot sit back with arms folded, we must negotiate with another country about importing a tanker, as already planned. The problem in importing a tanker is the capacity of the ship. Some officials have proposed importing a 100,000-ton tanker, which is convenient for operation. When importing an oil tanker, we must consider its convenience, but we must also take into account what kind of ship can carry oil at lower transport costs. I think that buying a 200,000-ton tanker is more advantageous than buying a 100,000-ton one. The latter can ship only 100,000 tons of oil at a time, risking the danger of failing to provide the oil refineries with oil promptly. If we
are to supply oil to the oil refineries regularly, we shall need several 100,000-ton tankers. The price of a 200,000-ton tanker is not much more than that of a 100,000-ton one. Therefore, it is advisable to buy a 200,000-ton tanker. In case we buy two tankers, it may be advantageous to buy one 200,000-ton tanker and one 100,000-ton tanker.

It is a good idea to solve the problem of oil tankers as I have directed: build some by our own efforts and, at the same time, buy some from other countries.

We must build docks.

This is the way to repair our own ships promptly and earn a large amount of foreign currency by repairing foreign cargo ships.

We must not build a dry dock but a floating dock in Rajin. It is a world trend to use floating docks. Originally we intended to build one more dock in Rajin. However, there is a dock at the June 12 Ship Repair Yard, so we must not build a dock, but a floating dock. In future the June 12 Ship Repair Yard and the floating dock to be built in Rajin must exclusively repair foreign ships.

Nampho also has a dock at the September 10 Ship Repair Yard, so it must not build another dock, but a floating dock.

Some ten years ago, when the September 10 Ship Repair Yard was being built, I had a dock constructed there, because, after considering whether it would be better to build a dock or a floating dock there, they said it would be better to build a dock. It took about two years to build the dock. Not much money is needed to build a dock, because it is simply a matter of digging out earth and building a lock gate. However, if the September 10 Ship Repair Yard has moorings capable of anchoring several large freighters simultaneously, it will be able to repair many foreign ships without having to build another dock.

In future we must build in Nampho an additional 40,000-ton floating dock capable of repairing freighters.

We must build a dock at the Símphó Dockyard. Since the June 12 Ship Repair Yard and the floating dock to be constructed in Rajin will take exclusive charge of repairing foreign ships, a dock must be built to
repair vessels for domestic use. It is best to build this dock at the Sinpho Dockyard. The dock now under construction at this dockyard must be completed as soon as possible, so as to repair ships for home use.

We must build a 200,000-ton dock during the Third Seven-Year Plan. This is essential for repairing a 200,000-ton oil tanker.

Measures must be taken to use docks more effectively.

Increasing the rate of use of the existing docks is no less important than building new ones. If we make greater use of existing docks, we shall be able to repair many freighters without going to the trouble of building new docks. We must build more docks if necessary; nevertheless, if it is possible to repair freighters promptly by making greater use of existing docks, it is advisable not to build more docks. Because ship repair yards now fail to make effective use of their docks, they are unable to repair many foreign freighters.

In order to use docks more effectively, it is necessary to reduce as far as possible the time freighters stay in the docks and do all interior repairs by moving these ships to moorings. Furthermore, sufficient materials for ship repair must be supplied to the ship repair yards. The present low rate of dock use is probably attributable to failure to provide these materials promptly. If sufficient materials are supplied to the ship repair yards, it will be possible to reduce the staying time of the ships and make more use of the docks, because the ships can be repaired in a short time in the docks.

Ship repair yards must buy from other countries the materials needed for repairs of foreign freighters that the state finds difficult to supply. They must keep in reserve a variety of materials, including sheet steel, in amounts needed for the repair of about two ships.

The ship repair yards must be allowed to spend part of the foreign currency they have earned by repairing ships for buying ship repair materials. I have been told that the Administration Council does not approve this readily, probably because the ship repair yards do not earn much foreign currency. If the Ministry of the Shipbuilding Industry is to get the foreign currency needed for repair of ships, it must earn a
large amount of money. If this ministry, as now, earns little foreign currency because of the small number of ships it repairs, it will be difficult to get money.

In future I will ensure that the shipbuilding industry is permitted to buy the materials needed for ship repair with part of the foreign currency it earns by repairing the first ship. Therefore, this ministry must turn around this money quickly.

The Administration Council must determine the amount of foreign currency the Ministry of the Shipbuilding Industry must pay to the state and the amount it can spend for its own use out of the money it earns annually by repairing foreign freighters. The foreign currency to be used by the ship repair yards must not be spent for other purposes. The percentage by which the ship repair yards must increase the rate of utilization of their docks must also be specified.

Officials of the shipbuilding industry must make a further study of the problems of this industry. This is essential for adopting correct measures and developing work. Daily assignments for haulage were given to the rail transport sector, but they were not carried out properly before we launched the 200-day campaign. However, as we, during the 200-day campaign, make strong demands on this sector and organize work down to the last detail, the haulage assignments are being carried out every day, although our present conditions are the same as before. Some days 50,000 tons more load are carried than planned.

It is high time for the shipbuilding industry to make up for its failure to work as it should in the past several years. The officials of the shipbuilding industry must make detailed calculations for the development of this industry.

They must consider the kinds and number of fittings that must be made by our own efforts. They should also study in detail the number of ships that must be built every year. To this end they must thoroughly acquaint themselves with the tonnage and number of ships required by the countries that want to buy our ships. Recently I talked to some people from a foreign country. They seem to demand more ships with capacities of several thousand tons than large 20,000-ton or 50,000-ton
cargo ships. They intend to use our ships mainly in rivers and streams. Probably for this reason they do not require large freighters. We must also build ships for domestic use after accurately calculating the necessary number. If too many ships are built, a large number of sailors may be left idle. It is pointless for ships to be used for short-distance transport. It is all right for them to carry cargo from east coast areas to west coast areas, but it is not very economical for them to carry loads along the east coast areas.

It is advisable for you to analyse on this occasion the reason for the failure to complete quickly the ships that have been launched. If you examine in detail the problems of the shipbuilding industry this afternoon, you will be able, on the basis of this, to work out correct plans for next year and for the year 1990.
Recently the Party History Institute of the Party Central Committee discovered many historical remains from the latter half of the 1930s and the first half of the 1940s, when a fresh upsurge was taking place in the Korean revolution and the historic cause of national liberation was nearing victory. Around Mt. Paektu more than 200 trees were found that had mottos written on them; over 2,000 trees which had been barked and priceless old revolutionary sites and relics, such as the sites of secret camps, log cabins, tents and camp-fires, the daily necessities used by the soldiers of the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army and spent cartridges were discovered. A lot of motto-bearing trees were found in many parts of the country, including North Hamgyong Province, South Hamgyong Province and Jagang Province.

Innumerable old revolutionary sites and relics found in the northern part of Korea, including the Mt. Paektu area, are priceless revolutionary wealth that enriches the historic material concerning the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

If these valuable revolutionary relics had been discovered about 20 years ago, they would have contributed greatly to arming the Party
members and working people with the revolutionary traditions of our Party. For a long time I have been sending Comrade Pak Yong Sun to areas along the Amnok and Tuman Rivers to discover historical remains of the anti-Japanese armed struggle. He visited the Mt. Paektu area many times, but failed to find these valuable historical materials. Comrade Kim Il, too, has been to this area, but he also failed to find them. If Comrade Kim Ju Hyon, who was in charge of building a secret base in the Mt. Paektu area, had not fallen in action, he could have found them. For a long time it was impossible to find these valuable historical materials. If I had visited Mt. Paektu immediately after liberation, I could have found them, but I was too busy dealing with the many problems that arose in the revolution and construction, including building the Party, government and army. I also failed to visit the area in the 1950s, because I had to fight against US imperialism.

The writings on the newly found motto-bearing trees express the unshakable faith of the KPRA soldiers, their determination to defend the headquarters of the revolution with their lives, their unfailing loyalty to their leader, as well as their Juche-oriented stand to accomplish national liberation by their own strength. These writings also clearly show the line of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution contained in the ten-point programme of the Association for the Restoration of the Fatherland and reflect the guerrillas’ ardent patriotism and their steadfast communist revolutionary spirit. In this way these writings are the documents of the anti-Japanese armed struggle rather than mere mottos.

The newly found old revolutionary sites and relics show that not only small units or groups, but also large units of the KPRA stayed and fought in the northern part of Korea, centring on Mt. Paektu, and that they advanced repeatedly into this area.

In September 1936 we built the secret base in the Mt. Paektu area. After the Donggang meeting in May that year I dispatched Comrade Kim Ju Hyon and several other people including Comrade Ri Tong Hak into the homeland to build a secret base in the Mt. Paektu area. Secret camps were built in Sobaeksu Valley, on Saja Hill, Mt.
Kanbaek, Mt. Kom and other sites in the Mt. Paektu area in those days.

The Mt. Paektu secret camp built in Sobaeksu Valley was the centre of our activity in the latter half of the 1930s and the first half of the 1940s. In Sobaeksu Valley were the revolutionary headquarters and the house where Comrade Kim Jong Il was born, as well as the sewing shop, the secretariat office, the check post and barracks. This area was shrouded in secrecy.

Not far from Sobaeksu Valley was the Saja Hill secret camp. From Sobaeksu Valley I would go to the Saja Hill secret camp to dispatch small units or to meet political operatives and heads of underground organizations working in the homeland. When Pak In Jin, the Tojong of the Chondoist religion for South Hamgyong Province, came to us with the Chondoist representatives, I met them in the Saja Hill secret camp. There was a publishing house in this camp. When we dispatched political operatives to local areas and when members of underground revolutionary organizations came to us, we gave them different information articles and teaching materials printed in this publishing house. Saja Hill was also called Wasa Hill, because it looks like a recumbent lion.

The Mt. Kanbaek secret camp’s mission and role were to serve as a training centre of nuclear pivots for strengthening the driving force of our revolution and preparing nationwide resistance; in the military operation for liberation of the homeland it was an assembly area of KPRA units waiting to advance into the homeland.

The Mt. Kom secret camp was for small KPRA units. Mt. Kom (bear-Tr.) was also called Mt. Playing Bear, for bears played there.

Apparently there are many bears on Mt. Kom. A few years ago a Chinese newspaper carried an article that a monster had been seen in Lake Chon at the top of Mt. Paektu. After reading the article, I instructed officials to investigate whether there was really any monster living in Lake Chon. Social security men watched the lake for three years and at last found a black creature. They looked at it carefully and identified it as a bear. The bear swam across the lake to the Chinese part of Mt. Paektu and played on a rock there before recrossing the
lake. I had an article carried in a newspaper saying that what had appeared in Lake Chon on Mt. Paektu was not a monster, but a big bear. When the Chinese said that they had seen a monster in the lake, apparently they mistook a bear for a monster.

The Soyonji Hill secret camp was a logistics base near the Mt. Kanbaek secret camp. The Soyonji Hill camp had a weapon repair shop, a sewing unit, a hospital, a liaison office and such.

Mt. Sono and Mudu Hill secret camps were liaison offices for KPRA units fighting in the homeland; the secret camps along the Amnok River, in the Taegak Hill area and the Ssangdu Hill area were liaison points for units that frequented the homeland.

The secret bases built on and around Mt. Paektu were a bastion of the revolution, relied on by the KPRA main force in its activity, as well as the strategic base of our revolution during the latter half of the 1930s and the first half of the 1940s.

Relying on the secret bases built on and around Mt. Paektu, in these days, we strove to defend firmly the Juche line of the Korean revolution, prepare for the founding of Party and expand ARF organizations; we also put continuous effort into strengthening the driving force of our revolution and hastening the great event of national liberation on our initiative.

Entering the latter half of the 1930s, our revolution was in a very complicated and arduous situation. Alarmed at the KPRA’s stepped-up political and military activities and the growing motive force of the Korean revolution under their influence throughout the country, the Japanese imperialists launched a more frantic “punitive” offensive against the KPRA to stifle the Korean revolution, while launching unprecedented wholesale arrests to destroy revolutionary organizations and imprison and slaughter a lot of communists and patriots. The left adventurists in the Comintern in those days set forth a reckless “line”, abusing the name of the Comintern, that the armed forces that had been active in Manchuria encircle and attack Changchun and proceed to Rehe to beat the Japanese army, which was advancing into China proper; they forced these armed forces to
implement this line.

The Comintern ordered us many times to make the Rehe expedition—in May 1936, when we were operating in Donggang, Fusong County, in June 1937, in the days following the Jiansanfeng battle, and in May 1938 when we were fighting in and around Linjiang along the Amnok River. We rejected the Rehe expedition line whenever the Comintern suggested it. Instead we advanced into the frontier area and deep into Korea and stepped up our struggle to bring about a fresh upsurge in the Korean revolution. When the Rehe expedition line was set forth in May 1936, we went deep into the Mt. Paektu base and met Comrade Pak Tal as well as Pak In Jin and other representatives of the Chondoist religion, so as to beef up the building of Party organizations and the anti-Japanese national united front movement in the homeland; at the same time the KPRA main force attacked Pochonbo in a large operation. When the line was proposed again in June 1937, following the Jiansanfeng battle, we summoned the commanding officers of the main force in the Mt. Paektu secret camp and clarified our principled attitude towards the Rehe expedition before launching military and political operations that summer along the northern border area. When the Rehe expedition was suggested once again in May 1938, we took measures to effect an upsurge in the revolutionary struggle in the homeland and led the main force in brisk mobile operations around Changbai and Linjiang to strike the enemy from behind. Comrade Choe Hyon’s unit, too, fought many battles in those days. Sometimes we fought three battles in one day. Afterwards I saw to it that the KPRA units fighting in the Linjiang and Mengjiang areas gathered in Nanpaizi; at that time Yang Jing-yu, too, came to us from southern Manchuria. In fact, his unit suffered a rout in the reckless Rehe expedition, and he left for KPRA headquarters with only a few orderlies. After I received a report that he was coming to us, I sent Pak Song Chol’s company to meet him. Comrade Pak Song Chol met Yang and guided him through Tonghua to Nanpaizi on the upper reaches of the Badao River. In November 1938 I convened a meeting of military and political cadres of the KPRA in Nanpaizi, where I
officially rejected the Rehe expedition line dictated by the Comintern and reviewed the KPRA military and political activities in the homeland as well as in Linjiang and Mengjiang.

At the Nanpaizi meeting we decided to advance again to the homeland in large force and that winter started the “arduous march”; the next spring we launched a counteroffensive in areas along the Amnok River to strike the enemy everywhere. After finishing the “arduous march” successfully, we held a meeting of KPRA cadres in Beidadingzi in April 1939, where we summed up the military and political operations during the “arduous march” and reaffirmed the policy for large-force operations in the homeland. We celebrated May Day that year in the forest of Madengchang, Xiaodeshui. Present at the May Day celebration were representatives of underground revolutionary organizations from Korea and the Changbai area. You have seen the film *Five Guerrilla Brothers*; the May Day celebration at that time was the same as in the film. After this event we made full preparations for the advance into the homeland in large force and in May fought the Taehongdan battle. Following this battle the large unit moved its theatre to the northeast area of Mt. Paektu in tactical consideration. It was of great significance in developing the revolution in the homeland and bringing about a fresh upsurge in the Korean revolution as a whole. Though the large unit of the KPRA moved to the northeast of Mt. Paektu, we did not give up the area southwest of Mt. Paektu, which had been under our tight control. After the large unit moved to the northeast area, small units stayed and fought in the southwest area.

Before the attack in the Musan area I went to the Mt. Kanbaek area to strengthen the Mt. Paektu secret base built in the homeland and set forth the line of activity for the small units that would fight around Mt. Paektu and on other Korean soil from this base. Because I kept this trip secret, people not connected with the event may not know about it.

During our activities around Mt. Paektu we stepped up preparations for Party founding.

At the Mt. Kom secret camp, I met the communists working in the homeland and directed the building of Party organizations. Towards
the end of May 1937, a little before the Pochonbo battle, I chaired a meeting of the Homeland Party Working Committee (HPWC) at this camp. Present at this meeting were Comrade Pak Tal and other HPWC members and hardcore Party members. At the meeting I clarified the principles involved in building Party organizations and advanced the policy of expanding the Party organizations quickly in Korea and establishing a system for guiding them. Following the meeting we decided to form a political operatives group for north Korea with excellent political workers selected from KPRA units and dispatch them to Korea to build Party organizations. In this way, under the leadership of the KPRA Party Committee, the function of the HPWC increased and the role of the political operatives group was enhanced; as a result, Party organizations were briskly formed in Korea, expanding into the vast area of north Korea, including Mt. Paektu, Musan and Yonsa areas.

In those days some of the commanding officers of the KPRA tended to attach importance only to military actions, but we overcame such deviation and launched Party work and political work with the masses vigorously over vast areas. We can say that this was one of the major characteristics of the anti-Japanese armed struggle in the latter half of the 1930s.

Of great significance in the steps taken to strengthen the motive force of our revolution in the latter half of the 1930s was a decision to organize the anti-Japanese people’s guerrillas of north Korea. With a view to decisively strengthening the motive force of our revolution, to countering the enemy’s ever more villainous oppression in the latter half of the 1930s, and achieving the historic cause of national liberation through our people’s strength, in the spring of 1938 at the Mt. Paektu secret camp I advanced the policy of organizing the anti-Japanese people’s guerrillas of north Korea and appointed Comrade Choe Il Hyon, former company commander of the 7th regiment, as its commander and Comrade Pak Tal as its political commissar. However, the guerrilla force was not organized, because Comrade Pak Tal and many other hardcore elements working in the
homeland were arrested by the Japanese imperialists and later Comrade Choe Il Hyon was killed. This policy was not abandoned, however, but developed into active steps to counter the enemy’s frantic manoeuvres on our initiative by strengthening paramilitary organizations, such as paramilitary guerrillas and worker shock troops, that had been active in the Changbai area and the northern part of Korea and launching all-people resistance.

Comrade Pak Tal, who had been appointed political commissar of the anti-Japanese people’s guerrillas of north Korea, was arrested by the Japanese imperialists in September 1938, a year after the “Hyesan incident” took place. Sometime after I met Comrade Pak Tal in 1937, I wrote to him. It was the day we fought the Jiansanfeng battle.

Following our attack on Pochonbo in June 1937, we fought a great battle in Jiansanfeng against the Hamhung 74th regiment of the Ranam 19th Division led by Kim Sok Won, which fancied itself the “best crack force”. At that time the Hamhung 74th regiment suffered a great loss, but it did not retreat; instead it continued the attack, reinforcing its forces. As we were withdrawing, after dealing a decisive blow to the enemy, a light rain that had begun from morning, changed into a torrent. We dealt a crushing blow to the 74th regiment, which came into the Jiansanfeng area, using some of our forces to check the enemy reinforcements, and slipped out under cover of the heavy rain. The enemy survivors of the battle were able to collect and carry the heads of their dead colleagues, because we withdrew from Jiansanfeng after throwing them onto the defensive. If we had attacked them repeatedly that day instead of withdrawing, the enemy could not have collected the heads of their colleagues.

Before the Jiansanfeng battle representatives of revolutionary organizations in the homeland visited the KPRA unit—three or four people, I think. I talked with them in the rain. Now that the enemy are building “internment villages” in Manchuria and are resorting to all sorts of manoeuvres to break relations between the KPRA and the people, I told them, our policy is that members of underground revolutionary organizations penetrate Japanese institutions and
organizations and work more actively. I emphasized that they should go into “internment villages” to be a “self-defence corps” man or a “village head” and the like. I sent a letter to Comrade Pak Tal through them as they returned.

Afterwards the “Hyesan incident” took place, followed by the wholesale arrest of revolutionary organization members. When the revolutionary organizations in the Changbai area and Korea were going through a trial following the “Hyesan incident”, I was informed that Comrade Pak Tal and a small group of his revolutionary organization were active in Taejinphyong, Pochonbo. At that time I received a report that Comrade Kim Jong Suk had established relations with that organization and met Comrade Pak Tal. It was April 1938 or late spring, I think. After receiving that report, I sent a liaison group for him. I met him on Mt. Paektu and assigned him the task of rehabilitating the destroyed revolutionary organization and bringing about a fresh upswing in the revolutionary struggle before dispatching him again. When I went to the Mt. Paektu secret camp to meet him, Comrade Kim Jong Suk apparently was staying there. After this event Comrade Pak Tal was arrested.

In the first half of the 1940s, too, we waged a dynamic struggle to bring about the great historical event of national liberation on our own initiative, centring on the secret bases built around Mt. Paektu.

Entering the 1940s, we sent some KIRA units to training base in the Far East of the Soviet Union, so that they could prepare for the great revolutionary event by intensifying military and political training. Meanwhile, we sent many small units and political operative groups to the border areas and Korea to launch military and political activities and rehabilitate and expand revolutionary organizations, with a view to building a new revolutionary force. In this way we conducted a vigorous struggle to achieve the historic cause of national liberation, relying on our people as the motive force. The basic form of the anti-Japanese armed struggle in the first half of the 1940s was the military and political activities of the small units and political operative groups dispatched to the border areas and different places in
Korea. They carried out their tasks, centring on the secret bases in the Mt. Paektu area. In those days I located the headquarters in the secret base in the Mt. Paektu area and frequented the temporary secret bases built in different parts of Korea and northeast China to give guidance to the small units and political operative groups. I also led the work of the units staying in the Far East of the Soviet Union for military training.

As I said previously, on the eve of the last decisive battle for national liberation KPRA units fought in the northern part of Korea, centring on the Mt. Paektu base, and some KPRA units were waiting for the order in full combat preparations in the training base in the Far East of the Soviet Union. However, the Japanese imperialists surrendered so early in the war against Japan that only the units that had been staying in the Mt. Paektu base and areas along the northern border, the small units that had been fighting deep in the homeland, using secret bases, and the armed organizations for all-people resistance participated in the operation for national liberation. Japanese documents said, I was told, that four divisions composed exclusively of Koreans were preparing for landing and parachuting operations in the Maritime Province of Siberia and the area along the Korean frontier and a Korean army 100,000 strong was preparing a decisive battle against the Kwantung army; young patriots of Korea planned to form an armed force of young people who had evaded conscription and drafting, build bases in the deep forest, such as Mt. Paektu and the Thaebaek Mountains, for war preparation and join forces with us when we were advancing. Some publications of the Soviet Union said that when the Soviet Army landed in Rajin, hundreds of KPRA soldiers had already liberated the city and welcomed the Soviet Army. Such historical materials and the newly discovered revolutionary sites and relics clearly show that the motive force of our revolution was strong in the days when the historic cause of national liberation was achieved, that the main bases for the activities of the KPRA units in those days were the secret bases built in the northern part of Korea, centring on Mt. Paektu, and that the central bases of leadership were the secret camps around Mt. Paektu.
The secret bases established in the northern part of Korea, centring on the Mt. Paektu secret camp, played a great role in maintaining the Juche-oriented stand of our revolution and strengthening our own revolutionary force and in taking the initiative and positive steps to bring about a great upsurge in the Korean revolution when it was going through a trial owing to the frantic manoeuvres of the Japanese imperialists.

Building up the revolutionary battle sites around the Mt. Paektu secret camp is of great significance in imbuing Party members and working people with the revolutionary traditions of our Party and carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche to its consummation through the generations. Therefore, based on the historical revolutionary materials recently discovered, we should build a grand open-air revolutionary museum, a place good for education in revolutionary traditions, on the revolutionary battle sites on Mt. Paektu.

If the Mt. Paektu revolutionary battle sites are built up as planned in the model, centring on Sobaeksu Valley and including ten wide areas, such as Saja Hill, Mt. Kanbaek, Mt. Kom, Soyonji Hill, Mt. Sono, Mudu Hill, Taegak Hill, Ssangdu Hill and areas along the Amnok River, the Mt. Paektu area will be turned into a grand open-air revolutionary museum in the true sense of the word.

We should not try to build up the revolutionary battle sites on Mt. Paektu simultaneously in all places where revolutionary sites and relics were discovered, but rehabilitate them one by one, as accommodations for visitors are prepared. Particularly, Sobaeksu Valley, Saja Hill, Mt. Kanbaek, Mt. Kom and Soyonji Hill are the sites that must be rehabilitated with special emphasis.

The Sobaeksu Valley area must be handled carefully, because the headquarters of the revolution were located and the cabin where Comrade Kim Jong II was born is there. It would be advisable to make this valley a quiet place with a solemn atmosphere so that visitors should experience deep emotion and take off their hats to this sacred place.
In Sobaeksu Valley a revolutionary history museum or exhibition should be built to display the historical revolutionary remains and relics discovered in the Mt. Paektu area, providing visual education for visitors. Letters on the newly discovered motto-bearing trees have become barely visible with the passage of years, so the Revolutionary Historical Materials Preservation Institute of the Hamhung Branch Institute under the Academy of Sciences invented a scientific and technical method with which to rehabilitate invisible letters. It is a laudable deed.

The publishing house should be rehabilitated in the Saja Hill area. In those days, this publishing house printed different kinds of publications and distributed them to the leaders of small units, political operatives and heads of underground revolutionary organizations. In the Soyonji Hill area the weapon repair shop, sewing shop, hospital and other supply and service bases should be restored to their former positions.

In the secret camps on Mt. Sono, Mudu Hill, Taegak Hill, Ssangdu Hill and along the Amnok River small monuments and stone tablets should be erected to characterize them as former liaison locations, and service facilities should be built for visitors.

When we rehabilitate the revolutionary battle sites, we must build not only memorials, historical monuments and monuments of dedicated poems, but also houses to educate visitors and provide them with relaxation. Then visitors can drop into the houses on the way, drinking and resting.

Around the revolutionary battlefields lawns, blueberry groves, flower beds and rare fruit trees should be planted.

Roads to the revolutionary battle sites should be built well.

It is ideal that from the Mt. Paektu secret camp in Sobaeksu Valley a loop line has been planned to connect the fork on Mt. Paektu that divides into Samjiyon, Sinmusong and Taehongdan directions, the newly built road along the Amnok River and the road to Rimyongsu.

A further study will be needed about the proposed plan to build a broad-gauge railway between Rimyongsu and Sobaeksu and between
Samjiyon and Sinmusong, an overhead monorail of 20 kilometres between Sinmusong and Paektu Bridge, and tourist cableways along the roads between Paektu Bridge and the summit of Mt. Paektu and between the summit and Lake Chon.

Whether to lay a cableway or an escalator along the roads between Paektu Bridge and the summit of Mt. Paektu and between the summit and Lake Chon needs more discussion with experts. If an escalator is laid, its maintenance may be a problem in winter when people do not use it, but that does not matter. In winter it can be kept oiled and covered with canvas, and from May or June it can be used after maintenance.

It would not be realistic to build broad-gauge railways between Rimyongsu and Sobaeksu and between Samjiyon and Sinmusong. Building a railway there requires cutting trees on the right and left sides within at least one hundred metres, damaging the surrounding scenery. We cannot afford to destroy the forest for the sake of a railway. Thickly wooded and rich in scenic beauty, the Mt. Paektu revolutionary battle sites will be good for sightseeing and have great educational value. Between Rimyongsu and Sobaeksu and between Samjiyon and Sinmusong decent roads should be built, so that visitors to the revolutionary battle sites can travel by bus. When the second stage of the northern railway project has been completed, the railway between Hyesan, Rimyongsu and Samjiyon will be open to traffic, so travel will become convenient for visitors without building new railways in these areas. When the construction of the northern railway from Hyesan to Musan via Rimyongsu and Samjiyon was put on the order of the day, I considered a lot about building a wide railway between Rimyongsu and Samjiyon, because it was a waste to destroy the forest.

We also need further study about laying an overhead monorail between Sinmusong and Paektu Bridge. You can try it if it costs little to operate and can be built without cutting many trees, because it has a single rail.

It is wonderful that you planned to build tourist motorways to Mt. Kanbaek, Soyonji Hill and Mudu Hill areas along fire protection lines
in order to protect the Mt. Paektu revolutionary battle sites from forest fire. Fire protection lines must be drawn well for the revolutionary battle sites. If fire protection lines are built as planned, they will protect the Mt. Paektu secret camp area from fire and can be used as roads.

Decent houses should be provided for the caretakers of the revolutionary battle sites.

If these houses are to be built in the Sobaeksu Valley area, a thorough sewerage must be established to prevent polluting the surroundings. When the development project of Mt. Myohyang was under way, some people proposed constructing public buildings in the upper part of the valley, where the International Friendship Exhibition is located. I rejected their proposal. If public buildings had been erected there, their sewage might have polluted the river flowing along the valley, so I made sure that restaurants, shops and other public buildings were placed down the valley where the International Friendship Exhibition and the Children’s Union Camp were located and that only tourists with knapsacks were allowed to go to the upper part of the valley. When dwelling houses for the caretakers are to be built in Sobaeksu Valley, a good sewerage should be established to protect the surroundings from pollution.

Building houses for the caretakers in Sinmusong village would matter little, because the residential area is far from the revolutionary battle sites. By building Sinmusong village into a modern town, three mountain towns will be formed around Mt. Paektu, consisting of Samjiyon County Town, Rimyongsu and Sinmusong.
I am grateful to you for visiting our country again and bid a warm welcome to you. It is a great pleasure for me to see you visiting our country with your family this time.

You said that you climbed Mt. Paektu yesterday and were deeply impressed. Mt. Paektu is a famous, beautiful and magnificent mountain in our country as well as the sacred place of our revolution.

On the summit of Mt. Paektu you can have a better view of its magnificence. Perhaps few mountains in the world have such a large lake on their summit.

There are several waterfalls on Mt. Paektu in both the southwestern and northern parts; southwestern water falls to the Amnok River and northern water falls to the Songhua River in China. A stream from Lake Chon on top of Mt. Paektu flows underground and then into the Tuman River. On the shore of the lake there is also a hot spring.

Many people now visit Mt. Paektu, so we are going to lay cableways or escalators to the top of Mt. Paektu and between the top and Lake Chon for their convenience. We can make our own escalators for the purpose.

You said that you went to the Mt. Paektu secret camp. The secret camp and other revolutionary sites of historical interest and the old battlefields are very important in the education of younger people. Through them we inspire the younger generation with an
unbreakable revolutionary spirit.

We waged the anti-Japanese armed struggle for about 20 years, centring on the Mt. Paektu area, so there were many secret camps used by our People’s Revolutionary Army on and around Mt. Paektu, to the east and south of Mt. Paektu and also in China.

Some years ago I went to Mt. Paektu and found the site of the secret camp, which our officials had long failed to discover. Many veterans of the anti-Japanese armed struggle still know the secret camps of the large units of the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army and the sites where they camped, so these places were found long ago, but as we kept the secret bases in the Mt. Paektu area, including the Mt. Paektu secret camp, in strict secrecy during the struggle, other people knew nothing of them. At the secret bases in the Mt. Paektu area there were the headquarters of the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army, a sewing shop, a printing shop, a weapon repair shop and a hospital for seriously ill patients. In order not to disclose the Mt. Paektu secret camp to the enemy, I used to take only a small unit, not a large unit, with me when I went there. Even so I went only on a snowy day, because the falling snow would bury our footprints. We also chose a snowy day to leave the secret camp. In those days no one could go into the Mt. Paektu secret camp except members of the People’s Revolutionary Army. People lived on the banks of the Amnok and Tuman Rivers far from there.

Looking around the Mt. Paektu area in 1986, I went to the Mt. Paektu secret camp area and told my company to look for the exact site of the camp there. After that the officials concerned found where the house had stood and the slogan-bearing trees. You said you saw the log cabin and the trees there. The cabin was rebuilt on the site. If we had discovered the site of the Mt. Paektu secret camp soon after the country was liberated, we could have kept the letters on the trees vivid until now.

As I told a foreigner yesterday, a family all of whose members fought in the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army during the anti-Japanese armed struggle lived in this area. It was Comrade Ma
Tong Hui’s family. His younger sister and his wife joined the army and fought courageously. I decided to send him as an underground political worker to the Hyesan area, and prior to his departure I told him to go to see his wife, who was working at the sewing unit in a secret camp of the Mt. Paektu Base, for I thought he would have to be away from her for a long time. After seeing his wife, he went on his mission and was arrested by the Japanese police during his underground political operations. The Japanese police tortured him cruelly. Comrade Ma Tong Hui bit off his tongue for fear of unconsciously revealing the location of the Mt. Paektu secret camp. He was well aware of the crisis the headquarters of the revolution would face if he exposed its whereabouts. When he tore off his tongue, the Japanese killed him, cursing him as a diehard communist. Comrade Ma Tong Hui was a revolutionary, who bit off his tongue and was killed for keeping secrets of the revolution. I had a bronze statue of him erected and a feature film produced that depicted his struggle. If you have time, you should see the film.

When we waged the anti-Japanese armed struggle, the people living in the Mt. Paektu area gave the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army strong support and assistance. Without their support and assistance it would have been impossible for the People’s Revolutionary Army to fight the Japanese imperialists for so many years under arduous conditions with neither a state rear nor foreign aid. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle I put forward the slogan, “The guerrillas cannot live separated from the people any more than fish can live out of water,” and paid great attention to forging unbreakable ties with the people. Even under such adverse conditions the KPRA soldiers never infringed upon the interests of the people; instead, whenever they captured trophies, they divided them among the people, who in turn gave active moral and material support to the soldiers. In secret they sent us grain that they had harvested as well as salt and various other supplies.

At that time the majority of the masses living in the Mt. Paektu area belonged to our revolutionary organizations, such as the Anti-Japanese
Youth League, the Anti-Japanese Association, the Association for the Restoration of the Fatherland and the Korean National Liberation Union.

In those days many religious believers, including Chondoists, who lived in the Mt. Paektu area also belonged to revolutionary organizations. Many Chondoists lived in this region. The Chondoist religion is native to our country. Its doctrine is not bad. Its basic idea is that man is God. We went among the Chondoists and worked well with them, so that they gave us positive support. Certainly the top hierarchy of the Chondoist faith, who lived in Seoul, were bribed by the Japanese imperialists in the closing years of Japanese colonial rule. They insisted that an “autonomous government” be established in Korea with Japanese support. The lower echelons, however, objected to their stand. Thus the people in the Mt. Paektu area helped us actively and fought devotedly against the Japanese imperialists.

I took part in the revolution when I was young and have been waging an arduous struggle against imperialism. I liberated my country after a 20-year struggle against the Japanese imperialists, then fought again for three years against the US imperialists who invaded my country. In the three years of the Fatherland Liberation War we lost many dear comrades, but during the war our people were tempered still more.

You said that the Korean people’s great victory over the US imperialist aggressors showed the world that people would be fully able to defeat imperialist invaders if they fought in firm unity, no matter how small their country. You are right. Today our people are united behind our Party more solidly than ever before.

For Communist and Workers’ Parties in capitalist countries to give correct leadership to the revolutionary struggle of the masses of the people, their fighting goal should be clear. Of course, they should fight to establish socialism, but it is not enough to call on the people in general terms to fight against capitalists to establish a socialist system. You have just said that capitalist countries in Europe assert more strongly than before that they should pursue policies by their own
decisions, so the Communist and Workers’ Parties in capitalist countries must pursue their countries’ independence as their immediate fighting task.

Any party must, first of all, free its country from any foreign domination, enabling it to exercise complete political sovereignty. It is very important to ensure the country’s political independence. Therefore parties in capitalist countries must struggle to free their countries from the control of great powers and win complete political independence. In this struggle they must form a common front with all patriotic forces.

In order to establish a socialist system, you should begin with the struggle to free your country from the control of great powers and make it independent. I think this is your first and foremost task.

After achieving the country’s political independence, you should fight to establish a social system under which all people lead equitably happy lives.

You should take the road to socialism in order to provide all the people with stable lives and continue to improve their standards of living. Only under the socialist system can all the people have genuine political rights and live in freedom and happiness.

On a recent visit to our country the leader of a communist party from a capitalist country said that from the developments in some socialist countries he could not understand what kind of socialism they were building. Probably he meant that some socialist countries are obscuring the distinction between socialism and capitalism. Quite a few socialist countries have now adopted capitalist methods in building socialism and, as a result the demarcation line between the socialist and capitalist systems is disappearing.

I said to him: “It is not difficult to understand the distinction between the socialist and capitalist systems. Building genuine socialism means establishing a society that champions the interests of all the people. If you stay longer in our country and see a lot of things you will clearly understand the advantages of the socialist system.”

In our country everyone acquires the right to eat and gets food
supplies from the moment he or she is born, and all the working people are provided with stable jobs. We have neither unemployment nor taxation. Everyone in our country is accorded free education and free medical care. Thus in our country the state takes full responsibility for the people’s living and provides them with all their living conditions. That is why all our people place unbounded trust in our Party and government and are united solidly behind the Party. They are solidly united because our country provides them with all their living conditions. Without this the people’s unity and cohesion could not be expected.

It is true that productive forces in socialist countries are not so highly developed as in developed capitalist countries. Socialist countries can import technology from developed capitalist countries for economic progress, but the import of technology must not lead to introduction of the capitalist system itself. The former is one thing and the latter is another. The development of technology in capitalist countries on no account means the superiority of the capitalist system. Some people think capitalists or the capitalist system can develop technology at a high speed. They are wrong. It is not the capitalists, but the working people, including intellectuals, who develop technology.

If the socialist countries advance consistently along the road of socialism, giving full play to the masses’ creative power, they can develop technology more rapidly than the capitalist countries. If they raise the working people’s levels of ideology, culture and knowledge, the people will come up with more technological inventions. It is better for socialist countries to develop technology on their own by raising their people’s levels of ideology, culture and technology than to visit capitalist countries and kiss the capitalists in order to obtain new technology.

As communists are revolutionaries, determined to build socialism in opposition to capitalism, they must not abandon socialist principles. If they cock their heads, wondering if it is possible to build socialism by reform, they will become reformists in the end.

Our Party holds that we should continue with the revolution in
order to succeed in building socialism. We shall continue to carry out
the revolution to win the complete victory of socialism.

For the complete victory of socialism we must push ahead with the
ideological, technological and cultural revolutions and occupy the two
fortresses, the ideological and material fortresses.

We intend to make all our people revolutionaries and assimilate
them into the working class by speeding up the ideological revolution
and ensure that all members of society acquire the culture and
knowledge of a university graduate by accelerating the cultural
revolution. If people are educated and transformed on communist
lines, they can propel the technological revolution more vigorously.

We shall build socialism by our own efforts, giving full rein to the
people’s revolutionary spirit and their creative wisdom.

Some people talk as if the south Korean economy is developed, but
it is totally dependent on developed capitalist countries. In south Korea
many capitalists of developed capitalist countries, such as the USA,
Japan, Britain, France, West Germany and Canada, have invested in
the construction of factories and are exploiting the cheap labour of
south Korea. South Korea has a population of over 40 million, and it
sells a lot of labour to foreign capitalists at low prices. If a country
imitates south Korea allegedly to develop the economy, it will become
a colony and its people cannot escape slavery.

We do not want to become subordinate economically to other
countries by inviting foreign capital recklessly for economic
development. We are solving all problems in economic construction
through our own efforts on the principle of self-reliance. We built the
West Sea Barrage by ourselves and also are building large factories
and power stations on our own. Some foreign visitors to our country
have asked which country gave us loans for the many construction
projects we were undertaking. They even said that they would give us
loans. But we do not wish to build anything by borrowing money from
them.

Our country advances independently. Economic dependence on
another country makes it impossible for a country to exercise
sovereignty. We think it better to construct an independent economy than to build a dependent economy like the south Korean economy. One can sleep in peace only when one is independent.

We are planning to overtake developed countries in the near future. We can do so.

As you said, a lot of changes have taken place recently in the Soviet Union. If there was anything wrong in their policies in former days, as the Soviet people say, it needs to be corrected.

But we made no mistakes in the past, so we have nothing to reform or restructure. We shall hold fast to the independent line and policy of our Party and carry them out with all consistency. All our Party members and other working people have the same convictions.

Our people, who are armed firmly with our Party’s Juche idea, do not blindly accept foreign things. When adopting a foreign thing, we examine whether it agrees with our taste and stomach or not, and if it agrees, we swallow it, and if not, we spit it out. If you force it down your throat and your stomach repels it, you will suffer from indigestion. Eating what is agreeable to our taste and spitting it out otherwise when adopting foreign things is a principle we have maintained in our long revolutionary struggle.

We strictly pursue a policy of independence. All our people know well that we should advance independently and are awakened to this need.

I hope you will visit our country again when we have built our own, more admirable style of socialism on our own, under the unfurled banner of the Juche idea. When you visit our country after our people have constructed a better socialism by applying the principles of Juche in ideology, independence in politics, and self-reliance in economy and defence, you will have a firmer belief that socialism is sure to emerge victorious.

Thank you for your wish for the development of relations between our two Parties.
ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED  
BY THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF OF HORIZONT,  
A NEWSPAPER OF THE GERMAN  
DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC

August 4, 1988

**Question:** September 9 this year is the 40th anniversary of the founding of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea.

Foreign countries, too, read great significance into this festive day.

What can you say with regard to the development of your country, a socialist state in Asia, on the occasion of the anniversary of the founding of the DPRK?

**Answer:** Our people are greeting the important national holiday, the 40th anniversary of the foundation of the DPRK, jubilantly and with feelings of great pride and joy.

Over the past 40 years our Republic has advanced forcefully along the independent road of socialism, and our country has assumed a completely new aspect through the all-out struggle for creation and construction. Our people, who became fully-fledged masters of the state and society with the founding of the Republic, have, through their devoted struggle and creative labour, converted our once-backward colonial agrarian country into an independent socialist state with a solid independent national economy, flourishing national culture and self-reliant defence capability.

What we can say with pride while marking the 40th anniversary of
the founding of the Republic is that our people, by advancing along the independent road of socialism as indicated by the Juche idea, have overcome centuries-old backwardness, their historical inheritance, and achieved great success in the building of the economy and national culture.

After their victory in the Fatherland Liberation War against the aggression of US imperialism our people waged an arduous struggle, displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, and thus carried out the policy put forward by our Party and the Government of the Republic of building an independent national economy on the debris of war. We carried out the historic task of socialist industrialization in a short time and developed the different sectors of the national economy, including agriculture, very rapidly. In this way, we have laid solid material and technical foundations for socialism. In the process of carrying out many long-term plans, the Juche character of our economy has been further strengthened and its technical level raised considerably.

Through their creative labour, our people have built an excellent independent socialist national economy which is equipped with modern technology and is comprehensively developed. As a result they have become able to manage the economic life of the country on their own to meet their own needs. They are very proud of this.

In the building of national culture we attached primary importance to education and the training of our own cadres, and firmly maintained the principle of giving priority to these matters.

Universal eleven-year compulsory education has been introduced in our country and has enabled our entire younger generation to receive full secondary education at no charge before going out to work. In addition, all the working people are studying while they work, enrolled in one form of educational institution or another. In our country, where there was no university before liberation, more than 240 institutions of higher learning have now been established, comprehensive cadre-training centres have been built in every province, and the number of technicians and specialists has exceeded 1.3 million. Our
country, which lagged far behind modern civilization in the past, has been converted into a “land of education”, where everyone studies, and has a large contingent of national cadres who have been trained domestically. This is a source of great pride for us and a valuable asset for developing our country more rapidly in the future.

Our people’s struggle for socialist construction has been conducted in the difficult circumstances in which the country is divided and in the constant presence of imperialist aggression and the obstructive manoeuvres of enemies at home and abroad. However, our Party and the Government of the Republic put forward lines and policies to suit the specific situation in our country, rigidly on the basis of an independent stand, and carried them out at all times by relying on the creative wisdom and strength of the masses of the people, thereby leading the revolution and construction directly to victory.

Our people are convinced that they will emerge victorious when they fight on with determination along the independent road of socialism under the guidance of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic. They are now making vigorous efforts to win the complete victory of socialism, full of renewed hope and optimism.

**Question:** The Democratic People’s Republic of Korea has made many constructive proposals for removing the danger of war and easing tension on the Korean peninsula. But the south Korean rulers have ignored or turned down these proposals.

What are your views about the future development of the situation on the Korean peninsula?

**Answer:** Owing to the US imperialists’ manoeuvres for aggression and war the prevailing situation on the Korean peninsula is very tense and complicated. The United States, which has occupied half of our territory for over 40 years, is maintaining there in constant readiness for attack its own 40,000-strong aggressive force as well as one million south Korean puppet troops, and has turned south Korea into the
largest nuclear attack base in the Far East and the most dangerous potential source of nuclear war in the world by deploying more than 1,000 nuclear weapons there.

Easing the tension and removing the danger of war on the Korean peninsula is a precondition for the peaceful reunification of Korea as well as an urgent requirement for safeguarding peace in Asia and other parts of the world.

Out of a desire to ease the tension and defend peace on the Korean peninsula and to find a peaceful solution to the Korean reunification question, the Government of the Republic has made many constructive peace proposals and has been sincere in its efforts to realize them.

In recent years we have put forward a proposal to hold tripartite talks between the DPRK, the United States and south Korea so as to conclude a peace treaty between us and the United States and adopt a declaration of nonaggression between the north and the south, a proposal to turn the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free, peace zone, and a proposal to stop large-scale military exercises and reduce the armed forces on the peninsula by stages. Moreover, we have taken the positive step of unilaterally reducing our armed forces by 100,000 men. In order to solve the urgent problems arising in relaxing the tension on the Korean peninsula, this year we proposed the convening of a north-south joint conference to be attended by representatives of political parties and social organizations and individuals from all sectors of society, as well as the authorities, from north and south Korea.

However, the United States and the south Korean authorities refused to accept the reasonable peace proposals put forward by the Government of the Republic, but instead moved towards aggravating the tension on the Korean peninsula. Recently, with the 24th Olympic Games approaching, the United States has been cooking up the lame excuse of guaranteeing the “safety of the Olympics” in order to intensify its manoeuvres against our Republic and reinforce its armed forces of aggression on and around the Korean peninsula on a large scale.
In order to ease the tension and establish the conditions for peace on the Korean peninsula it is necessary that a peace treaty between us and the United States be concluded, a declaration of nonaggression between the north and the south be adopted, US troops and nuclear weapons be withdrawn from south Korea and the armed forces of the north and the south be reduced drastically by stages.

Not long ago we made another important suggestion that a north-south joint parliamentary conference be convened to proclaim a declaration of nonaggression, and that DPRK-US parliamentary talks be held to discuss the matter of replacing the Korean Armistice Agreement with a peace treaty. The realization of this proposal will mark a new phase in the development of the situation on the Korean peninsula.

If the United States and the south Korean authorities truly want peace in Korea and the peaceful settlement of the Korean question they must give an affirmative response to our peace proposal and move towards easing tension and removing the danger of war on the Korean peninsula.

The present situation on the Korean peninsula is developing in favour of our people, who are fighting for peace and national reunification, and to the disadvantage of the enemy, who is pursuing aggression and division.

The desire of our nation to establish lasting peace on the Korean peninsula and reunify the country by peaceful means is increasing with each passing day, and the south Korean people are fighting ceaselessly for independence from US imperialism, for democracy against fascism and for national reunification. In international relations too, the mood of detente is growing gradually and the peace-loving people of the world are giving positive support to the Korean people’s struggle.

Our people will fight on boldly for peace on the Korean peninsula and for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country, in firm unity with the peace-loving people of the world, particularly the people of the socialist countries.
**Question:** The 13th World Festival of Youth and Students will be held in Pyongyang in July 1989.

What preparations is your country making for this festival?

What are the young people in particular doing with regard to this?

**Answer:** The World Festival of Youth and Students will be a grand political function at which progressive youth and students from the five continents will get together, irrespective of ideology, religious belief and social system, to exchange their hopes and ambitions with regard to the ideal of anti-imperialist solidarity and peace and friendship, and demonstrate their international unity and solidarity. This festival in Pyongyang, which will be held for the first time in Asia, will encourage the youth, students and other people all over the world in their just struggle against imperialism and for peace, democracy, national independence and social progress. It will strengthen friendship and solidarity between the youth and students from the five continents and contribute to developing the movement of youth and students worldwide. The Pyongyang Festival will also be an important opportunity for strengthening international solidarity with the revolutionary cause of our people.

Our people attach great importance to the 13th WFYS, which will demonstrate the powerful unity of the youth and students the world over, and are making every effort to ensure that this will be a wonderful festival that will meet the expectations of the youth, students and other people all over the world.

In our country the preparations for the festival are now in full swing, with all the people involved. The youth and students and other people of our country are busy making full preparations for the festival in different areas in order to make this festival significant, splendid and unique so that it conforms to the noble ideal of the WFYS. In particular, construction work is progressing with vigour to ensure that the festival can be staged. As a result of the devoted efforts of the young builders and other people, magnificent Kwangbok Street, the Ankol Sports Village which is furnished with modern facilities,
Rungnado Stadium with 150,000 seats, a grand theatre, and other sports and cultural establishments and amenities are nearing completion. Our youth and students are making extensive preparations for staging political functions, cultural and artistic events, sports events and many other functions at the festival, at the same time as preparing themselves for taking part in them.

The preparations for the 13th WFYS are proceeding smoothly with the active help of the youth and students and their organizations in different countries, including the German Democratic Republic. We are deeply grateful to the youth and students of the GDR and their organizations for taking such great interest in the preparations for the festival and for taking an active part in them.

Holding a great international festival of youth and students, the hope of mankind, in Pyongyang is an auspicious event for our people. We will welcome with kindness and warmth the representatives of the youth and students from the various countries of the world and all the other foreign guests who come to our country to attend the festival, and furnish every convenience for them to participate freely in the festival events.

I firmly believe that through the joint efforts of the youth and students of our country and the progressive youth and students of the rest of the world, the 13th WFYS will be a success, and will reflect the requirements of our times and the aspirations of the youth and students of the world.
Comrades,

Esteemed heads of state from many countries and other guests from foreign lands,

Today we are celebrating the 40th anniversary of the founding of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, our glorious motherland, with feelings of great national pride and revolutionary dignity.

On this jubilant occasion I should like to offer, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, warm congratulations to our working class, farmers, working intellectuals and all the other people who have been struggling devotedly to establish, consolidate and develop the Republic.

I extend my compatriotic greetings to the south Korean patriots and other people from all walks of life who, regarding the Republic as a beacon of hope, have been fighting courageously against imperialist domination and for social democracy and national reunification.

My warm greetings go also to all our compatriots in Japan and in other lands who have been working with complete patriotic enthusiasm for the prosperity of their socialist homeland and for the independent
and peaceful reunification of the country.

This meeting is being attended by heads of state and heads of government from many countries as well as by delegations and close friends from foreign lands who are visiting our country to congratulate us on our national holiday. Allow me to offer, on behalf of our Party and our government and all the Korean people, a warm welcome to these heads of state and envoys of friendship and to express profound thanks to the governments and peoples of all the countries friendly to us around the world that have been giving strong support and encouragement to the revolutionary cause of our people.

A large number of anti-Japanese fighters and patriotic people have given their noble and precious lives for the freedom and independence of the country and for the establishment, consolidation and development of the Republic. Together with you comrades present here, I should like to pay tribute to the anti-Japanese revolutionary martyrs and the patriotic martyrs who have devoted themselves wholeheartedly to the noble cause of the country and their fellow people.

Since its foundation our Republic has travelled a road of victory and glory. It is becoming evermore prosperous as an independent socialist state in which the people’s independence and creativity are blossoming fully in all aspects of social life.

Today, looking back with deep emotion upon the glorious and victorious history of the Republic, our people are firmly resolved to fight more resolutely to accomplish the cause of socialism and communism under the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea.

Comrades,

Establishment of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea is a
great achievement gained by our revolution through a long-drawn-out, arduous struggle for independence. It is the genuine political power of the people, which is meeting the masses’ desire for independence and realizing with credit their ideals by implementing the Juche idea.

Our Republic has grown from the deep historical roots of the glorious anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

The immortal achievement made by the Korean communists during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle was that, by establishing Juche in our revolution, they led the cause of the country’s liberation to victory and laid strong foundations on which to build an independent and sovereign state.

During the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we not only fought the extremely brutal and formidable Japanese imperialism under the most trying of circumstances, but also had to wage a difficult struggle to overcome factional sycophancy towards the great powers, a hangover from the past, and to blaze a new trail for the Korean revolution. The most important matter facing us in giving successful leadership to the arduous and complex anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle was to establish Juche in our revolution. We formed solid revolutionary ranks with young communists at the core, the communists who had not been affected by factional sycophancy, and fought by drawing on Juche-oriented strategy and tactics that suited our specific revolutionary situation. By establishing Juche in the revolutionary struggle we were able to increase and strengthen our revolutionary ranks steadily and win a historic victory in the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, even though the circumstances were so arduous.

After liberation the occupation of south Korea by the US imperialists created major obstacles and difficulties for us in building a new country. Nevertheless, on the strength of the glorious revolutionary traditions created during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we were able immediately to found a Juche-type revolutionary party, a people’s government and regular armed forces, successfully carry out democratic reforms and open up a broad avenue
for social progress along democratic lines.

The glorious revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and the brilliant success achieved by our people in their creative struggle for democratic construction after liberation became the unshakable foundations for establishment of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea.

Establishment of the Republic enabled our people to shape their destiny independently and creatively as genuine masters of an independent and sovereign state and provided them with a powerful weapon for building socialism and communism. The emergence of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea as a formidable Eastern bulwark of peace and socialism was a historic event. It inspired the people of Asia and the rest of the world who had been groaning under imperialist domination and oppression to launch liberation struggles and dealt a heavy blow at the imperialists and international reactionaries.

Over the past 40 years our Republic has advanced forcefully along the course of independence indicated by the Juche idea, braving harsh trials in history, and has achieved a great success in revolution and construction.

Under the correct leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, our people have thwarted, at every step, the aggression and ceaseless provocative moves of US imperialism, the ringleader of world imperialism, and safeguarded the dignity of the Republic with honour. In the difficult circumstances of a divided and age-long backward country they promoted the socialist revolution and the building of socialism by displaying fortitude and the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. After their victory in the Fatherland Liberation War our people established an advanced socialist system by completing transformation of production relations in urban and rural communities along socialist lines within a short space of time, carried out the historic task of industrialization and built an excellent independent socialist national economy. The magnificent, creative and constructive struggle for socialism has trained them to be
unconquerable, fully equipped with the Juche idea and united closely under one ideology and purpose, and our country has become a powerful socialist state that is independent, self-sufficient and capable of self-reliant national defence.

Our people are now enjoying fully independent and creative lives in the embrace of the Republic, as masters of the state and society.

In our country all the people exercise their full rights to independence through their active participation in the political life of the state. They are adding lustre to their worthwhile lives through their creative struggle to achieve the high aim set by the Party, helping and leading each other forward, closely united on the basis of revolutionary constancy and comradeship. All the material and cultural needs, such as food, clothing, and housing, are met by the state, which also provides them with secure jobs according to their abilities. They are leading equally happy lives, receiving the benefits of free education, free medical care and so on from the state and society.

Our people take an immense pride in and hold very dear their present life, created with blood and by the sweat of their brow and giving them a feeling of worth as independent people and a true value of living. They never spare their creative energies and talents in building better lives for the generations to come. Indeed, our people are enjoying the true life of socialism, which is free from all social evils; it is a happy and worthwhile life that would be inconceivable in corrupt and ailing capitalist society, where everything is dominated by money and where personal comfort and pleasure are all that is sought.

With the belief and dignity of revolutionaries, we can proudly say that the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea truly is the motherly embrace and the cradle of happiness of our people.

In the historical vortex in which the destiny of the revolution was at stake, our Republic was able to advance triumphantly along the direct road to socialism and communism, because it has always held fast to the standpoint of Juche, thoroughly implemented the principle of continuous revolution, strengthened the motive force of the revolution and steadily enhanced its role. This is precisely a summary of our
experience in the long period of revolution and construction.

The basic stands we have consistently maintained in the revolution and construction are the independent and creative stands.

The masters of the Korean revolution are our people, and the task of the Korean revolution is to build socialism and communism in our country. The only correct way of building socialism and communism successfully to meet our people’s aspirations and desires for independence is for these people themselves to promote the revolution and construction independently and creatively, with the attitude of being responsible for the Korean revolution and in accordance with the specific situation in our country.

The path of our revolution has been rugged and thorny, and we have been confronted with many new problems that could not be solved by conventional means. However, by adhering to independent and creative stands during the whole course of the revolution and construction, we have been able to overcome sycophancy and dogmatism, establish Juche in ideology, realize independence in politics, and build up a powerful independent national economy and self-reliant defence power, capable of providing our people with a happy material and cultural life and of fully guaranteeing the security of the country. Consistent adherence to independent and creative stands is the basic factor that has enabled our Party and the Government of the Republic to guide the revolution and construction to victory without any great problem.

We have been able to make an uninterrupted advance and continual innovations in the revolution and construction over the past years, because we have thoroughly implemented our Party’s idea of continuous revolution.

The people’s cause of independence is a far-reaching historic cause, accomplished over a long period. In order to achieve complete independence for the masses, revolutionary tasks must be carried out at different stages, one after another, and the revolution must be continued steadily until a communist society has been built. Our Party’s idea of continuous revolution represents a thoroughly
revolutionary stand for carrying the revolution to the end without abandoning it halfway; this idea is an expression of its unfailing loyalty to the cause of independence, its sense of full responsibility for the destiny of the masses.

We thoroughly carried out the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution on the principles of meeting the masses’ desire for democracy and of creating the conditions for transition to the socialist revolution. Following the democratic revolution, we embarked on the socialist revolution without delay.

The production relations in our country were successfully transformed along socialist lines despite the weak material and technical foundations of agriculture and a national economy devastated by war. Our experience shows that when the motive force of the revolution is strong, it is fully possible to effect revolutionary change along socialist lines in production relations even though the material and technical foundations are weak, and that the very work of building up these foundations can be expedited by relying on the superiority of the socialist system that has been established.

How to blaze a trail towards communism after the triumph of the socialist revolution and the establishment of the socialist system was a serious problem that was to decide the outcome of our efforts to build socialism and communism.

The victory of the socialist revolution and the establishment of the socialist system represent a historic change in the masses’ struggle to achieve independence, but the revolution does not end there. Socialist society is a transitional society in which hangovers from the old society exist in many spheres of social life. If we are to overcome the transitional character of socialist society and advance to the higher plane of communism, we must continue the revolution in the ideological, technical and cultural spheres. The ideological, technical and cultural revolutions are difficult and complicated undertakings to do away with the remnants of the old society and take the ideological and material fortresses of communism; these are a revolutionary struggle to liquidate capitalism once and for all and provide the
masses with full independence.

Since the establishment of the socialist system our Party and the Government of the Republic have pressed on with the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions and have thus been able to make continuous advance in building socialism and to conduct a successful struggle to capture the two fortresses of communism simultaneously.

In promoting the revolution and construction we have always put our prime efforts into strengthening the motive force of our revolution and enhancing its role.

The revolution is a movement of the masses themselves to attain their independence. Success in the revolution depends on how the masses of the people—the motive force of the revolution—are awakened to ideological consciousness and how they are organized and their creative role is enhanced. The revolution can emerge victorious only when its motive force is strengthened and its role steadily enhanced. This is a valuable revolutionary truth that we learned in the course of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

We have armed all the people fully with the Juche idea and rallied them closely around our Party and the Government of the Republic by regarding it as most important to strengthen their political and ideological unity and solidarity, centring on the Party. Furthermore, we have ensured that everyone leads an organizational and ideological life in a socio-political organization and continues to receive education under a definite education system. This has enabled all the people to become builders of socialism with a high degree of revolutionary spirit and creative ability.

In order to enhance the creative role of the masses of the people in the revolution and construction, the Government of the Republic has consistently adhered to the revolutionary mass line of our Party. We have overcome bureaucratism and subjectivism and given full play to socialist democracy by embodying the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method in state activities. As a result, we have been able to enlist the revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity of the working people to the fullest extent in socialist construction.
We have strengthened the Party and united all the people closely behind it and thus made the motive force of our revolution an unconquerable force, an unbreakable union of the Party and the masses. The value of this success is immeasurable, and this success is the key to all our victories in the revolution and construction.

The 40-year history of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea is, indeed, a history of brilliant victories of an independent people who, under the banner of the Juche idea, have frustrated the challenges and obstructive moves of their enemies at home and abroad and forged ahead along the road of socialism; it is a history of great creative undertakings to build a new socialist life by drawing on the unfathomable strength of the masses, a life vibrant with fruitful activities and a soaring revolutionary spirit.

Now that our country, once in a state of age-long backwardness and eclipse, trampled underfoot by imperialists, has become a prospering and mighty socialist state, we can feel due pride and confidence in and boast of the revolutionary stand and the independent line we have consistently maintained over the past years and the worthwhile struggle and great achievements of the Party and the people, who, united as one, have creatively blazed a historical trail.

Comrades,

Building socialism and communism by modelling the whole society on the Juche idea is the historic mission of the Government of the Republic.

Communist society is an ideal society for mankind, a society in which the masses become the complete masters of nature, society and themselves. In order to build a communist society, it is necessary to lay material and technical foundations for communism, train people into
communist types and develop social relations to meet the requirements of communism. The harnessing of nature, the reforming of people and the transforming of society constitute the three spheres of the masses’ creative activities to achieve their independence. Therefore, these are the strategic tasks that must be carried out simultaneously in building socialism and communism.

The people’s government is a powerful weapon for building socialism and communism, and the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions are the basic ways and means to build socialism and communism. If we are to build a socialist and communist society successfully by transforming nature, people and social relations, as required by the Juche idea, we must strengthen the people’s government, continue to enhance its function and push ahead with the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions. A long time ago we put forward the formula that the people’s government plus the three revolutions make communism.

Strengthening the people’s government and promoting the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions are the general line of our Party in building socialism and communism. Following this line, we must further accelerate the work of transforming nature, people and social relations along communist lines.

We must accelerate the transformation of nature and thus lay solid material and technical foundations for socialism and comprehensively improve the socialist economic life of the masses.

Harnessing nature is an activity to create the material conditions for human existence and social development. Only when nature is harnessed successfully to meet the masses’ desire for independence, can solid material and technical foundations for socialism and communism be laid, so as to make the people’s economic life rich and sound, and both people and society be transformed successfully.

Accelerating socialist economic construction is the most pressing challenge facing us at the moment in displaying the advantages of our socialist system to the full and advancing our revolution to victory.

We must continue to carry out our Party’s strategic line of making
our national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific and to lay solid material and technical foundations for socialism and communism.

The principal task of the Government of the Republic in socialist economic construction is to solve the problems of food, clothing and housing for the people satisfactorily in keeping with the demands of socialism and to free the working people completely from the need to do arduous and difficult labour.

The people’s material life of food, clothing and housing and their working life of creating material wealth constitute the basic content of their economic life, and as socialist construction progresses, this demand grows steadily. Promoting the technical revolution and developing the economy on the principle of satisfactorily solving the problems of food, clothing and housing and improving working conditions in accordance with the ever-growing demands of the people are the most important tasks of the socialist state, which serves the people.

The Third Seven-Year Plan is a magnificent blueprint for socialist construction that will bring about historic change in improving the standard of living of the people and increasing the economic might of the country. When this plan has been fulfilled, not only will a large quantitative increase be made in the output of major manufactured goods, but also another qualitative leap forward will be effected in improving the standard of living of the people and in giving rein to the vitality of the independent national economy.

The key to improving the people’s standard of living at the moment is to develop agriculture; the rapid development of the rural economy alone will ensure the balanced development of industry and agriculture and also provide a good solution to the problem of eliminating the disparity between the urban and rural communities.

The theses on the socialist rural question put forward by our Party represent the only correct programme for industrializing agriculture in order to increase production rapidly and to free farmers from the need to do difficult and backbreaking work. The state must invest more in
the rural economy, follow up the success achieved in irrigation and electrification and, at the same time, speed up mechanization and the extensive use of chemicals, so that in the next few years we can accomplish the tasks of the technical revolution in country areas set in the rural theses. The agricultural sector must fully implement the Juche method of farming, rapidly increasing grain production, and develop animal husbandry, fruit growing, silkworm raising and other branches of the rural economy in a comprehensive way to suit our natural and geographical conditions.

Developing the chemical, light and fishing industries is of great importance in raising the living standards of the people. We must develop the chemical industry, which is fed with our abundant deposits of limestone and anthracite, to produce and supply adequate amounts of raw materials for light industry. We must also modernize light industrial factories and operate them at full capacity in order to mass-produce a variety of good-quality daily necessities and foodstuffs to suit the people’s tastes. While increasing the fish catch by developing the fishing industry, we must develop aquaculture on a large scale, which is highly profitable and promising.

In both town and country many modern houses must be built and a central heating system introduced to provide more modern amenities for the people.

In order to improve the living standards of the people and consolidate material and technical foundations for socialism, we must continue to put great effort into the development of transport and key industries. We must maintain a high and steady rate of production in the extractive, power, metal and machine industries, modernize their technical equipment and increase their production capacities on a large scale. We must create heavy-duty, modern railways, develop road and water transport and improve the organization of transportation, so as to meet the growing demands of the national economy for transport.

Developing economic relations with foreign countries is very important in bringing into full play the great potential of our independent national economy and in raising its technical equipment to
world standards. In the field of external economic affairs we must expand foreign trade actively and develop different forms of economic and technical cooperation and exchange, such as joint venture and collaboration, on an extensive scale.

We must not slacken the enthusiasm displayed in all aspects of the national economy in the historic 200-day campaign and we must continue to develop the vigorous mass innovation drive, so that we attain without fail all the production goals of the Third Seven-Year Plan.

It is imperative to develop science and technology rapidly in order to free the working people from the need to do arduous labour and to speed up socialist construction.

If we are to attain the magnificent targets of socialist economic construction set by the Party, we must first develop science and technology, and if our country is to rank among the advanced countries of the world, we must first raise our science and technology to world standards. We must promote scientific research on the principle of making the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific and, in particular, concentrate on developing electronics, biology and thermal engineering, so that we can use automatic machines, robots and computers widely in production, develop agriculture and fishery on the basis of achievements made in modern biology and find a satisfactory solution to the problem of thermal energy by making effective use of our fuel resources. We must acquire a proper concept of scientific research, consolidate the foundations for scientific and technological progress, eliminate departmentalism in this work, strengthen cooperation between research institutes and production enterprises and promote scientific and technological exchanges with other countries, so that the development of science in our country and the technical transformation of the national economy take a great turn.

Success in building a socialist economy depends largely on how the economy is directed and managed.

A socialist economy is a planned economy, managed by its masters, the masses of the people. It is an intrinsic requirement of a socialist economy that it be developed rapidly in a planned and balanced way in
the common interests of the masses by increasing the creative enthusiasm of the working people and that equitable distribution be made according to the quantity and quality of work done.

For the scientific and rational management of the socialist economy it is necessary to combine political leadership properly with economic and technical guidance in directing and running the economy.

In socialist society the Party is the highest political organization that represents the fundamental interests of the masses of the people; therefore it has the responsibility to direct the socialist economy. The Party must shape its economic policy to accord with the desires and interests of the masses and guide its implementation politically. Under the political leadership of the Party, state and economic bodies must manage the economy in a scientific and technical manner, based on objective economic laws and on accurate economic calculations. The proper combination of political leadership and economic and technical guidance is the way to set correct directions and objectives for economic development, rouse the masses strongly to their implementation and maintain scientific accuracy and effectiveness in production and management activities.

In the guidance and management of the socialist economy it is necessary to combine unified state leadership properly with the creative initiative of every unit.

Unified and systematic state leadership alone makes it possible to run the socialist economy to meet the common desires and interests of the masses and ensure the balanced development of all the economic sectors and units. One unit of economic activity differs from another in its specific situation and has its own special features, so each unit must be encouraged to display creative initiative to suit these factors. This is the way to make wide use of untapped resources and potentials. Increasing creative initiative in each unit on the basis of unified and systematic leadership, given by the socialist state, is the absolutely correct way to give full play to the collectivist superiority of the socialist economy and develop the economy harmoniously and dynamically.

Democracy and unified control must be combined properly in the
guidance and management of the socialist economy.

In a socialist society the working masses are the masters of production and management. Therefore democracy should be introduced fully in economic management, so as to incorporate the desires of the masses and their collective will. At the same time, unified control is needed to coordinate production and management activities. Ensuring unified control based on democracy in economic management is the way to eradicate bureaucraticism and subjectivism, give full rein to the intelligence and creativity of the working masses, get rid of indiscipline and attain efficiency in production and management activities.

In the guidance and management of the socialist economy, political and moral incentives and material incentives must also be properly combined.

People have political integrity as well as a physical life, so they have political and moral requirements as well as material needs. How these two factors are stimulated affects the degree of enthusiasm and creativity displayed by the working people in socialist construction. Since political integrity is more valuable for a social man than physical life, it is reasonable to put the main stress in the management of a socialist economy on political and moral incentives and combine them properly with material incentives.

To properly combine political leadership with economic and technical guidance, unified state leadership with the creative initiative of every unit, democracy with unified control, and political and moral incentives with material incentives is the fundamental principle consistently maintained by our Party in its guidance and management of the socialist economy.

The Juche-oriented economic management system created by our Party is the best system which most fully embodies the fundamental principles of socialist economic management. We must hold fast to the Juche-oriented economic management system, particularly the Taean work system, whose validity and vitality have been proved in practice, and implement this system thoroughly.
We must press ahead with reforming the people, so as to raise the levels of their ideology and creative ability and to develop fully a socialist ideological and cultural life.

The reforming of people is creative work for strengthening the motive force of history by training them to become more powerful beings mentally and physically. The process of social progress is, in essence, the process of man’s development and the level of social progress is, in the long run, determined by the level of man’s development. Though human activity is affected by material and social conditions, it is none other than man himself who creates material wealth and improves social relations. Therefore, the work of reforming people is the most important undertaking and must be given priority in efforts to develop society.

The basic aspect of this undertaking is to train people to be communists with the idea of independence and creative ability by modelling them on a revolutionary and working-class pattern and by making them intellectual.

Since a social man regards independence as his lifeblood, the first and foremost thing in reforming him is to encourage him to acquire a consciousness of independence. Only when people possess this consciousness, can they be integrated into a socio-political organism, united in a comradely way, with a high degree of awareness that they themselves are masters of society. Only then can they have noble ideals and a distinct aim and fight with devotion to realize them.

The Juche idea of our Party is the idea of independence, which fully embodies the masses’ aspirations and desires to live as masters of the world; it is a scientific revolutionary idea that provides the most powerful weapon for the complete liberation of mankind and the development of the world. We must intensify education in the Juche idea under the banner of the ideological revolution and further advance the work of making people revolutionary and working-class.

The fundamental aim of education in the Juche idea is to strengthen the motive force of the revolution, enhance its role and accomplish the revolutionary cause. We must instil in the minds of Party members and
working people unfailing loyalty to the Party and their fellows and an indomitable revolutionary spirit, so that they firmly adhere to the principles of the working class and the revolutionary stand under any circumstances, however difficult, and make continual innovations and uninterrupted advance, with a strong belief and confidence in the cause of socialism and communism. We must also educate them in the spirit of socialist patriotism and proletarian internationalism, so that they carry out the Korean revolution from an independent standpoint and strive to strengthen solidarity with international revolutionary forces and achieve the victory of world revolution.

Since the building of socialism and communism requires a long period of struggle and one revolutionary generation is replaced by another, we must intensify education in our revolutionary traditions, so that Party members and the working people maintain the brilliant revolutionary traditions of our Party and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche down through the generations.

In order to fulfil the responsibility and play the role of masters of the revolution, Party members and the working people must continue to absorb intellectual sustenance and receive ceaseless organizational training. We must further improve and intensify the work of ideological education and the organizational life in keeping with the requirements of the developing situation, so that all the people continue to cultivate a revolutionary spirit and a spirit of organization.

Developing science and education is very important in increasing people’s creative ability. The level of national civilization and development depends, in the final analysis, on how science and education are developed.

An important aspect of the development of educational work at present is to implement the Theses on Socialist Education thoroughly and improve the quality of education radically. In conformity with the current requirement for socialist construction in our country and with the trends in modern science and technology, we must consolidate the material and technical foundations of education, improve the contents and methods of instruction and enhance the role of educational
workers, so that the superiority and viability of universal eleven-year compulsory education can be demonstrated to the full and a further improvement in training our own cadres achieved. We must carry out the Party’s policy on making all society intellectual by developing regular courses of higher education and various forms of higher learning under the study-while-you-work system.

We must develop natural and social sciences on an extensive scale, so as to increase the people’s creative ability to transform nature and society and display fully the superiority of the socialist system.

Art and literature, which are developing and flowering under our Party’s leadership, are making a great contribution to the revolutionary education of the people and to their cultural and emotional life. Many more works of art and literature should be produced, dealing with models of Juche-type people who are loyal to the revolutionary cause of the masses and have genuinely noble human qualities and giving varied and profound descriptions of the heroic struggle and worthwhile lives of our people, who are shaping a bright future, united closely around the Party. Art and literature should be made popular among the masses, so that the masses themselves create and enjoy art and literature.

The independent and creative lives of the people are guaranteed by healthy and strong physiques. Public health services should be developed and physical culture and sports popularized, so that all the people enjoy a long life in good health and make a positive contribution to socialist construction.

While promoting the transformation of society, we should constantly improve social relations to meet the requirements for communism and comprehensively develop socialist political life.

The transformation of society is creative activity to develop social relations in such a way as to enhance the position and role of the masses of the people. Social relations should be improved in accordance with the level of the masses’ consciousness of independence and the degree of their creative ability. Social transformation should be continued steadily along with the transformation of nature and man.
We must speed up the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions and thus eliminate distinctions between the working class and the peasantry and realize a classless society in step with the raising of people’s ideological and cultural levels and with the consolidation of the material and technical foundations of society, and we must continue to strengthen and develop the political, economic and cultural systems until the social relations of communism are established.

The most important task in social transformation is to develop the political system. Enhancing the functions of politics through development of the political system is essential to ensuring efficient political leadership over all aspects of social life and to facilitating the transformation of the economic and cultural systems as well.

In order to strengthen the political system of socialism, it is imperative to establish a strict system by which all state activities are conducted under the leadership of the Party.

The people’s government can work in accordance with the will of the masses only when it functions under the leadership of the Party, the political general staff that represents the desires and interests of the people. It is an intrinsic requirement of the socialist political system to guarantee Party leadership, and steadily intensifying Party leadership over state activities is a basic principle to be maintained in developing the socialist political system.

People’s government organs must take a firm stand as the champion of the people’s interests and the executor of Party policy and conduct all their activities on the basis of Party line and policy. In addition, Party organizations must rid themselves of the practice of taking administrative work upon themselves and provide sound political leadership to the people’s government organs in conformity with the mission and duty of the Party as a leading political organization.

The state system of direction and management must be perfected in keeping with the requirements of the development of socialist society.

The people’s government is the administrator of the country; it is vested with authority to give unified direction to all state and social affairs and is duty-bound to take care of the people’s independent lives
in a responsible manner. Only when the socialist state gives sound unified direction to all aspects of social life, can it give full play to the advantages of a socialist society based on collectivism and press on with the revolution and construction; only when it champions the people’s right to independence and takes care of their lives with a high sense of responsibility, can it discharge its duty as their government.

We must strengthen the people’s government organs and steadily improve their work system and work method, so that the people’s government fulfils its function to safeguard the revolution and administer the society and so that it plays its role as the faithful servant of the people satisfactorily.

Socialist law is an important means for the people’s government to administer political affairs; it is a code of conduct binding on all members of society. State laws and regulations must be enacted and perfected as required by the developing situation, and activities to ensure the observance of socialist law should be intensified. In this way all the state and economic bodies will work strictly in accordance with the law, and all the working people will observe socialist law willingly.

Democracy must be thoroughly implemented in state activities.

Democracy is the fundamental principle of the activities of the socialist state, and applying democracy in state activities is the basic means of developing socialist political life on a full scale. Socialist democracy is the people’s own politics, enabling all members of society to maintain their position as masters of the state and society and play their role as such. The socialist state must formulate its policies by embodying the desires and will of all the people and encourage them to implement them as masters; it must provide everyone with freedom and equality while protecting the common interests of society. The essential superiority of socialist democracy lies in that it guarantees in full both the common interests of society and the freedom and equality of individuals by combining them properly.

People’s government organs must oppose subjectivism and bureaucratism, strengthen the system of collective discussion and rely
entirely on the masses of the people in their work, as required by the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method. In all spheres of state and social life the people’s right to independence must be championed by every means possible and their creative opinions be respected and accepted widely.

Our line for the accomplishment of the cause of socialism and communism is correct and our goal is clear. We have solid material foundations from which we can advance still faster, as well as an advanced socialist system that has struck its roots deep in this land and the indestructible unity and solidarity of the people, who are closely rallied behind the Party with one mind and one purpose. If we advance with vigour in the spirit of Chollima, spurred on by the speed campaign, in response to the Party’s call to all the people to live and struggle like heroes, we shall, without fail, be able to attain a new, high level of socialism and be honoured as victors.

Comrades,

Our people’s struggle to reunify the country is a sacred struggle to link the national ties of blood, which have been cut off by the imperialists, and to achieve the coordinated development and prosperity of our nation.

There is no internal necessity for Koreans, who have lived as a homogeneous nation for thousands of years, to be bisected in our times. Our nation was divided and has not been reunified entirely because of imperialist intervention and obstructive moves. The struggle for national reunification is not an effort to settle any contradiction between classes within our nation or antagonism between systems; it is the cause of the whole nation for accomplishing its liberation and realizing the independence of the Koreans.
In view of the basic character of the reunification question, our Party and the Government of the Republic put forward the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity. The three principles of national reunification are a most reasonable reunification programme; they accord with the Korean people’s desire for independence and their fundamental interests as well as with the trend of the times and the aspirations of people throughout the world.

The realistic method of settling the question of national reunification on the basis of the three principles is to establish a Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo.

The DFRK is the most rational form of a unified state capable of achieving national unity by regarding the common desire and interests of the nation as basic and transcending ideas and systems. National reunification is for the good of the entire Korean nation, not for any specific class or section of the population. Therefore the interests of any particular class or section should be subordinated to the common interests of the nation. In order to reunify the country when different ideas and systems exist in the north and south of Korea, it is necessary to form a unified state by federating the two autonomous governments, leaving the two systems as they are on the principle of coexistence, one refraining from conquering the other or one side refraining from overwhelming the other. Establishing the DFRK is the only correct way of settling the issue of reunification independently and peacefully by the united effort of the whole nation in accordance with the common desire and will of the nation.

In the future, too, we shall make every effort to reunify the country by establishing the DFRK on the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity.

In order to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, we must fight against the US imperialists’ policy of subjugating south Korea as their colony and against their scheme to create “two Koreas”.

The US imperialist policy towards Korea is an important part of its
Asian-Pacific strategy. Seizing south Korea, a zone of strategic importance, the United States is attempting to put this aggressive strategy into effect by forming an axis of the US, Japan and south Korea. Talk about national reunification apart from the struggle against the US imperialists’ scheme to make “two Koreas” and dominate south Korea forever is only deceitful, empty talk.

The south Korean people, in the grip of untold hardships and misfortunes under the US imperialists’ colonial domination and their stooges’ fascist rule, have been fighting resolutely for national sovereignty and democratic freedom. The Popular Uprising in April 1960, the Kwangju Popular Uprising in 1980 and the June Popular Resistance last year were heroic struggles that demonstrated the strong spirit of independence and mettle of the Korean nation, never yielding to any brutal enemy. These were historic events that took the liberation struggle of the south Korean people onto a higher plane. Trained and awakened in the flames of struggle, the south Korean people are directing the spearhead of attack gradually to the US imperialists. Freeing themselves from the worship and fear of the United States, they have raised high the banner of anti-US independence, have overcome spontaneity and dispersiveness of struggle and are developing a more organized mass struggle. This marks an important turning point in the history of their liberation struggle. Today the south Korean people are combining the struggle against fascism and for democracy and the struggle for national reunification closely with the anti-US struggle for independence, thereby advancing along the right path of national liberation.

The youth and students are playing a hardcore and leading role in the south Korean people’s struggle for independence, democracy and national reunification, and their courageous struggle is developing still further with the passage of time, attracting attention from people at home and abroad and receiving encouragement from them.

Under the patronage of the US imperialists the south Korean authorities are now craftily trying to deceive the people in the guise of democracy. However, they are revealing nakedly their true colours as
fascists by resorting to a bloody repression of the just struggle of the young people and students. At a time when the entire nation is fighting to hand down a reunified country to posterity, they are brutally suppressing the innocent students and other young people who have risen up under the banner of reunification. They must be cursed and condemned as a gang of traitors to the nation by all Koreans.

The south Korean people must foil the enemy in his suppression and stratagem and fight firmly united as one, thus discharging their honourable duty in ending the colonial rule of the US imperialists in south Korea and accelerating national reunification.

Removing the danger of war and easing tension in our country is a most important matter and an indispensable condition at the moment for the peaceful reunification of the country.

Having deployed a large number of aggressor troops and nuclear weapons in south Korea, the United States is ceaselessly perpetrating provocative acts of aggression against our Republic. Because of this, in our country military confrontation is continuing and the danger of war increasing. Unless the danger of war is removed and tension eased in our country, an atmosphere of trust cannot be created between the north and the south and the question of national reunification cannot be settled in a peaceful way.

If a guarantee for peace on the Korean peninsula is to be provided, it is necessary to conclude a peace agreement between us and the United States, adopt a nonaggression declaration between the north and the south, compel the US troops and nuclear weapons to move out of south Korea and effect a phased and drastic reduction of the armed forces of north and south.

Peace negotiations between Korea and the United States, which we have already proposed, still remain unrealized, entirely because the United States maintains its stand for permanent domination of south Korea. The United States is afraid that it will no longer have any grounds for occupying south Korea if a peace agreement is concluded and a nonaggression declaration is adopted. The United States must approach the Korea-US negotiations with a sincere attitude to settle the
Korean question substantially in keeping with the trend of the times.

A nation that rules and oppresses another nation cannot keep itself free. The misguided policy of the government of the United States in occupying south Korea and obstructing the reunification of the Korean nation is a great shame to its own people. The US imperialists’ aggressive policy for world supremacy not only imposes a heavy burden upon its people, but also is a source of dire disaster. Honest-minded people of the United States and far-sighted, reasonable politicians must naturally contemplate the grave consequences of the imperialists’ aggressive policy and fight against their aggressive Korea policy and the strategy for world supremacy.

In order to reunify the country independently and peacefully, dialogues and negotiations between the north and the south must be developed.

A north-south dialogue can be successful only when both sides have a sound stand and attitude towards the talks. These talks must be held on the basis of the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity—the reunification programme common to the nation.

The north-south dialogue must always talk of reunification. Reunification stands for the independence of the nation and a love for the country and nation, whereas division stands for dependence on foreign forces and treachery to the country and nation. It is impermissible to use the venue of talks as a means to finalize and legalize division by following the foreign forces against the will of the entire nation aspiring to reunification.

The dialogue between north and south must, first of all, find a solution to the fundamental questions related to reunification. Avoiding discussion of the political and military questions for creating basic preconditions for reunification and giving prominence to matters of secondary importance must be denounced as a scheme to obstruct reunification and keep the country divided by deceiving public opinion at home and abroad and using delaying tactics.

The north-south dialogue must be a wide-ranging dialogue that
represents the desires and will of all the people in a democratic manner. The dialogue for reunification must not be monopolized by the authorities or by any particular party or group. The dialogue must be participated in widely by not only the authorities of the north and the south, but also different parties, social organizations, people from all walks of life and overseas compatriots. They should actively promote different forms of bilateral and multilateral contacts and negotiations.

As far as top-level talks between north and south are concerned, this is a matter we have already proposed and our attitude towards it is clear. The top-level talks must discuss and decide, first of all, adopting a nonaggression declaration between north and south by which neither side is restrained or guaranteed by anyone else as well as founding a federal government of the unified state, leaving the two systems in north and south as they are, or establishing a committee for peaceful reunification and the like for setting up such a government. We welcome any who come to Pyongyang to meet us out of a sincere desire to realize national reunification by solving these problems, but if they wish to argue about keeping the country divided into “two Koreas” forever, without the authority and ability to discuss and decide these fundamental problems independently, they need not come to meet us. The point in question is to ripen conditions for the holding of north-south top-level talks and producing desired results. To this end, the south Korean authorities must abandon their dependence on outside forces and join the entire nation in its campaign for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

Great obstacles and difficulties still lie in the way to national reunification. However, whether or not the country is reunified depends, in the long run, on how our nation, the motive force of reunification, struggles. All the Koreans in the north, south and abroad, rallied rock-firm on the principle of great national unity, must make strenuous efforts to achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country without fail.
Comrades,

Ours is the age of independence when the masses of the people have emerged as the masters of history and are shaping their destiny independently and creatively.

Since the end of the Second World War socialism has developed into a global system, the imperialist colonial system has crumbled and many new independent states have emerged. As a result, the look of the world has changed radically, and a new change has taken place in the struggle of the world’s people to achieve independence. As the world’s forces of independence, opposed to domination and subjugation, are growing in strength, the moves of the imperialists and international reactionaries to check the progress of history are becoming more and more frantic. Today the antagonism and conflicts between the world’s progressive people, who advocate independence, and the international reactionaries, who are opposed to it, constitute the main content of the trend of the times.

Thwarting the manoeuvres of the imperialists and international reactionaries and making the whole world independent are the common fighting tasks of the world’s people at present.

Independence is the lifeblood of not only a man, but also a country and a nation. Furthermore, it is the common lifeblood of humanity. If people’s independence is to be ensured, the independence of their country and their nation should be achieved. If the country and the nation are to be provided with independence, the whole world should be made independent.

Today the struggle for independence is in progress with each country and nation as a basic unit. Therefore it is a sacred right of the people of each country to shape the destiny of their country and nation
independently to suit their own situation. Which ideology and system and which method should be adopted to develop a country is a matter that must be decided entirely by the people of that country.

The destiny of each country and nation is related closely to man’s common destiny, and as human society develops, the correlation among nations becomes closer. The struggle for global independence is, in essence, a struggle to establish an international relationship based on independence and make the international community democratic. Only when the whole world is independent, can the peoples of all countries develop their nations freely and achieve the common prosperity of humanity in a world of freedom and peace, free from domination and subjugation, aggression and war.

The people of each country must, like masters and as members of the international community, fight not only for the independence of their own country and nation, but also for the independence of the world.

The main target of struggle in making the whole world independent is the world’s imperialist forces, particularly US imperialism.

Modern imperialism, which has been realigned into an allied force with US imperialism at its head, is attempting to check the trend of the times towards independence and maintain the old international order of domination and subjugation. Allied politically, economically and militarily, the imperialists are manoeuvring to obstruct the just cause of the peoples of the socialist countries, at the same time oppressing and exploiting the developing nations in a neocolonialist way and jeopardizing world peace by resorting to a policy of aggression and war. The aggressive, predatory nature of imperialism has not changed; it is becoming more devious with the passage of time. Today the imperialists, with a nuclear weapon in one hand and a purse in the other, are spreading decadent bourgeois culture and are threatening and blackmailing the peoples of other countries by force of arms. They are also manoeuvring to subordinate them economically and to break them ideologically and culturally. Without the struggle against imperialism it would be impossible to think of fair international
relations based on independence and of world peace, as well as of the sound ideological and cultural development of mankind.

In order to achieve global independence, it is essential to establish an equitable international order based on independence by opposing the imperialists’ domination and subjugation, to safeguard world peace and security from aggression and war, and to strengthen the friendship and solidarity of peoples the world over by frustrating the imperialists’ schemes for division and alienation.

Independence, peace and friendship are the underlying idea and the active principle we must maintain in our struggle to build an independent, new world.

The Government of the Republic has consistently maintained an independent stand in its foreign relations and made every effort to safeguard world peace and develop friendly and cooperative relations with the peoples of other countries.

Over the past 40 years the international background to our revolution has been extremely complex; and unpredictable stirring events have taken place in succession in the international arena. Even in the vortex of such conflicts and complexities the independent position of our Republic has been promoted, its friendly and cooperative relations with the peace-loving people of the world have been extended, and international solidarity with our revolution has been cemented steadily. This clearly testifies to the validity and vitality of the independent, peace-loving and friendly foreign policy pursued by the Government of the Republic.

In future, too, the Government of the Republic will continue to hold fast to a foreign policy of independence, peace and friendship.

The independent stand is the fundamental stand that the masses of the people must maintain in all their activities for independence. It is also the basis of fair and equal relations between nations and peoples.

In our foreign relations we must thoroughly safeguard the sovereignty of our country and respect that of other countries. We must settle all international problems independently in the interests of our people and in the common interests of the world’s people. We shall not
tolerate any encroachment upon the sovereignty of our country, nor shall we do anything that offends the sovereignty of other countries. We shall use the yardstick of independence in judging and dealing with all matters arising in the international arena and fight against any infringement of and trampling upon the sovereignty of other countries.

The Government of the Republic will always support and encourage the peoples of various countries who are fighting against imperialism, colonialism and racism and for national liberation and independence as well as oppressed people in their struggle to free themselves from every manner of domination and subjugation.

Preventing war and defending peace are vital to saving mankind from a nuclear holocaust and to building an independent, new world. War is an inevitable product of the aggressive policy of the imperialists, whose existence is governed by the law of the jungle, whereas peace is the intrinsic requirement of socialism, which develops on the basis of comradely unity and cooperation. People from all countries who advocate independence are opposed to war and desire peace. Preventing war and defending peace are all the more pressing for our people, who are standing in direct confrontation with the US imperialists, the authors of aggression and war, and who are subjected to the constant threat of nuclear war.

The Government of the Republic will make every effort to check and frustrate imperialist manoeuvres for aggression and war, maintain peace in Korea and defend peace in Asia and other parts of the world.

In preventing war and preserving peace it is important to stop the nuclear arms race, reduce armaments, withdraw aggressive troops from foreign lands, abolish aggressive military bases in foreign countries and create nuclear-free peace zones in many parts of the world. We shall continue to fight resolutely to force the withdrawal of aggressive troops and nuclear weapons from the Korean peninsula and other parts of Asia and create nuclear-free peace zones there and develop a powerful joint struggle to oppose war and preserve peace in unity with the forces of peace throughout the world.

The Government of the Republic supports the constructive
proposals and peace-loving efforts of the socialist countries to ease international tensions, stop the arms race and reduce nuclear armaments. It extends positive support and encouragement to the governments and peoples of various countries in their struggle to create nuclear-free peace zones in many parts of the world.

We strongly condemn the imperialists and their stooges for their manoeuvres of aggression and intervention in Asia, the Middle East, Africa, Latin America and the rest of the world.

Promoting relations of friendship and cooperation between the countries and peoples that advocate independence is an important guarantee for success in the struggle of each country for independence and in the effort to accomplish independence for humankind.

The socialist countries are the most powerful forces in defending universal peace against imperialism and in developing the people’s cause for independence. We must unite and cooperate closely with other socialist countries on the principles of independence and comradely cooperation and strengthen militant solidarity with them in our joint struggle for peace against imperialism.

The nonaligned movement is a just international movement that embodies the requirements of the age of independence and people’s aspirations. The Juche idea, the guiding ideology of the Government of our Republic, is in accordance with the ideas of the nonaligned movement, and the road followed by this movement is the road towards an independent world. As a member country of this movement, our Republic will do its best to unite with all the nonaligned countries and to strengthen and develop this movement further in conformity with its noble ideals.

An important matter for the nonaligned and developing countries in making independence prevail throughout the world is to abolish the old international economic order and establish an equitable new one.

The old international economic order benefits the imperialists in their exploitation and plundering of the developing nations in a neocolonialist manner. As long as the old order remains intact, it is impossible to eliminate the daily growing disparity in wealth between
developed capitalist countries and developing nations and impossible for developing countries to realize economic self-sufficiency and complete political independence.

In order to establish a new, equitable, international economic order, developing countries must promote South-South cooperation on the principle of collective self-reliance. Since the aftereffects of imperialist colonial rule remain and the imperialists’ ideological and cultural infiltration into the developing countries and their obstructive manoeuvres continue, South-South cooperation must be developed not only in the economic sphere but also in the political, ideological and cultural spheres. The Government of the Republic will strive to develop South-South cooperation on the principle of sincerely helping and teaming up with each other, based on the noble desire of the peoples of the developing countries to enjoy a common prosperity free from the imperialists’ domination and plunder.

We should develop friendly, good-neighbourly relations with capitalist countries that respect the sovereignty of our country. The Government of our Republic will also develop economic and technical cooperation and cultural exchange with capitalist countries that do not have diplomatic relations with us on the principles of equality and mutual respect, and will promote friendly relations with the peoples of these countries.

Today independence, peace and friendship are the common aspirations and vital requirements of the world’s people. The imperialists are scheming to check the path towards global independence, but this is an anachronistic dream and only hastens their doom. Although they are blustering about as if they could turn back the clock of history, the crisis of modern imperialism is worsening with each passing day. The more they exploit the peoples of other countries by means of international monopoly capital and the more they intensify their manoeuvres for aggression and war, clinging to the militarization of the economy and the arms race, the stronger the world’s people who aspire to independence and peace will resist and the worse their political and economic crises will become. Unless they
abandon their policy for aggression and plunder, which runs counter to the trend of the times, they will find no way out from their crises. The collapse of imperialism is inevitable.

If all the progressive people throughout the world who advocate independence and love peace fight in solid unity, they will be able to foil the imperialists’ moves for aggression and plunder and bring the cause of global independence to a triumphant conclusion.

The cause of our revolution is just. We are advancing along the road to victory and glory. Let us all fight for the complete victory of socialism, for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country and for global independence, united closely behind the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, holding high the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea.

Long live the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, our glorious motherland!
I am very pleased to meet you again after a long interval and I warmly welcome you to our country.

I express my thanks to Comrade Fidel Castro and Raul Castro for sending me warm greetings.

I am glad to hear that Comrade Fidel Castro, our dear brother and friend, is in good health. I sincerely wish him good health.

I highly appreciate that the Party and the Government of Cuba hold fast to the revolutionary standpoint and socialist principles and I express great respect to the Cuban comrades.

At present it is very important for socialist countries to be unfailingly faithful to the revolutionary standpoint and socialist principles. The imperialists are resorting to vicious machinations to collapse socialism, availing themselves of the disadvantages of some socialist countries that have failed to develop their economy at high speed, and they hope that we shall abandon the revolutionary standpoint and socialist principles. We cannot abandon any of them; we must maintain them consistently under any circumstances.

Of course we may face trials of different kinds in the course of building socialism. However, we must thoroughly maintain the revolutionary standpoint and socialist principles. Only then can we
crush all sorts of obstructive manoeuvres of the imperialists and build socialism with credit.

Several months ago the Secretary General of the Communist Party of the United States visited our country and asked me about the future of socialism.

I told him: A trial is possible in the course of building socialism; however, the banner of socialism will remain unchanged; socialist society is a society for the masses of the people and it is incomparably superior to capitalism; the United States is a corrupt and ailing society, no matter how rich it is; there are many drug addicts, AIDS victims and beggars in the United States; since you are an American, you may know it better than others; some people are rich and live in luxury there, but more people find it difficult to live, because they have no money.

In order to build socialism and communism, we must occupy two fortresses—the ideological and material fortresses. In occupying these two fortresses, we should give priority to the struggle for the ideological fortress, so as to transform the people into communist types. Man decides everything. No matter how much material wealth is produced, socialism and communism cannot be built successfully if the people are ideologically unsound.

Since some socialist countries have not exerted effort to occupy the ideological fortress, they are not building socialism successfully.

Of course, it is difficult to educate and transform all members of society into revolutionaries of a communist type. However, we must achieve this aim if we are to build socialism and communism. We are educating all members of society to work for society and the collective, not for money. When all members of society work for society and the collective, money will be earned.

We hold fast to the revolutionary standpoint and socialist principles in Asia.

I always emphasize the need for our officials to hold fast to the revolutionary principles. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle we experienced many trials. Each time we fought unyieldingly, true to the
revolutionary principle, singing the revolutionary song “Let cowards flinch and traitors sneer; we’ll keep the Red Flag flying here.”

The pressure and obstructive manoeuvres of the imperialists against us are ceaseless at present, but we are invariably maintaining the revolutionary principle and stepping up socialist construction powerfully. True, the imperialists are a little ahead of us economically and technically. However, we are developing our economy and technology by our own efforts without being under obligation to them. It is the masses of the people who develop the economy and technology. We are developing our economy and technology and advancing our revolution by relying on their wisdom and strength.

We stand in direct confrontation with the US imperialists, but we shall advance continually under the banner of revolution and remain unfailingly loyal to socialist principles. I hope you will convey what I said to Comrade Fidel Castro.

The Cuban communists are holding fast to the revolutionary principles and resolutely defending socialism in Latin America.

Comrade Fidel Castro is carrying out a good policy of educating the people in a revolutionary way, saying that they should not build a socialism in which people know only money by using material incentive only.

A few days ago I read a speech he made before the athletes of Cuba. In his speech he said that if the Cuban athletes had taken part in the Seoul Olympic Games and won medals, these would have been dishonourable muddy medals, not gold medals. Athletes from some socialist countries took part in the Seoul Olympic Games and received a few medals. However, these medals are nothing but muddy medals, as Comrade Fidel Castro pointed out correctly. Although they received a few medals, they will not feel honoured, for they have discarded the revolutionary principle and moral obligation.

In an interview with people from a certain country some time ago, I told them about the speech Comrade Fidel Castro had made before the athletes of Cuba.

If we thoroughly maintain the revolutionary stand and socialist
principles, it will inspire strength and courage in the working class and peoples of all countries that are carrying out revolution, and the cause of socialism will inevitably emerge victorious.

The enemy are perpetrating all sorts of manoeuvres to obstruct our cause of national reunification. No matter what they do, our people will continue their dynamic struggle without vacillation to reunify the country.

The south Korean people, too, are now fighting energetically to reunify the country. Their anti-US struggle has mounted higher than ever.

Yesterday a fight took place in Seoul between citizens and US soldiers. The fight began when three drunken US soldiers stopped a passing taxi and, for no reason, committed an outrage by kicking the driver. When the driver protested, a mob of soldiers assaulted him. Then 200 citizens who had witnessed the violence of the American soldiers went to the driver’s rescue, and over 40 American soldiers joined in the fight. So 200 Seoul citizens fought against 40 soldiers. In former days Seoul citizens would never have dared fight against Americans like this. Among the south Korean people there was a strong tendency to worship and fear Americans. In other words, they feared and worshipped them, considering them as “liberators” and “patrons”. However, they are now standing up against the United States instead of fearing and worshipping her; they do not regard her as “liberator” and “patron”, but denounce her as aggressor and plunderer. At present the tendency to worship and fear Americans is disappearing from south Korea. It is a very good trend. The problem that has become chronic among the south Korean people for the last 40 years is now reaching a solution.

The US imperialists and the south Korean authorities, thrown into confusion by the daily increasing anti-US, anti-government struggle of the people, are strengthening their fascist oppression of the people. However, no repressive measures can check the revolutionary advance of the south Korean people, which becomes more powerful.

Some time ago the “president” of south Korea said that he would
visit Pyongyang to meet me.

If he comes to us with a constructive proposal for the solution of the national reunification question, I shall meet him. He should come to Pyongyang with a clear-cut reunification policy. If he comes empty-handed, it will be useless. If he wants to visit Pyongyang only to have a bowl of noodles like a tourist, he need not come.

A few days ago we made a statement in the name of the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of Korea in reply to the south Korean “president’s” proposal to visit Pyongyang. In the statement the committee pointed out: His proposal to visit Pyongyang for a summit talk deserves our welcome; the summit talk should adopt a nonaggression declaration and discuss and find a solution to the problem of establishing a federal government of a unified state or forming a committee for peaceful reunification for its realization; to this end good conditions and a favourable atmosphere should be created first, for the summit talk to produce good results.

Acute confrontation continues between north and south and an atmosphere of reconciliation and trust has not been created. The south Korean authorities are launching ceaseless large-scale military exercises against us, continually reinforcing military forces and aggravating the situation. If the south Korean “president” wants to have a talk with us, he should abandon the knife he is hiding and stop any moves against us. It is totally useless to have a talk with a man who carries a hidden knife.

In order to create good conditions and a favourable atmosphere for the summit talks, we should hold high-level political and military talks between north and south, discussing and finding a solution to the problem of relaxing tension between north and south; in other words, military affairs, such as stopping large-scale military exercises, reducing the troop strength of north and south and withdrawing the US army and nuclear weapons from south Korea. In addition, we should conclude as soon as possible the contacts between parliamentary members of both sides, now in session in Panmunjom, and convene a joint parliamentary conference of the north and south to settle the
nonaggression question, thereby making a breakthrough in easing the tension.

To create a favourable atmosphere for the summit talks, the “National Security Law” must be abolished in south Korea. The “National Security Law” is an anti-popular, anti-reunification and anti-communist fascist law. Using this law, the south Korean authorities are cruelly suppressing the struggle of the people who desire reunification. They are also applying this law to punish the youth and students who are studying and disseminating our Juche idea. As long as the “National Security Law” remains as now, the south Korean ruler cannot come to Pyongyang to meet us, still less to hold a summit talk. The “National Security Law” stipulates that the northern part of Korea is an “anti-national community” and that any south Koreans who meet their counterparts in the north or have relations with them shall be severely punished. Therefore, it is natural that the south Korean “president”, too, should be arrested, according to the “National Security Law”, if he visits Pyongyang to meet us.

When the south Korean ruler said that he would visit Pyongyang and meet me, his aim was not to find a solution to the national reunification problem, but to deceive the world’s people. He is making fools out of people, claiming to want dialogue and other things, as if he were interested in national reunification. Some people in certain socialist countries, too, are deceived by his false propaganda.

The enemy is tenaciously resorting to “cross recognition” tactics in order to establish “two Koreas”. The “cross recognition” tactics advanced by the enemy are a crafty plot to keep our country divided forever. If our country is kept divided into two, south Korea will remain a colony of the United States forever. We can never tolerate south Korea as an eternal colony of the United States.

Of course, our people’s struggle for national reunification is difficult and arduous, and it may assume a protracted character. However, the US army cannot remain long in south Korea. The US troops are 40,000 strong in south Korea, where the population is over 40 million. The south Korean people want national reunification and
they are standing up against the US troops. The 40,000-strong US troops cannot win over 40 million south Koreans. Since not just the south Korean people, but all the Korean people are fighting to achieve national reunification, victory is in store for us and the cause of national reunification will be achieved without fail.

Your current visit to our country will help strengthen and develop friendly relations between the peoples of our two countries. I hope that Cuban revolutionaries like you will pay frequent visits to our country.

I firmly believe that our two countries will hold fast to the revolutionary stand and socialist principles and constantly fight hand in hand to defend socialism.

I hope that on returning home, you will convey my best regards to Comrades Fidel Castro and Raul Castro and other leading officials of your country. I also hope you will convey the revolutionary greetings of our people to the Cuban people.
A LETTER OF CONGRATULATIONS
TO THE INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE
ON DENUCLEARIZATION OF THE KOREAN
PENINSULA, PEACE AND SECURITY
IN THE ASIAN-PACIFIC REGION

October 18, 1988

I would like to offer warm congratulations to the International Conference on Denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula, Peace and Security in the Asian-Pacific Region being held in Pyongyang, the capital of our country, under the sponsorship of the World Peace Council, and send warm greetings to the delegates to the conference and all the guests from various countries.

Your present meeting in Pyongyang is attracting great attention not only from the Korean people but also the peace-loving people of Asia and the rest of the world because it is discussing questions awaiting urgent solutions in the international political field at the moment.

Mankind has now ushered in a new epoch on the way to building a peaceful and prosperous new world. As a result of the stubborn struggle and strenuous efforts of the peace forces throughout the world a phase of detente is gradually opening in international relations, in which the atmosphere of confrontation and cold war has prevailed for a long time. This enables people to have a hope for a peaceful future.

The imperialist reactionary forces, however, are accelerating the militarization of their economies and arms race, and intensifying their manoeuvres of aggression and plunder in opposition to the socialist
countries and in order to oppress and exploit the peoples of the developing countries; they still cling to power politics against the trend of times which is towards the common prosperity of humanity. In particular, the United States has deployed large nuclear forces in the Asian-Pacific region and is threatening and blackmailing the people militarily with a wild ambition to establish its sphere of domination and control over this region. This has resulted in a complex situation in this region; the sovereignty of countries and nations is being encroached upon, and the peace and security of the world are being jeopardized.

Improving the situation in the Asian-Pacific region is now a pressing question in speeding up the process of easing the international situation as a whole and in guaranteeing durable world peace. Relaxing the tension and ensuring peace and security on the Korean peninsula constitute a major link in the whole chain of the struggle to improve the situation in the Asian-Pacific region.

At present, the United States is intensifying its moves to create “two Koreas” in an attempt to keep south Korea as its permanent colony and military base in accordance with its aggressive Asian-Pacific strategy on the one hand, and, on the other, shipping nuclear weapons and various other means of modern warfare in large quantities into south Korea, and staging the “Team Spirit” joint military manoeuvres and other large-scale war exercises frequently in and around the south of Korea. Even now, when the Olympic Games are over, the United States is continuing noisy provocative military moves by retaining the aircraft-carrier strike forces which it has massed on the seas adjoining our country under the pretext of “providing Olympic security”.

Because of the United States’ manoeuvres for aggression and war tension has been created in our country, where war can break out at any minute.

If a war breaks out in Korea when a large number of nuclear weapons now exist in south Korea, it can spread beyond the bounds of the Korean peninsula to the Asian-Pacific region and also worldwide. If this happens, hundreds of millions of people the world over will not
be able to escape a nuclear holocaust.

In order to remove the danger of a nuclear war and guarantee peace in Korea, it is essential to make the US troops and nuclear weapons withdraw from south Korea, denuclearize the Korean peninsula and settle the question of Korea’s reunification peacefully.

With the sense of noble mission to shape the destiny of our nation and in the cause of world peace, the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea have made reasonable proposals to ease the tension on the Korean peninsula and settle the question of Korea’s reunification peacefully, and have been making every sincere effort to put them into practice.

We proposed the founding of the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo, neutral and non-aligned, as a realistic way to solve the question of the country’s reunification on the basis of the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity. In recent years alone we have advanced a number of peace proposals such as the proposal for concluding a peace agreement between the DPRK and the United States and adopting a nonaggression declaration between the north and the south, the proposal for converting the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free, peace zone, the proposal for holding multinational disarmament talks and the proposal for convening the north-south joint parliamentary meeting. However, none of our fair and just proposals has been realized due to the aggressive moves and attitude of the United States and the south Korean authorities to keep our country divided.

Being conscious that they cannot meet their desire for peace, democracy and social reform so long as US imperialist domination and intervention continues, the south Korean students, youths and broad sections of the population are now bravely fighting for anti-US independence, anti-fascist democracy and national reunification.

The United States has no reason or pretext for keeping its large aggressor forces in south Korea, still less justification for shipping into south Korea nuclear weapons and making it a nuclear base in confrontation with the DPRK, a non-nuclear state.
If the nuclear weapons deployed in south Korea are aimed at other socialist countries the United States must naturally withdraw them from south Korea now that a Soviet-US agreement on partial nuclear disarmament has been signed.

The question of making the US troops and nuclear weapons leave south Korea and guaranteeing peace on the Korean peninsula can be successfully solved when all the Korean people and the broad peace forces throughout the world fight in concert.

Availing myself of this opportunity, I extend my deep thanks to the governments and peace-loving peoples of many countries for their strong support and encouragement for the just struggle of our people for peace in Korea and her peaceful reunification.

I believe that the current Pyongyang international conference will be an important occasion for contributing to building up stronger world opinion in favour of the peaceful settlement of the Korean question and to strengthening the militant solidarity of the world peace forces in their efforts to improve the situation on the Korean peninsula and in the whole of the Asian-Pacific region and to carry out the common cause of ensuring peace and security in this region.

The struggle to prevent war and safeguard peace is a noble cause for saving mankind from a nuclear holocaust and building an independent and peaceful new world. Modern imperialism, which goes against the trend of historical progress, is the common enemy of the world’s people who champion peace and independence.

The present era demands that the progressive people and all the other peace forces throughout the world rise, in unbreakable unity and more resolutely, in the joint struggle against the imperialist war forces.

If the progressive people and the broad peace forces throughout the world form strong international ties and launch a powerful anti-war, anti-nuclear peace struggle everywhere under the banner of independence against imperialism, they will be able to block the imperialist policy of aggression and war, and safeguard world peace and security.

It is important in the struggle for peace at the moment to halt arms
race, realize disarmament, withdraw aggressive troops and military bases from other countries and establish nuclear-free, peace zones in many parts of the world.

We give active support to the constructive initiatives and efforts of the socialist and other peace-loving countries for easing international tension, preventing a nuclear war and effecting disarmament, and express our firm solidarity with the governments and peoples of all countries in their struggle to create nuclear-free, peace zones in many regions of the world.

Our people will, in the future too, fight stoutly to make aggressive troops and nuclear weapons withdraw from the Korean peninsula and the Asian-Pacific region, and establish nuclear-free, peace zones in this part of the world. We will do our best to build an independent and peaceful new world, free from nuclear weapons, aggression and war, in solid unity with the peoples of the socialist countries and non-aligned nations and all the peace-loving people throughout the world, cherishing the ideals of independence, peace and friendship.

I hope that the International Conference on Denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula, Peace and Security in the Asian-Pacific Region will proceed successfully and achieve excellent results in keeping with the expectations and desires of our people and the peace-loving people the world over, thanks to the joint efforts of you who are devoting yourselves to the peace cause of mankind.
Question: Mr. President, very little is known in Western countries about your heroic struggle during the resistance war against the Japanese to liberate the Korean people from the yoke of colonialism.

During my visit to the sites of your secret guerrilla camps, I saw the slogans you and your comrades-in-arms had inscribed on the trees in order to call upon your people to fight for the future of a free and unified country.

Mr. President, would you please tell me about the strongest impression you still have of the struggle to realize the Korean people’s hopes, as expressed by the slogans?

Answer: I am grateful to you for your visit to our country and for the trouble you have taken to make the long journey to Mt. Paektu on a trip to the old battlefields of the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

During the darkest years of Japanese imperialist colonial rule we waged an armed struggle for many years against the Japanese, centring on Mt. Paektu. The site and relics of the Paektusan Secret Camp which you have visited on this occasion are evidence of the circumstances and conditions in which the anti-Japanese guerrillas lived and fought, and the slogans inscribed on the trees vividly reflect their firm determination to fight for national liberation, as
well as their noble ideas and feelings.

The anti-Japanese armed struggle we waged was truly arduous.

Our enemy, the Japanese imperialist aggressor army, was brutal and formidable. We had to obtain weapons and provisions by our own efforts because there was neither a home front nor any foreign aid to support us.

The anti-Japanese guerrillas believed in and relied on the people and no one else. Under the slogan, “As fish cannot live without water, so guerrillas cannot live without the people,” we always relied on the people and overcame all the trials and difficulties with their strong support and aid.

The anti-Japanese guerrillas fought unyieldingly, looking forward to the future in the liberated country with optimism and a firm belief in victory, no matter how arduous the revolutionary struggle was. They were able to fight to the end without the slightest vacillation even in those difficult conditions because they had an unshakable belief in victory and an unbreakable revolutionary spirit.

Their firm faith in the triumph of the revolution, their indomitable revolutionary spirit and their inseparable ties with the masses of the people were the source of the strength of the anti-Japanese guerrillas and the decisive factor of our victory in the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

Whenever I recall the years of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, I reaffirm my belief that if we fight with a high revolutionary spirit and stamina, relying on the masses of the people as we did in those years, there will be no difficulty that we cannot overcome and nothing will be impossible for us.

**Question:** Mr. President, the economy of your country has developed under very difficult conditions.

Economic progress has been made in your country in the circumstances of a cold war that followed a hot war, and under the pressure of constant tension created by the enemy, who is opposed to the reunification of Korea.

Mr. President, would you please tell me how this success has been achieved?
**Answer:** As you rightly pointed out, our country’s economy has developed under very difficult conditions.

The three-year-long war which was unleashed by the US imperialists devastated our economy and reduced our towns and villages to ashes. To make matters worse, the US imperialists and their stooges resorted to ceaseless aggressive and obstructive manoeuvres even in the postwar years. This made our struggle for socialist construction very difficult from the start and imposed an untold, heavy burden on our people.

By displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, however, our people courageously overcame the hardships standing in their way and successfully built a solid, independent national economy. They turned the country, once a colonial agricultural land far behind modern civilization, into a socialist industrial state with modern industry and developed agriculture.

Building a socialist and communist society requires the capture of the ideological and material fortresses of communism. The technical revolution must be carried out energetically in order to take the material fortress of communism, and the ideological and cultural revolutions must be accelerated in order to seize its ideological fortress. The ideological, technical and cultural revolutions represent the fundamental way of taking these two fortresses together. In our efforts to conquer these fortresses we have firmly adhered to the principle of giving priority to the ideological fortress. Only in this way will we succeed in capturing the material fortress as well.

In the difficult situation in which the country is divided and the imperialists’ obstructive moves are ceaseless, we have been able to build socialism with success because we have thoroughly implemented the Juche idea which requires that everything be made to serve the masses of the people and that all problems be solved by relying on their strength.

The essential superiority of the socialist society we have built is that it is a true people’s society which fulfils their desire for independence and serves them.
In our country everyone exercises his or her own political right to independence on an equal footing and is provided with all his or her material needs for food, clothing and housing, as well as his or her cultural needs, by the state, working in a secure job according to his or her aptitude and ability, and leading an equally happy life. All our people receive free education and free medical care. There is neither unemployment, a single beggar nor a neglected orphan in our country. The people need have no worries about money, and live without even knowing the word *tax*. Our country has no social evils giving people pain. Of course, there is no limit to enhancing the material and cultural standards of the people. We are striving to find better solutions to the people’s problems of food, clothing and housing to meet their ever-growing socialist demands.

In our country the working people work for the good of their society and for themselves, and the results of their labour are used entirely for the prosperity of the community and for the promotion of their own well-being. In our society, where individual and social interests are in complete harmony, the principle of “One for all and all for one” is the overwhelming tone of life. Our people display complete devotion and creativity in socialist construction, working with an attitude befitting masters because they truly feel that our socialist society is a society that is really for them. This is the major secret of the rapid advance we have made in socialist construction in spite of all the difficulties.

The most precious asset in the revolution and construction is the strength of the masses of the people. Success in socialist construction depends on how we organize and mobilize the creative power of the masses. There is no more active and revolutionary method than to solve all problems by believing in the masses and mobilizing their strength and wisdom.

We have armed all the people fully with the Juche idea and united them solidly around the Party. By implementing the mass line we have mobilized their complete revolutionary enthusiasm and creative zeal in socialist construction. This is another secret of our great success in socialist construction.
Question: Mr. President, the reunification of the Korean peninsula, which you desire, has not yet been realized.

What are you going to do to facilitate the realization of your proposal to hasten the development of peace in Korea, and to establish a federal state in keeping with the worldwide trend towards detente?

Answer: The general international situation today is tending towards detente. If international detente comes and leads to peace and the relaxation of tension on the Korean peninsula, there will be no more excuse for US troops, the obstacle to national reunification, to remain in south Korea. We consider that such a situation will favour our people’s cause of national reunification.

In order to settle the question of national reunification by peaceful means in keeping with the present international trend towards detente and in accordance with our people’s desire for independence, we reaffirmed our policy for reunifying the country by establishing the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo in my report to the meeting to celebrate the 40th anniversary of the Republic.

The proposal to establish the DFRK means, in view of the two different ideologies and systems existing in the north and the south of our country, forming a unified state by federating the two autonomous governments, leaving the two systems as they are on the principle of coexistence, each refraining from trying to conquer or overwhelm the other.

Reunifying the country by founding the DFRK requires that the necessary conditions for it be furnished. It is of paramount importance to remove the danger of war and ease the tension on the Korean peninsula.

Having deployed more than 40,000 troops of its own and over 1,000 nuclear weapons in south Korea, the United States is ceaselessly perpetrating aggressive, provocative acts against our Republic. Because of this, military confrontation is continuing and the constant danger of war is present in our country. Unless the danger of war is removed and tension eased in our country, it will be impossible to
create an atmosphere of trust between the north and the south and settle the question of national reunification in a peaceful way.

In order to dispel the danger of war on the Korean peninsula and create an atmosphere of trust between the north and the south, it is necessary for us and the United States to sign a peace treaty, for the north and the south to adopt a nonaggression declaration and for the north and the south to hold high-level political and military talks and settle the question of effecting a phased and drastic reduction of the armed forces of the north and the south. In step with the phased reduction of the armed forces of the north and the south, the US forces in south Korea should be reduced stage by stage. When the armed strength of the north and the south has been reduced to less than 100,000 troops each, the United States must completely withdraw its armed forces, including nuclear weapons, from south Korea and dismantle its military bases there.

Developing dialogue and negotiations between the north and the south is an important way to relax the tension on the Korean peninsula, achieve national reconciliation and unity and reunify the country independently and peacefully.

We are making consistent efforts to develop dialogue and negotiations between the north and the south on the basis of the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity—the reunification programme for the whole nation.

To this end, it is necessary for the anti-people, anti-communist “National Security Law” to be repealed and for society to become democratic in south Korea so as to ensure that the people can work freely for national reunification. As long as the “National Security Law” which is hostile to the other party to the negotiations remains intact and as long as a bloody atmosphere of mercilessly suppressing the patriotic people who demand national reunification is maintained, it will be impossible to conduct dialogue for reunification smoothly, improve relations between the north and the south and reunify the nation.

Today the trend towards independent and peaceful national
reunification is mounting rapidly both in the north and the south of our
country, and the voices of the world’s peace-loving people calling for
peace in Korea and her peaceful reunification are ringing out louder
and louder with each passing day.

In order to put the proposal for founding the Democratic Federal
Republic of Koryo into effect, our people will fight on resolutely to
check the manoeuvres of those who are trying to create “two Koreas”
and keep Korea divided for ever.

**Question:** Mr. President, what are the conditions under which you
consider you could hold negotiations with the next US President?

**Answer:** The US divided the homogeneous Korean nation and has
imposed the suffering of national division on our people for more than
40 years. It is none other than the US that is exacerbating tension and
jeopardizing peace on the Korean peninsula and obstructing Korea’s
reunification by pursuing the “two Koreas” policy.

The US policy towards Korea of violating the sovereignty of the
Korean nation goes against the trend of the present age, which is
moving towards independence. We think that it is high time for the US
Government to re-examine its unreasonable Korea policy.

It is the consistent stand of the Government of our Republic to
promote good-neighbourly relations with all the countries which
respect our nation’s sovereignty and are friendly towards our country,
irrespective of their social systems.

If the US abandons its unjust policy of obstructing our people’s
cause of reunification, this will herald a new phase in the relations
between our country and the US.

In keeping with the trend towards detente and reconciliation, the
Government of the United States must adopt practical measures to
ease the tension on the Korean peninsula. If the US Government
adopts such measures and shows a sincere attitude towards settling
the Korean question, negotiations can be held between me and the US
President.
**Question:** Mr. President, as the only head of state who has been in office for two generations since World War II, you have made a great contribution to the unity and solidarity of the international communist movement.

Could you please tell me about the problems facing the international communist movement at the moment and your opinions on them?

**Answer:** Since World War II the international communist movement has made remarkable progress and socialism has expanded to become a worldwide system. In vast areas of the world the socialist revolution has triumphed and the colonial system has collapsed, with the result that imperialism has been struck a telling blow.

Nevertheless, the old and reactionary are not willing to leave the stage of history of their own accord, and the process by which the new emerges victorious is by no means smooth. International imperialism, which regrouped as an allied force following World War II, has made desperate moves against the socialist countries and the international communist movement with a view to regaining its old position, and has intensified its domination and plunder of the newly independent nations by resorting to cunning neocolonialist methods.

The imperialists find themselves in serious political and economic crises and are working hand in glove with each other, concentrating their attacks on the socialist countries. They are trying to gain military domination over the socialist countries and, at the same time, are working hard to obstruct the economic and technical development of these countries, and to disorganize them ideologically and culturally.

Under these circumstances, the most important problem now facing the international communist movement is that the socialist countries and all Communist and Workers’ Parties should adhere to a revolutionary position and to the principles of socialism and communism, bring the advantages of the socialist system fully into play by consolidating and developing this system, and strengthen their international unity and solidarity still further.

It is an inexorable law of historical development that human society goes over from capitalism to socialism. Socialism is a society which
conforms to the intrinsic requirement of man to rid himself of exploitation and oppression and live independently; it is the best society which fully accords with the ideal of universal peace and the common aspirations of mankind. The more the imperialists intensify their offensive against socialism, the more thoroughly the socialist countries should implement the principles of socialism and communism by firmly maintaining their revolutionary stand and the greater efforts they must make to give full play to the superiority and vitality of the socialist system.

Above all else, these countries must step up the socialist technical revolution and cultural revolution which serve the people so as to overwhelm imperialism in the field of science and technology. They must also intensify the ideological revolution so as to prevent ideological and cultural infiltration by imperialism, and ensure that all the working people take pride and have confidence in socialism and fight on staunchly for the victory of the cause of socialism and communism.

The specific situation in one country differs from that in another. Therefore, the Communist and Workers’ Parties must maintain an independent stand and promote the revolution and construction by creatively applying revolutionary theories and methods to conform with the situation in their own countries.

The imperialists are now attempting to undermine the unity of the international communist movement, and disrupt and break up the anti-imperialist peace forces of the world. In this situation, all the progressive forces should counter the imperialist forces with the strategy of unity.

Our Party has invariably striven to strengthen the unity and cohesion of the international communist movement. In the future, too, we will make every possible effort to strengthen the international solidarity of the revolution by continuing to uphold the banner of independence against imperialism and the banner of socialism and communism; we will press on with socialist construction and firmly defend peace and the eastern outpost of socialism, and thus faithfully carry out both the national and international revolutionary duties devolving on us.
ON CORRECTLY DEFINING THE UNITS FOR WHICH PLANNING IS TO BE UNDERTAKEN BY STATE PLANNING ORGANIZATIONS

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Senior Officials in Charge of the Planning Sector

November 1, 1988

I went over the proposed measures drafted by the Economic Policy Commission of the Central People’s Committee, the measures to improve planning work towards enhancing provincial initiative under the unified direction of the state. I shall refer to some measures to improve planning work.

Planning officials must not think that there is anything wrong or a problem with our planning system and methods because we have to improve planning work. Today we are discussing how we should divide the industrial units for which planning is undertaken by state planning organizations and which organizations should assume the responsibility for planning and the direction of production; we are not discussing reforming or restructuring the planning system and methods as is done in some other countries. The planning system and methods established by our Party and all its planning policies are valid. There is nothing wrong with them, so there is no need to restructure them. All that we need to do is to manage the socialist economy, do planning work and direct production properly as required by the Taean work system we have established.

The question of planning units, which we are now discussing, was
clarified a long time ago.

At that time I emphasized the need to divide the industrial establishments into planning units of the State Planning Commission and of the regional planning commissions. When organizing integrated enterprises in 1985, I established a well-regulated system under which the State Planning Commission took charge of planning only for major integrated enterprises and the regional planning commissions undertook planning for the other integrated enterprises.

In subsequent years, however, the number of integrated enterprises in the charge of the State Planning Commission increased greatly for various reasons, and, by contrast, those in the charge of regional planning commissions decreased in number. In consequence, the State Planning Commission has become so overburdened that it is not functioning as it should and its planning work is unsatisfactory.

The shortcomings now being revealed in economic work are due mainly to the failure of the State Planning Commission to perform the function of an economic operations bureau properly.

Some officials of the State Planning Commission ascribe the difficulty in the planning, organizing and directing of production to the swelling of the economy, incomparably larger than in the past, and to the increase in the number of industrial establishments for which they have to provide planning. They are mistaken. No matter how large the economy has grown, and no matter how many units they have to plan for, the officials would be perfectly able to cope with planning and production direction successfully if they organized work meticulously with a high sense of responsibility. As matters now stand, however, the officials of the State Planning Commission are preoccupied with computing their planning figures, paying little attention to organizing economic activities and production direction, in the belief that all they have to do is to draft plans and send them to the units concerned.

If the State Planning Commission had organized economic operations and directed production in a responsible manner, it could have prevented hitches in production at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex and February 8 Vinalon Complex because of the short supply
of coal and electric power.

The problem of coal alone shows that the State Planning Commission is not working in a responsible manner. This morning my chief secretary informed me of a stockpile of 72,000 tons of coal for export at Nampho Port and suggested shipping it to South Hamgyong Province and bringing fertilizer from there. This indicates that both the Premier and the State Planning Commission officials are ignorant of the large amount of export coal stockpiled at Nampho Port. If normal procedure had been followed in dealing with the situation, the officials of the State Planning Commission would have reported the amount of export coal at Nampho Port to the Premier, calling his attention to the hitches in the production of fertilizer and vinalon at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex and the February 8 Vinalon Complex due to the coal shortage and suggesting that coal produced from now on be shipped to the east coast area, and then would have organized economic work and directed production with the approval of the Premier. It is said that there are heaps of imported goods at Nampho Port.

The Commission of the Extractive Industries, the Ministries of Foreign Trade and Railways, and the Nampho City Party Committee are not working as befits masters. The commission and the ministries should have expressed their opinions that there was too much export coal at Nampho Port, suggesting therefore that shipment of export coal to Nampho Port be suspended and diverted elsewhere. Nevertheless, the Ministry of Foreign Trade and the Commission of the Extractive Industries continue to send coal to Nampho Port, allegedly to carry out their export plan, without minding whether coal was stockpiled or not. The Ministry of Railways does not care at all whether coal is overstocked or not at the port, because its duty is to carry coal to the port, and the Nampho City Party Committee pays no heed to the matter, because it is the concern of the commission and ministries.

Provincial Party committees are now paying little attention to production at centrally-run industrial enterprises and other units planned by the State Planning Commission, though they are concerned
about local economic development and the people’s living in their provinces. Formerly, the chief secretaries of provincial Party committees and the chairmen of provincial people’s committees directed both the centrally-run enterprises and local industries. With the help of the economic departments of the provincial Party committees they ensured the development of both industries. The chief secretary of the Party Committee of South Hamgyong Province, for instance, assumed full responsibility for production and construction undertaken by centrally-run and local industries in his province. When there was a hitch in production, he used to bring up the problem at a meeting of the provincial Party committee and take necessary measures. In those days the chairman of a provincial people’s committee was held responsible for inefficient production at centrally-run industrial enterprises in his province, although he was in charge of education, culture, health service and the people’s living in the province. He had to be held responsible, because if the centrally-run factories had suspended operation, it would have been impossible to pay the workers. In recent years, however, officials have not been working like masters, demarcating the limits of their responsibilities. Although there is a stockpile of 72,000 tons of export coal, the senior officials of Nampho have not even proposed a measure to dispose of it.

Since the State Planning Commission, dealing with too many enterprises, is unable to plan and organize economic operations and direct production as it should, I intend to slash the number of industrial units for which the State Planning Commission has to provide planning, so that it deals with only major integrated enterprises. Taking these enterprises in hand means controlling nearly all the economic sectors in our country. So if the State Planning Commission copes successfully with planning for these enterprises, organizes their economic operations properly and directs their production efficiently, overall economic work will improve, and all the problems will be resolved smoothly. If it deals only with the major integrated enterprises as its planning units, the State Planning Commission will get to know
how the plan is being implemented at each of these units, and if not, why not, and take necessary measures before it is too late.

If the major integrated enterprises are defined as the planning units of the State Planning Commission, it will facilitate planning, organizing and directing of production. Then the senior officials of the State Planning Commission will be able to inspect all these enterprises in a month’s time by visiting a few of them in a single day.

The State Planning Commission must reexamine the units for which it plans, in line with the direction I gave it previously, and deal with only major integrated enterprises for its planning work.

When deciding the planning units of the State Planning Commission, you must include not only large integrated enterprises in the scheme, but also single factories of national importance, though not integrated enterprises. For example, the State Planning Commission will have to take in hand such important factories as the Nampho Electrode Factory and plan and organize their economic operations and direct their production to keep steady production. If the electrode factory fails to produce electrodes, not only the Chollima Steel Complex but the electric furnaces of other factories and enterprises will be affected.

When the State Planning Commission directly plans for major integrated enterprises, a problem arises as to where the plans for the other integrated enterprises and such general bureaus or management bureaus in various sectors as the general bureaus or management bureaus of fishery in the provinces are to be made.

I went over the measures proposed by the Economic Policy Commission of the Central People’s Committee on this occasion twice, but the document stated nothing clearly about who is to do planning for the provincial management bureaus of prospecting, the provincial management bureaus of the mining industry, the provincial general bureaus or management bureaus of forestry, the provincial general bureaus or management bureaus of fishery, the provincial management bureaus of small and medium-size coal mines and similar units.

At present, planning for these integrated enterprises is all done by
the State Planning Commission. Under these conditions it will be impossible for the planning commission to make plans to suit the actual situation, organize economic operations and direct production properly. It has been suggested that planning for the integrated enterprises outside the responsibility of the State Planning Commission and for the general bureaus or management bureaus of centrally-run economic sectors located in different provinces be undertaken by the state commissions and ministries concerned, but this will not be effective at all. It would be advisable to let the regional planning commissions make the plans for these units under the guidance of the provincial Party committees concerned.

The State Planning Commission is said to be planning production for the general bureaus or management bureaus of forestry, but it is not paying attention to the factories and other enterprises under the jurisdiction of these general bureaus or management bureaus, so work is not going as it should. Under the provincial general bureaus of forestry, there are lumber stations, forestry machine factories and many other factories and enterprises; the provincial general bureaus of fishery have many fishery stations, factories and other enterprises. These factories and enterprises can be likened to the legs of a crab. If any of the five pairs of legs does not function, the crab cannot crawl normally. Likewise, if any of the factories and other enterprises under a general bureau or a management bureau fails to perform its role, the bureau cannot operate normally.

As matters now stand, guidance for general bureaus or management bureaus is inefficient, so the State Planning Commission, the provinces, the commissions and the ministries do not have a clear picture of the situation at these bureaus.

If the provincial general bureaus or management bureaus of fishery are made the planning units of the State Planning Commission because they are integrated enterprises, the State Planning Commission will be unable to plan and direct their production successfully; instead, this will result in hitches in production. Because the Administration Council and the State Planning Commission do not care about the
fishing industry, provincial general bureaus or management bureaus of fishery are not catching fish as they should.

In order to increase fish catch by improving the planning and directing of operations for the provincial general bureaus or management bureaus of fishery, it is advisable to form integrated enterprises with the Sinpho, Yanghwa, Hongwon and several other large fishery stations and make them the planning units of the State Planning Commission, instead of making all the provincial general bureaus or management bureaus of fishery the responsibilities of the State Planning Commission, and keep the other fishery stations under the provincial management bureaus of fishery to make them the responsibilities of the regional planning commissions. The operations of the provincial cooperative fishery management commissions should also be planned by the regional planning commissions. Operations of organizations such as the general bureaus of pelagic fishing will be difficult for a regional planning commission to plan, so they will have to be planned by the State Planning Commission. If the State Planning Commission plans and directs the operations of only several large fishery stations, it will be possible to improve fishing operations, increase the catch and supply large amounts to Pyongyang people and miners.

We must look into how many factories and enterprises the provincial general bureaus and management bureaus of fishery have under them, then divide them for planning by the State Planning Commission and by regional planning commissions. Those transferred to the regional planning commissions can be called provincial fishery management bureaus.

All the provincial general bureaus or management bureaus of forestry are planning units of the State Planning Commission. Only the general forestry bureaus of Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces and the forestry mission in the Soviet Union should be retained as planning units of the State Planning Commission; the other provincial forestry management bureaus should be the planning units of regional planning commissions. Because the general forestry bureaus of Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces and the forestry mission in the Soviet Union are the
principal ones in our country, only these should be kept under the
control of the State Planning Commission.

When planning units are divided between the State Planning
Commission and the regional planning commissions, factories and
enterprises under the integrated enterprises must belong with their
parent bodies wholly either to the State Planning Commission or to the
regional planning commissions. If part of an integrated enterprise that
has many factories and enterprises under it is made a planning unit of
the State Planning Commission and the remainder a planning unit of a
regional planning commission, work will not go smoothly. The
factories and enterprises under an integrated enterprise are like legs to
a crab. If the legs are placed under the control of a regional planning
commission and the rest of the body under the State Planning
Commission, the integrated enterprise will not function properly.
Therefore, an integrated enterprise as a whole should be made a
planning unit either of the State Planning Commission or of a regional
planning commission. Then the integrated enterprise will be able to
stand on its own feet and manage business activities successfully with
a high sense of responsibility and initiative.

In this direction the responsibilities for the planning units must be
clearly defined to deal with their planning work. Integrated enterprises
and provincial general bureaus and management bureaus are all said to
desire to become planning units of the State Planning Commission.
They are wrong. Under our unified planning system the regional
planning commissions are the field organizations of the State Planning
Commission. Therefore, their planning for the integrated enterprises
under their control amounts to planning by the State Planning
Commission in the field.

The State Planning Commission and the regional planning
commissions must not only plan directly for the units under their
control, but also organize economic operations to implement their
plans, direct production and review production results.

If we establish a system under which the State Planning
Commission and the regional planning commissions organize
economic operations, direct production and review the results on their own responsibility, economic work will go without a hitch, even when the Premier does not control and direct economic work at the time he should. In fact, the Premier may fail to do so, because he has to deal with a lot of foreign affairs and other matters. It is not advisable, for this reason, to delegate a vice-premier to direct all economic work. Even if he is delegated to do so, he will be unable to direct it efficiently, because he is familiar only with the sector in his charge, not with the overall economic situation.

It is advisable for the chairman of the State Planning Commission to undertake the guidance of economic work and unified direction of production, since he is in direct charge of planning and supervises the implementation of the plans on a regular basis.

If the State Planning Commission and the regional planning commissions make plans, organize economic operations, direct production and review the results on their own responsibility, it will provide the Premier with an economic operations bureau and enable the State Planning Commission to enhance its role as an economic operations bureau. If an army is to win a battle, it must be efficient in operations and command. Likewise, if we are to succeed in economic work, we must make correct plans and skilfully organize and direct operations for their implementation.

During the Fatherland Liberation War the US imperialist aggressors attempted an attack on Height T, west of Cholwon, in order to boost the morale of the mercenaries of their satellites prior to their “new offensive”. They organized an “exemplary attack” on Height T by massing large forces to show to the reporters of their satellites. I got the report on the enemy’s attempt from the reconnaissance bureau of the People’s Army at five p.m. on the day before the attack. I summoned the chief of general staff, his deputies, the chief of the operations bureau and his assistants immediately, gave them a briefing, and took measures to foil the enemy’s attempt. Height T had been manned by a small defensive force of the People’s Army. The enemy was so superior in number that there was danger of the height’s being
penetrated by the enemy attack, so I decided to reinforce artillery on that line by stealth and surprise the enemy at the start of his attack to thwart his attempt completely, but we had only 12 hours left till the enemy’s H-hour. The problem was how to bring the reinforcements to the line of Height T. Putting my trust in the unit commanders, I ordered reinforcements to arrive at their designated destinations by four o’clock the next morning. Most of the battalion and larger unit commanders in the years of the Fatherland Liberation War were veterans of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. They had a strong spirit to carry out orders without question and were always courageous in battle. On receiving orders, the commanders took their units to their destinations punctually by forced march, overcoming all difficulties. The enemy, ignorant of this, attacked only to fail. The battle is shown in the film *Unknown Heroes*. Our victory in the battle of Height T was the result of efficient operations and skilful command.

In order for the State Planning Commission and the regional planning commissions to function successfully as economic operations bureau through correct planning and organizing of economic operations and efficient directing of production, the State Planning Commission must work under the direction of the Premier and the regional planning commissions must work as components of the unified state planning system directly under the State Planning Commission. In addition, the regional planning commissions, though under the direct control of the State Planning Commission, should also be subject to the direction of the chairmen of respective provincial people’s committees. If regional planning commissions report their problems to both the State Planning Commission and the chairmen of provincial people’s committees as occasion demands and deal with them in accordance with their direction, economic problems will be resolved more smoothly than at present.

It is not a bad idea to get the chairmen of provincial people’s committees to give an impetus to economic work. As chief secretaries of provincial Party committees they have authority to give concurrent Party guidance and governmental direction, so they can give a
powerful impetus to economic work in their provinces.

To get the State Planning Commission to keep major integrated enterprises under its control, plan and organize their economic operations, direct their production and review the results and to let the regional planning commissions plan and organize the economic operations of other integrated enterprises, general bureaus and management bureaus in the provinces, direct their production and review the results constitute the planning system and the production direction system that accord with our Party’s principle of unified planning.

A problem arises as to the function and role of state commissions and ministries in making plans for integrated enterprises and in organizing and directing their production.

Since the integrated enterprises conduct their business activities, including planning, on their own, as I emphasized when introducing them, the State Planning Commission and other state planning organizations must be allowed to do planning work in direct contact with these enterprises. Now that we have established a system under which the state and regional planning commissions make plans in direct contact with integrated enterprises and under which the integrated enterprises stand on their own feet, state commissions and ministries need not draw up separate plans. The state commissions and ministries are, in effect, as much central authorities as the State Planning Commission; the planning units of the commissions and ministries will immediately be the planning units of the State Planning Commission. Some officials regard commissions and ministries as great, independent organizations, but they are part of the structure of the Administration Council and as such assist the Premier in his work. The Premier resolves economic problems by keeping the State Planning Commission and other state commissions and ministries under his control, and the commissions and ministries are in duty bound to assist the Premier creditably in his work.

I have been told that these days some officials of the commissions and ministries say there is no knowing whether or not planning work is being done properly at their subordinate factories and enterprises and
how their plans are being implemented, because the planning bureaus of commissions and ministries do not deal with current planning. It does not stand to reason that the commissions and ministries cannot supervise the factories and enterprises under them because they do not plan their current operations. A chairman or a minister can supervise his subordinates with the assistance of a secretary. It is wrong to grumble at the organizational structure and terms of reference, instead of working in a responsible manner.

Even if the commissions and ministries were made to deal with planning work, they would have nothing much to do except consolidating the plans drafted by their subordinate organizations and forwarding them to the State Planning Commission.

Production, as in military operations, can be successful only when related sectors work efficiently together.

As leader of the revolutionary struggle for many years, I have commanded innumerable battles. A battle can be successful only when cooperation among different services, between services and arms and between different arms is efficient. In other words, harmonious teamwork among the Air Force, Navy and Army and between infantry and artillery can ensure victory. Likewise, to ensure good production results, efficient teamwork is imperative among integrated enterprises and among factories and enterprises within an integrated enterprise, so as to supply sufficient raw materials, fuel and other necessities and cooperative products to the related sectors. It is difficult, however, for a commission or a ministry to deal with cooperation among the many complicatedly interrelated sectors. Some officials of commissions and ministries are now said to be complaining that even when coal and steel are in short supply, their chairmen and ministers do not pay a visit to the Commission of the Extractive Industries or to the Ministry of the Metal Industry or do not telephone them about the matter. The supply of raw materials and other necessities is not a problem that can be solved over the telephone by a chairman or a minister, because supplies are dovetailed in the state plan. If a fertilizer factory has suspended production because of short supply of coal and electric
power and lack of repair materials, the State Planning Commission has to resolve the problem; the Ministry of the Chemical Industry alone is incapable of doing it.

The basic duty of commissions and ministries in the management of integrated enterprises is to give them efficient technical guidance, not to undertake planning for them. Commissions and ministries should direct production at the factories and enterprises in their respective sectors and supervise these enterprises among those included in the planning units of the State Planning Commission and the regional planning commissions.

After receiving the plans made by the State Planning Commission and regional planning commissions for the integrated enterprises in their sectors, the commissions and ministries must direct production and supervise it according to the plans. Production direction by these commissions and ministries is supplementary; production direction by the State Planning Commission and regional planning commissions is basic. Nevertheless, the officials of commissions and ministries must display revolutionary spirit and fighting efficiency in production direction and supervision. Some senior officials of commissions and ministries are swayed by expediency, not applying themselves to production direction.

Since commissions and ministries do not deal with planning for the integrated enterprises, factories and other enterprises, no major problems will arise even if the existing planning bureaus are disorganized. It is advisable, however, to retain them, because commissions and ministries have to make long-term plans for their sectors and also because the chairmen and ministers may find it necessary to give the State Planning Commission and the Administration Council their opinions about current plans.

If commissions and ministries fail to give integrated enterprises correct technical guidance or neglect their supervision, the State Planning Commission must call them to account and put the situation to rights. For example, if the Ministry of the Metal Industry is not giving correct technical guidance to a metallurgical works, the officials
of the State Planning Commission who are in charge of the factory must inform the senior officials of the ministry of the undesirable situation and tell them to remedy the state of affairs quickly.

The state planning indices should be classified into central indices and regional indices on the principle and norms of dividing the planning units into those of the State Planning Commission and those of the regional planning commissions. To put it otherwise, the planning indices should be classified on the principle of defining the indices planned by the State Planning Commission as central indices and those planned by regional planning commissions as regional indices. In fact, there is no need for commissions and ministries to have separate indices of their own.

Capital construction plans should also be classified into central and regional ones according to the identity of the planning units. To be specific, they can be classified on the principle of defining the construction projects undertaken by the integrated enterprises under the planning authority of the State Planning Commission as central construction and the construction projects to be carried out by the integrated enterprises under the planning authority of regional planning commissions as regional construction.

If an integrated enterprise is the planning unit of the State Planning Commission, its capital construction projects should be planned wholly by the State Planning Commission as central construction. You cannot have part of a project planned by the State Planning Commission and the rest by a regional planning commission. In classifying capital construction plans into central and regional plans, you can, of course, plan that projects such as the ash disposal ground of the Pukchang Thermal Power Complex or the access tracks to the Inpho Coal Mine be constructed on regional responsibility with the use of regional efforts and material sources. However, when the construction of a new power station or the development of a new coal mine is planned by the State Planning Commission, even the construction of the ash disposal ground or the access tracks should be planned as central construction.
In planning capital construction for an integrated enterprise that is a planning unit of the State Planning Commission, part of the project may be undertaken on regional responsibility through the use of regional potentials. Each such case should prudently be examined and dealt with to suit the actual conditions.

In order to organize economic operations and direct production successfully in the capacity of an economic operations bureau, the State Planning Commission must introduce a system of keeping an official on duty every day.

The chairman and his first deputies must be on duty in three shifts every day, dealing with daily problems and directing production. If it directs production in this manner, the State Planning Commission can supervise its subordinate units effectively. I have commanded military operations by this method for many decades. There is no difference in method between the command of battle and the direction of production.

Regional planning commissions must supervise their subordinate factories and enterprises the same way the State Planning Commission does.

The State Planning Commission needs to have another first vice-chairman. Each of the regional planning commissions should also keep two first vice-chairmen, so that the chairman and his first deputies stand duty by shift, directing production.

The Premier, the Secretary of the Party Central Committee for heavy industry, the chairman of the Economic Policy Commission of the Central People’s Committee and vice-premiers should meet this afternoon and decide on the planning units of the State Planning Commission and regional planning commissions in the direction I have given.

When the work of deciding the planning units is over, planning for next year should be concluded on the basis of these planning units.

Next year’s plans should be drawn up separately for the integrated enterprises defined as planning units of the State Planning Commission and those defined as planning units of regional planning commissions.
All that remains to be done is for the State Planning Commission to consolidate the plans for the integrated enterprises that have become its planning units and for the regional planning commissions to put together, under the guidance of the State Planning Commission, plans for the integrated enterprises of their own planning units and for other regional economic planning units. Since regional planning commissions are better informed about regional situations than the State Planning Commission, it is not a bad idea to let the former plan for the planning units in their charge. This will avoid the miscalculations or unexpected problems that occurred when the State Planning Commission planned almost everything.

In making plans for next year, the State Planning Commission and regional planning commissions must coordinate the supply of raw materials and other necessities to the last detail, to ensure that integrated enterprises fulfil their plans.

When the national economy has been planned separately for the planning units of the State Planning Commission and for those of the regional planning commissions, the plans should be documented and submitted to me. On receiving them, I shall reexamine the plans for the integrated enterprises of the planning units of the State Planning Commission and for those of the regional planning commissions and then discuss them at a meeting of the Central People’s Committee around the tenth of December.

After issuing next year’s plans to the integrated enterprises, the State Planning Commission and the regional planning commissions must, on the basis of good preparation, organize economic operations and direct production energetically from the first day of January next year onwards and review the results every month and every quarter of the year with the participation of the senior officials of the integrated enterprises.

The chairman of the Economic Policy Commission of the Central People’s Committee will have to give much assistance to the State Planning Commission. As an economic adviser to the President, he must help it in everything, ranging from planning to the organizing of implementation of the plan.
ON EFFECTING ADVANCES
IN THE MACHINE-TOOL, ELECTRONICS
AND AUTOMATION INDUSTRIES

Concluding Speech at the 14th Plenary Meeting
of the Sixth Central Committee
of the Workers’ Party of Korea
November 30, 1988

At this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee we have discussed a very important matter.

Developing the machine-tool, electronics and automation industries quickly is an important task in speeding up the building of socialism and communism. In order to build socialism and communism, we must carry out a technological revolution along with the ideological and cultural revolutions. A technological revolution means none other than a revolution in mechanical engineering. The main task of the technological revolution is to develop the machine industry. In order to advance the machine industry to a high stage, we must develop the machine-tool industry and the electronics and automation industries.

It is imperative at the present stage of our socialist construction to develop the machine-tool, electronics and automation industries rapidly. By the end of the Third Seven-Year Plan the annual output of steel will reach 10 million tons and that of nonferrous metal 1.7 million tons. We are working hard towards the modernization of many sectors of the national economy during the long-term plan. We must develop the machine industry on a large scale in step with the increase in the
production of steel and nonferrous metal. If we are to develop the machine industry and modernize the national economy to a higher level, we must effect new advances in the machine-tool industry and the electronics and automation industries.

The machine industry has a solid foundation, and we can develop the machine-tool, electronics and automation industries rapidly.

Our Party has always given priority to development of the machine industry. Under the slogan “Iron and the machine are the king of industry” it has put great effort into developing the machine industry, the heart of heavy industry. As you can see in the film *The Untrodden Path*, we built a munitions factory on our own immediately after liberation on the site of the arsenal the Japanese imperialists destroyed when fleeing Korea. That can be regarded as the beginning of our machine industry. Because we built the machine-building factory by ourselves and produced submachine guns and mortars, we were able to defeat the US imperialists in the Fatherland Liberation War. When the war was still at its height, we foresaw victory and started construction of the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory as well as the training of technicians and management workers for the factory in preparation for postwar reconstruction. As soon as the war was over, we could thus put the factory into operation. Our machine-tool industry is more than 30 years old.

There are now machine-tool factories in many parts of our country—in Huichon, Kusong, Pyongyang and Chongjin—and a large machine-tool production centre has been constructed in Hamhung. These factories have great capability. As early as 1972 we produced 30,000 machine tools in a single year. At that time the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory turned out 10,000 machine tools. We have exported many machine tools over the years.

Because of inefficient organization of economic operations by our officials, annual output of machine tools has dropped in recent years. Last year the Huichon General Machine-Tool Factory did not produce as many machine tools as it used to. If our officials had organized economic operations better and worked harder, our machine-tool
industry could have attained a much higher level than now. Since we
have a solid foundation of the machine-tool industry, we can advance
our machine-tool industry and the electronics and automation
industries to world standards in a short time if our officials work hard
and with strong determination.

At this plenary meeting we have raised and discussed matters
relating to the mass production of digitally controlled machine tools,
such as numerically controlled lathes, machining centres, and
electrode discharge machines, the production of robots, the
introduction of a flexible manufacturing system in the production of
digitally controlled machine tools and the construction of unmanned
workshops for this purpose. The numerically controlled lathes,
machining centres and electrode discharge machines are new products
of ours, and they are very modern machine tools, one stage higher than
those now in production. The mass production of digitally controlled
machine tools is a revolution in the production of machine tools. We
must ensure that this plenary meeting occasions a revolution in the
production of machine tools.

The Japanized Chinese ideographic names of the digitally
controlled lathe, machining centre and the like do not sound good. The
newly made machine tools should be named well in our own language.

We have set the target of constructing the base for the production of
these machine tools by 1990 and then expanding it continuously, so as
to produce large numbers from 1993. The target is excellent. When this
target is attained, our country will lead other socialist countries in the
production of machine tools. If we produce large numbers of digitally
controlled machine tools, we can meet our own demands for them and
also export them to earn a lot of foreign currency.

We have decided to make the Kusong-104 lathe production base a
model for the engineering industry and introduce a flexible
manufacturing system first in that base. That will be excellent. The
introduction of a flexible manufacturing system means transition to
an unmanned production system. When the April 3 Factory is
equipped to be a model, our officials can acquire a correct
understanding of the flexible manufacturing system.

Discussion of the development of the electronics and automation industries was an important item on the agenda of this plenary meeting. The meeting has set the target of mass-producing integrated circuits and computers from 1993 by constructing their production bases on a large scale. If we work efficiently, we shall be fully able to attain this target as well.

If we secure the objectives set by this plenary meeting, it will mean a great advance, a great revolution, in our economic development.

The important tasks our Party has set in building socialism and communism are aimed at relieving our people, now free from exploitation and oppression, completely from difficult and toilsome work, so that they lead rich and happy lives while doing easy and pleasant work. This is the final objective of building communism and the most honourable of the fighting tasks. If we automate production processes and introduce robots and a flexible manufacturing system by developing the machine-tool, electronics and automation industries, people will be able to dispense with backbreaking work; they will only have to give instructions to machines and push buttons to set their factories working automatically and pouring forth products. Then the working people will be completely free from difficult and arduous work, our country will be rich and all the people will be better-off.

If we achieve the objectives set by this plenary meeting, we shall demonstrate once more the greatness and vitality of our Party’s Juche idea to the whole world.

Man is master of everything and decides everything. This is precisely the principle of the Juche idea. The Juche idea requires that everything serve the people. Our struggle to develop technology and accelerate economic construction to free the working people from difficult and labour-consuming work and provide all the people with rich and happy lives is a struggle to meet the requirement of the Juche idea. If we work successfully for several years and automate production, introduce robots and modernize the national economy on a wide scale, our country will rank proudly among the advanced
countries of the world and demonstrate more powerfully the might of our socialist, independent national economy, which is the application of the Juche idea.

I am convinced that this plenary meeting will be marked as an important meeting that has paved the road of great advance in building socialism and communism, as a historic meeting that occupies a brilliant page in the history of our Party.

All the comrades who have participated in the discussion at this plenary meeting have unanimously supported the Party’s policy on rapidly developing the machine-tool industry and the electronics and automation industries and expressed a strong determination to carry it out. This is excellent.

The entire Party must now launch a vigorous struggle to implement the decisions of the plenary meeting.

We must, before all else, construct the bases for the production of numerically controlled machine tools as soon as possible.

The Kusong-104 lathe production base is now being constructed by soldiers at the April 3 Factory. The other projects must also be undertaken quickly. Measures should also be taken to fill gaps in the equipment for these production bases, producing what we can domestically and importing what is not available at home.

It has been suggested that we enlist appropriate scientists and technicians of the Academy of Sciences, Kim Chaek University of Technology and other sectors to solve scientific and technological problems arising in making numerical control devices. I agree to the suggestion.

Next, we must operate the machine-tool factories at full capacity to increase production quickly.

In order to raise the level of our machine-tool industry higher, we must, of course, mass-produce modern numerically controlled machine tools by adopting the latest successes in electronics, automation engineering and other branches of modern science and technology. However, our emphasis on the production of these machines does not mean that we can afford to neglect the effort to
increase the production of conventional machine tools. While developing and mass-producing modern, numerically controlled machine tools, we must ensure capacity production of the existing machine-tool factories to increase their output to the maximum. That is the way to satisfy the daily growing demand for machine tools, lay solid foundations for the electronics and automation industries and mass-produce various kinds of numerically controlled machine tools and robots.

Present demands for machine tools in various sectors of the national economy are great. They are needed for many purposes.

With progress in the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture, the number of lorries, tractors and other farm machines continues to increase, but they are not used effectively, because repair shops have not been equipped to cope with the demand. When all the cooperative farms get more tractors and lorries in the future, their repair shops will have to be increased. This will require more machine tools of different types.

Development of local industry also requires a large number of machine tools. There are approximately twenty local-industry factories in each of our counties, as well as many provincially-run factories. In order to modernize the local-industry factories and improve their operation, it is necessary to produce different types of machines and spare parts for them. To do this, there must be in each province a large machine-building factory and a repair base that serve the locally-run factories. To build a factory for producing machines and spare parts needed by the locally-run factories and a repair base serving them in each province will require a large number of machine tools.

The fishing industry also needs a lot of machine tools. In order to ensure timely repair of fishing vessels needed for regular fishing operations, we must supply machine tools to equip newly built ship repair bases and to reinforce existing ones.

The People’s Army also needs many machine tools. Its trucks, tanks, armoured cars and other vehicles amount to a great number. In order to ensure prompt repair of these vehicles and other technical
equipment, the People’s Army needs to have its own repair bases. Even in the difficult conditions during the anti-Japanese armed struggle we set up weapons repair shops and ensured prompt repair of broken-down weapons and even produced the “Yanji” bombs. Nowadays, however, we cannot say that satisfactory repair bases have been prepared for the People’s Army. A large number of various machine tools will be needed to equip major repair bases for the People’s Army.

Modern machine tools, such as numerically controlled machines, are not needed to equip the repair bases for agriculture, local industry, fishery and the People’s Army. Of course, some modern machine tools will be needed, but conventional machine tools that anyone can operate with ease are now in large demand. These machines can be produced in large numbers through a campaign to let one machine tool make another at machine-building factories.

If we increase the production of machine tools through capacity operations of machine-tool factories, we can increase the export of machine tools. There are large foreign demands for our machine tools. Southeast Asian and Latin American countries demand them. Last year we sent our machine tools to an international commodity exhibition in a Latin American country. People of that country said they would buy our universal machine tools in large quantities. Developing countries demand more of the universal machine tools we now produce than numerically controlled machine tools. We should export machine tools instead of selling steel to foreign countries. If we export machine tools, we can earn 15 to 20 times what we earn by selling the same amount of unprocessed steel.

In order to ensure steady production at machine-tool factories, officials must organize economic operations with efficiency.

Because officials are inefficient in the organization of economic operations, our solid foundation of the machine-tool industry is not proving its worth to the full. Although an excellent riding horse has been prepared, the horse and the rider are walking separately, so to speak, because the rider does not know how to ride the horse. If our
officials organize economic work carefully and operate the existing machine-tool factories at full capacity, they can sharply increase the production of various machine tools to meet the domestic demand and export a large amount.

Some officials now say that factories and other enterprises are not working at a steady rate because of a short supply of electric power and materials, but that is not true. Hitches in production are due mainly to the officials’ inefficient work organization. If they organize work down to the last detail, displaying loyalty to the revolution, to the Party and to the working class, they will be perfectly able to ensure a high and steady rate of production.

The power-generating capacity in our country is by no means small. Although it is impossible to operate our hydropower stations at full capacity because of small rainfall this year, we are fully able to run the thermal power stations at full capacity. If we organize work skilfully and ensure capacity operation of thermal power stations and operation of hydropower stations as much as possible, we can meet the demand for electric power in the main. However, officials are not organizing work meticulously to ensure capacity operation of thermal power stations. In consequence, the Pukchang Thermal Power Complex, the Sunchon Thermal Power Station, and the Chongchongang Thermal Power Station are not working on a steady basis. The capacity of our factory thermal power stations amounts to at least 100,000 kW, but these power stations are not working properly either.

We have long stressed the need for power stations, factories and other enterprises to establish a thorough equipment inspection and repair system and keep it in regular repair. All that I have emphasized will remain recorded in my works and other collections of documents. If the officials concerned had ensured a timely supply of repair materials to power stations and established a strict and regular repair system in line with the Party’s policy, thermal power stations could have operated on a steady basis and could have prevented the present strain on power supply.

If officials organize work in a responsible manner, they will be fully
able to ensure the supply of materials needed for the production of machine tools.

If we estimate the annual production of machine tools at 10,000, the required amount of materials will be 14,000 tons of steel and approximately 100 tons of copper and other nonferrous metals. We are producing several million tons of steel annually. Annual capacity of cast-steel furnaces at large machine-building factories alone amounts to 300,000 tons. It poses no problem at all, therefore, to supply 14,000 tons of steel to machine-tool factories annually.

It is said that the supply of electrodes is insufficient to ensure the capacity operation of cast-steel furnaces; this is also due to inefficient work organization on the part of the officials concerned. Our country is rich in the deposits of graphite needed for the production of electrodes. Anticipating the strain on the supply of graphite, I instructed a long time ago that new graphite mines be developed instead of depending on the August 8 Mine alone. Graphite deposits in Chongdan County, South Hwanghae Province, alone amount to several hundred million tons. Grinders, dressing machines and bulldozers for developing graphite mines can all be produced domestically, so there will be no problem in this regard. However, officials have not organized the work of developing graphite mines. In consequence, graphite production is unsatisfactory and causes hitches in the production of electrodes. Even now we must accelerate the development of the Hungsan Mine to solve the problem of electrodes. If the Hungsan Mine increases graphite production, it can produce more than enough to meet domestic demand. It has been suggested to use electrodes self-baked in the heat of the furnace, but this method consumes too much electricity.

If short of steel, machine-tool factories can import it in exchange for the machine tools they export. For example, if a machine-tool factory has produced 1,900 machine tools, it can export approximately 500 and import the steel it needs. Machine-tool factories must earn foreign currency in this manner and operate even by importing steel, filling gaps in their production processes and expanding by importing machinery.
Factory officials must work out ways of operating their factories at full capacity. Some officials are in the habit of requesting foreign currency from the state. They are seriously wrong. If they request foreign currency without earning it, where can the state obtain it to comply with all their requests? Factory management must think of earning foreign currency to meet their own needs.

There is full possibility to solve the problem of copper needed for the production of machine tools. The Hyesan Youth Mine has a tremendous deposit of copper. As I found during my field investigation last summer, there is no major problem in copper production at the mine. The problem lies in the officials’ inefficient work organization. If officials organize work meticulously, producing what they do not have, finding ways to fill shortages and throwing themselves into difficult work before anyone else, they can find the solution to any problem.

The Ministry of the Machine-Building Industry must take measures to import steel of specifications not available at home and some materials in short supply. Our country, which is not large, cannot produce all the materials to meet its own needs. What cannot be produced domestically can be obtained through foreign trade. We set the policy on multifarious and multilateral foreign trade a long time ago and have provided the state commissions and ministries with conditions for conducting foreign trade. As it has a trading company at its disposal, the Ministry of the Machine-Building Industry will have no problem in exporting part of its machine products and importing materials to meet its own demands. The ministry must not depend totally on the Ministry of Foreign Trade, but make every effort to export machines produced by its machine-building factories and import steel and other materials and equipment it needs. If the Ministry of the Machine-Building Industry is supposed to produce 10,000 machine tools, for instance, under the state plan, it should calculate on delivering 9,000 machine tools to the state and exporting 1,000, in order to import the amount of materials it needs. This will ensure the full operation of machine-building factories.
Work should be organized efficiently to supply machine-building factories with bearing steel and other kinds of special steel.

The October 30 Factory, September 18 Factory, March 25 Factory and many other factories use bearing steel and various other special steels, and the shortage of these steels is retarding their production. Complaints are being voiced of the short supply of bearing steel and other kinds of steel. Their shortage is not due to lack of production capacity, but to officials’ careless organization of production.

The Songjin Steel Complex is fully able to produce different kinds of special steel. However, the senior officials concerned just dictate to the steel works to produce special steels, instead of organizing work in detail to ensure their production. If they deal with the problem in this manner, bearing and other steels will not be produced without a hitch. It is obvious that if the steel works is ordered without discretion to produce only a few tons of various special steels from its large steel furnace with the capacity of dozens of tons, the works will be unwilling to obey orders. In order to ensure the production of different kinds of special steel at the Songjin Steel Complex, it is necessary to begin by correcting the planning of special steel production. If a steel furnace produces small amounts of different special steels, the total output will be lower than if it mass-produces another kind of steel, so the allowances must be considered in planning. For example, the production of one ton of special steel that is not in large demand should be evaluated in planning as equal to the production of several tons of steel that is in large demand, and payment should be settled accordingly. In addition, a workshop or a steel furnace should be specialized for the production of special steel, such as bearing steel or high-speed steel. This will help ensure the production of special steels not in great demand.

Special steels, such as bearing steel, that are in small demand can be produced by a cast-steel furnace in a large machine-building works, or else a small steel works can be specialized for the production of special steels. Cast-steel furnaces in large machine-building factories often stand idle, so if technicians are assigned to them for the production of
bearing steel and the like, they will be fully able to perform the assignment.

One of the most important tasks in developing the machine-tool industry is to make a revolutionary advance in the production of tools, so as to ensure the supply of a variety of high-quality tools.

Tools are a major weapon for the machine industry. Without them it would be impossible to operate machine-building factories.

In view of the great importance of tools in the machine industry, I made sure that a tool factory was built when the machine-tool industry base was constructed. The July 13 Factory was built on the site I myself selected. I have always paid close attention to this factory and given it guidance. It is the only tool factory in our country and has great production capacity. If it is fully operated, more than enough tools can be produced to meet the demands of different sectors of the national economy. However, this factory is not being operated at full capacity, and machine-building factories suffer hitches in production because of the short supply of tools. When they implemented the Taean work system in the years immediately following its establishment, all the machine-building factories worked smoothly with a full stock of tools at their disposal. Nowadays, however, they do not.

Senior officials of the Administration Council and other officials concerned are not making strenuous efforts to ensure a capacity operation of the July 13 Factory. Since I emphasized the need to increase the production of tools early this year, a vice-premier and the Minister of the Machine-Building Industry have inspected the July 13 Factory and the chief secretary of the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee has pledged to the Party to operate the factory satisfactorily, but no major improvement has been made.

These days the shortage of tungsten is ascribed to the hitch in the production of tool steel, but that is a mere excuse. It is reported that 400 tons of tungsten-ore concentrate is now in stock at the Yonphung Mine. If the ore concentrate is transported, tool steel can be produced, but nobody has taken measures to transport it. If the officials concerned pay attention to this matter and organize transport, there will
be no difficulty in transporting the 400 tons of concentrate. If the officials had been concerned about the hitch in tool production and had displayed the least revolutionary spirit, they would have taken the necessary measures to ensure the production of tool steel. The senior officials must feel deep remorse for the neglect of tool steel production for the July 13 Factory.

If the officials concerned make a little effort, they are perfectly able to solve the problem of tungsten needed for the production of high-speed steel. Not much tungsten is required to produce high-speed steel to meet the annual demand of the machine industry, so there is no problem in ensuring its production. The Yonphung Mine can produce a large amount of tungsten-ore concentrate. There are tungsten mines also in North Phyongan and North Hwanghae Provinces. The one in North Hwanghae Province was originally called Paengnyon Mine (one-hundred-year mine–Tr.), but I renamed it Mannyon Mine (ten-thousand-year mine–Tr.), because the mine was said to have a large deposit in its surrounding area. However, geological prospecting has not been carried out in real earnest and the senior officials of the Administration Council and North Hwanghae Province have paid no attention to the mine. In consequence, the mine is not producing much tungsten.

All this shows that our officials are seriously lacking loyalty to the revolution, to the Party, to the working class and to the people. If they do not work with a strong revolutionary spirit, Party spirit, working-class spirit and spirit to serve the people, they can neither provide the people with a happy life nor build socialism and communism with success.

We must make every effort to ensure sufficient tungsten supplies for full operation of the July 13 Factory. If it is really difficult to meet the demand for tungsten for tool steel production with domestic products, the state should make some investment in the July 13 Factory, so that it can produce tools and export some in exchange for tungsten. Then it will be able to operate at full capacity.

In order for economic work to advance, we must give officials
correct Party guidance and step up legal control, so as to stimulate them to organize economic work in a responsible manner and make a devoted effort, displaying strong revolutionary spirit. In past years production has not proceeded on a steady basis in quite a few machine-building factories, partly because there has not been strict legal control over officials to stimulate them to carry out Party decisions and implement state laws without fail.

Law and order are not now as strict as they should be. Economic management officials and some other officials do not care whether state laws are observed or not; they even neglect the implementation of presidential decrees and Party decisions. It is not because our country has no laws that law and order are as loose as they are now. We have the Socialist Constitution, the basic law of the state, as well as criminal and various other laws. The point in question is that the Committee for Guidance in Socialist Law Observance and judicial organs of the state do not play their role properly. Because the Committee for Guidance in Socialist Law Observance, judicial organs and prosecutors’ offices neglect legal control and the struggle against lawbreaking, officials who do not observe state laws, decrees and directives pass with impunity.

The Committee for Guidance in Socialist Law Observance, judicial and prosecutors’ offices must step up legal control of the various aspects of social life in accordance with their missions and launch an uncompromising struggle against violation of Party decisions and state laws. If legal control is not tightened up, the decisions of this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee may not be implemented to the letter. The judicial organs and prosecutors’ offices must have the full rigour of the law deal with neglect of the decisions of this plenary meeting.

To proceed, the machine industry must raise the level of specialized production.

This is not the first time we have discussed specialization of production in the machine industry. As early as 1956 I set out the policy on specializing production and have ever since spoken at many
meetings. Our Party’s consistent policy has been to develop specialized production in the machine industry. However, officials of the machine industry have not fully implemented this policy. As a result, specialized casting, forging and plating are still at a low level, and machine-building factories are unable to improve the quality of their products while wasting much material and labour.

Recently a joint-venture delegation from a capitalist country came to our country. After inspecting our motor-vehicle factory, they said that product quality was not high because of the low level of specialized production.

Specialized production is essential for economical use of materials and labour, for a higher rate of equipment operation, a higher level of workers’ technical skill, and a higher quality of products. If the machine industry specializes casting, forging and plating, it can increase production by far and improve the quality of products even on the existing production foundations.

We must properly organize specialized casting.

The officials of the machine industry must study rational ways of specialized casting in detail and organize it with care. This, however, does not mean that you should attempt to do away with the cast-iron and cast-steel foundries now existing at factories and other enterprises or merge them without discrimination. If the officials organize this work carelessly, it is possible that, for instance, a factory that has been producing ten kinds of castings may begin producing only two items, depending on other factories for the other eight items. This must not happen.

Specialized production should be organized in such a way as to operate the foundries at factories and enterprises to the maximum, keeping them as they are. If any of these facilities has surplus capacity, it must receive orders for castings from neighbouring factories. The Sungni General Motor Works, for instance, can produce castings for the Pukchang Thermal Power Complex and other neighbouring factories and enterprises in addition to meeting its own needs. The State Planning Commission and regional planning commissions must
coordinate this work properly. This will help increase the operating rate of existing foundries and raise the level of specialized casting.

The factories to be built from now onwards should not have their own foundries, but order castings from neighbouring factories. In case the existing foundries do not have enough production capacity to receive such orders, they should be reconstructed to increase their capacity or else a new general foundry should be built. Constructing a new large casting factory in the western and eastern regions is more economical than building many small foundries for every new machine-building factory.

It is advisable to build a general casting factory in the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex to meet the growing demand for castings by the machine-tool factories in the western region, because the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex produces pig iron and is located near Monggumpho, where casting sand is readily available. For the eastern region a similar casting factory can be built in Chongjin or thereabouts.

We must specialize forging and effect widespread stamping and pressing in shaping metals.

Stamping and pressing can greatly reduce processing time and also greatly improve the quality of products while saving much steel.

Important in stamping and pressing is raising the operating rate of the stamping and pressing equipment. Machine-building factories have many stamping machines and presses, but their operating rate is very low.

Officials of the machine industry must make a thorough study of the ways to effectively use the machines now available at factories and enterprises to develop stamping and pressing. They must not attempt to pool these machines and build a separate factory to specialize production. The factory and enterprise officials will be reluctant to give up their stamping machines and presses. Pooling these machines may complicate work and hamper production.

After an overall investigation of the state of stamping and pressing machines at machine-building factories work should be organized to
let factories with surplus capacity produce stamped and pressed goods for other factories and enterprises. If the machine industry organizes efficient cooperative production among its factories and enterprises and works hard to operate their stamping and pressing equipment at full capacity for approximately three years, it will be able to realize specialized production in this field.

Plating must also be specialized.

The quality of metal products depends more or less on the quality of plating. Metal products, no matter how well shaped, are poor in quality and appearance unless they are coated well.

In order to improve its quality, coating must be specialized. On a visit to China I inspected a specialized coating factory in Harbin. It was not a very large factory, but the coating quality was very high, so high that not only neighbouring factories in the city, but those in remote regions ordered coating from that factory. Our factories now have their own plating facilities and are doing their own plating in their own ways. This is not the way to improve the quality of plating and develop plating techniques rapidly. The machine industry must strive to specialize plating.

We must put great effort into the production of hydraulic machines.

Hydraulic equipment is stronger than electric apparatus and has many advantages in its operation. Without solving the problem of hydraulic equipment, it would be impossible to develop the machine industry to a higher level. The manufacture of modern aircraft also requires highly precise hydraulic devices. The wings and wheels of aircraft are all operated hydraulically.

The production base of hydraulic equipment in our country is very weak. We are just starting its production, and we have no specialized factory to produce it. The machine industry must put effort into its production, increase its output in step with growth in the production of modern machinery and improve the quality of products.

The machine industry must increase the production capacity of the existing production base of hydraulic equipment and also manufacture as soon as possible a variety of equipment not yet made in our country.
Since the work of building up the base is a new venture, we must ensure the timely supply of machines and materials needed for the purpose.

We must develop the electronics and automation industries rapidly. Development is essential for the mass production of modern machine tools, particularly numerically controlled machine tools, and for the automation of production, widespread introduction of robots and computers to advance the technological revolution to a high level.

In order to develop the electronics and automation industries, we must build up the bases of these industries and mass-produce integrated circuits, computers and various other electronic elements and devices.

The electronics and automation industries must renovate and reinforce the equipment of their factories, increase the production of electronic elements, automation gauges and instruments and improve their quality. In addition, we must construct modern integrated-circuit and computer factories and produce various sizes of integrated circuits and computers needed to modernize the national economy.

We must not attempt to build up the bases of electronics and automation industries at one go. Modernization of these bases requires money to import some special equipment we cannot produce ourselves, so we must produce machine tools in large quantities and export them in order to import modern equipment to gradually bridge the gaps in processes and build new factories.

It has been suggested that we supplement technicians quickly for the electronics and automation industries by selecting the necessary university graduates and appointing them directly to these industries, instead of sending them to the three-revolution teams. I agree to doing so for the time being. Appointing them to these industries amounts to sending them to the three-revolution teams.

To develop these industries quickly, we must establish a unified system of directing them.

There are now many factories, enterprises, research institutes and design establishments in these industries, but they belong to different
state commissions and ministries, so no effective use is made of the integrated-circuit and semiconductor factories, and no joint effort is made to solve scientific and technological problems arising in this field. The officials of the electronics and automation industries are self-centred and reluctant to disseminate and exchange technological information, so that they have no idea what is being produced or studied in other factories and research institutes. There are even instances of ordering and importing designs we already have or things produced in our country. That is why we must take measures to ensure unified direction of this sector in order to make rational use of the existing production bases and scientific and technical forces and develop the electronics and automation industries on a long-term basis.

We must set up a commission of electronics and automation industries under the Administration Council and let it give unified direction to the factories and other enterprises of these industries. In addition, the electronics and automation research institutes, which belong to different organizations, should be merged to form a branch academy of electronics and automation with a mission to solve scientific and technological problems arising in developing electronics and automation industries. Their organizational structure should be established and cadres appointed to them.

The Administration Council must enhance its role to develop the machine-tool, electronics and automation industries quickly.

The good decisions adopted after discussion of the development of the machine-tool, electronics and automation industries at this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee will have no effect unless the Administration Council takes this work in hand and implements the decisions in a responsible manner. Under the present circumstances the efforts of the senior officials of the Administration Council alone will not be sufficient to organize and direct satisfactorily implementation of the tasks set by the plenary meeting. The secretary of the Party Central Committee for heavy industry must give effective assistance to the Administration Council in the implementation of the decisions of the plenary meeting.
The policy and tasks set by this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee are absolutely correct and timely, aimed at raising our machine, electronics and automation industries to world standards in a short time. These are heavy, yet honourable tasks.

The entire Party and all the people must launch a vigorous struggle to carry out the decisions of the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee and advance our machine, electronics and automation industries to a higher stage as soon as possible.
NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1989

Dear comrades,

My fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters,

Greeting 1989, a new year of hope, I extend my warm congratulations and greetings to all the people in the northern half of Korea, to the brothers in the south, and to our national residents in Japan and all our other compatriots overseas.

I also offer my new year congratulations and greetings to the peoples of the fraternal socialist countries and non-aligned countries, and to all other progressive people throughout the world.

The year 1988 was a historic year never to be forgotten by our people. Last year, under the guidance of our Party, our people frustrated every round of frantic anti-DPRK, anti-socialism hysteria launched by the imperialists and reactionaries, and waged a heroic struggle to uphold the dignity and honour of our Republic.

When the enemy’s manoeuvres to undermine the prestige of our Republic and isolate our people reached their high-water mark, the Central Committee of our Party appealed to the whole Party and all the people, calling on them to respond to the enemy’s counterrevolutionary offensive with a revolutionary offensive, and bring about a great improvement in the revolution and construction work by displaying the revolutionary spirit of Mt. Paektu. Our Party members and other working people who are infinitely faithful to the Party and revolution, launched a historic 200-day campaign vigorously
in hearty response to the letter of the Party Central Committee, and registered significant success in all fields of socialist construction, performing shining deeds.

The 200-day campaign our people launched last year was a great nationwide campaign for construction work in which the workers, farmers, soldiers of the People’s Army, office workers and youth and students all turned out and displayed their fidelity and devotion to the Party and revolution to the full. Amidst the 200-day campaign, monumental structures symbolic of the resourcefulness of our people and the mettle of our Party sprang up one after another in Pyongyang, capital of the revolution, and in all other areas throughout the country. Crucial building programmes on a huge scale, such as the construction of power, metallurgical and chemical industry centres which are of decisive significance in the fulfilment of the Third Seven-Year Plan, were carried out successfully. This increased the country’s economic might still further, refurbished the aspect of the country which is daily developing and changing, and opened a new chapter in socialist construction.

Taking great pride and self-confidence as victors in the shining deeds performed in socialist construction, our people celebrated the 40th anniversary of the foundation of our Republic. Through the events held to mark the 40th birthday of our Republic, we demonstrated the advantage and might of socialism our people have built in the course of their struggle against all odds during the past 40 years under the guidance of the Party. We also demonstrated the firm unity and cohesion of all the people, including the workers, farmers and working intellectuals who have always been at one with the Party in a ceaseless struggle against the enemy at home and abroad. This confirmed our people’s confidence that victory and glory are certainly in store for them only when they follow the guidance of the Party, and greatly encouraged the progressive people throughout the world who are advancing on the road of anti-imperialism and independence.

The National Meeting of Heroes which took place last year against a background of a heightened revolutionary atmosphere was an
important event of particular note in the revolutionary annals of our people. The National Meeting of Heroes demonstrated to the whole world the firm determination of our people to complete the revolutionary cause of Juche, inheriting the tradition of heroic struggle. It also demonstrated the unshakable will of our Party to continue to uphold the revolutionary banner in the face of all storms. In hearty response to the call of the National Meeting of Heroes, “Let us all live and struggle like heroes!” our entire Party membership and other working people launched another 200-day campaign vigorously, creating a shining example of mass heroism, the embodiment of our Party’s concept of continuing the revolution, and gave a fresh impetus to our great forward movement.

The past year, replete with heroic struggle and deeds, proved once again unequivocally that our people are always and unfailingly faithful to the Party’s call, and that they are a revolutionary people who are ready to overcome valorously any difficulties and ordeals, turn adversity into favourable circumstances and create miracles.

I extend my profound thanks to our heroic working class, farmers, soldiers, working intellectuals and all other people who, rallied firmly behind our Party in one mind and purpose, admirably implemented the Party’s strategic concept and will last year.

We are greeting the new year, full of a fresh determination and confidence, in an atmosphere in which the whole country keeps seething with a worthy struggle for creation and construction.

This year we must carry out the honourable task of giving full play to the advantages of our socialist system by keeping up our high-pitched revolutionary spirit and thus promoting more dynamically the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—and forcefully accelerating the grand forward movement of socialism.

The recent 14th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee indicated the correct direction and ways to develop rapidly the machine-tool industry and electronics and automation industries, which constitute a key to gearing up the technical revolution and
socialist economic construction at present. If we automate and robotize production processes and widely introduce the flexible manufacturing system by developing these industries, a new qualitative leap forward will be made in the economic development of our country, and the age-old desire of our working people to get completely free from hard and exhausting labour and lead an affluent and happy life to the full will be attained.

We must effectively mobilize and use the existing solid foundations of the machine industry and the scientific and technical forces, thus mass-producing modern numerically controlled machine tools and robots, while increasing rapidly the variety and number of machine tools and improving their quality, so as to meet the needs of the national economy. At the same time, we must lay strong material and technical foundations for the electronics and automation industries and increase considerably the production of integrated circuits, computers and various electronic elements and automation gauges and instruments.

Light industry is a major sector to which we must direct great efforts for the present in socialist economic construction. We must designate this year as a year of light industry, and bring about fresh changes in our efforts to implement the Party’s policy that calls for effecting a radical change in light industry.

This year we must increase investment in light industry, improve the supply of materials to it, and step up in every way the modernization of light industry factories. In the field of light industry we must guarantee the capacity operation of textile, consumer goods, foodstuff and other light industry factories, radically improve the quality of their products and produce a wider variety and larger quantities of light industrial goods which suit the tastes of the people and the socialist way of life.

We must continue to gear up capital construction dynamically so as to reach the major goals of the Third Seven-Year Plan.

We must give priority to the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex and the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex, which are of
great importance in the nation’s economic development and the improvement of the people’s living standards, and complete them in a short time. We must also actively promote the building of power stations, and the development of ore and coal mines, metal bases and other major construction programmes. The soldiers of the People’s Army and all civilian builders engaged in major construction programmes must give full play to their heroic fighting spirit and creativity, positively introduce advanced building methods and speed up construction, thereby guaranteeing the earliest inauguration of these projects. In different sectors of the national economy we must produce preferentially the equipment and materials needed for the construction of the major projects and give all-out and strong support for that construction.

This year we greet the 25th anniversary of the publication of the socialist rural theses by our Party. So this year we must step up the rural technical revolution and fully meet the requirements of the Juche method of farming, thus making greater progress in agricultural production and demonstrating once again the great vitality of the socialist rural theses.

The 13th World Festival of Youth and Students to be held in our capital city of Pyongyang this year is a great and happy event for our people. The festival, to be held amidst the great interest and support of progressive people all over the world, will be a grand international festival which will enable the youth and students on the five continents of the world to get together to exchange the lofty ideals and ambitions of youth with each other, and which will demonstrate the strength of solidarity and unity of the young people of the new generation who are fighting shoulder to shoulder for universal peace and the rosy future of mankind. We must receive kindly, with warm friendly feelings, all delegates and guests who come to attend the festival, irrespective of ideology, religious belief, race or nation and provide every convenience for them so that they can participate freely in the festival functions. Through the festival we must show the proud features of the youth and students and other people who lead an independent and
creative life to the full as true masters of society in our country where the Juche idea, which values man the most, has been embodied, and further strengthen friendship and solidarity between our people and the progressive people of the world.

Our task for this year is an enormous revolutionary task which calls for the involvement of the entire Party, country and people. A revolutionary task can only be fulfilled successfully by a revolutionary method. It is our Party’s consistent revolutionary method to bring into full play the revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity of the people, the driving force of the revolution, in order to accomplish the revolutionary task.

The senior officials should be deeply responsible for the Party and the revolution; they ought to mix with the people, conduct effective political work and arouse all Party members and other working people to accomplish the revolutionary task set by the Party. They should guide the people, displaying a noble revolutionary spirit and unfailing enthusiasm and setting examples to them, and organize economic work meticulously in accordance with the requirements of the Taean work system.

We must make another great advance in every aspect of socialist construction this year and make the last year of the 1980s, during which we have advanced with vigour in the spirit of Chollima spurred on by the speed campaign, splendid as a historic year of achievements.

1988 has been a historic year in which all the people of the north and south have directed the basic course of the developments in our country towards the achievement of national reunification.

With a view to making last year an important year which would mark a new turning point in our efforts to attain the reunification of the country by achieving national reconciliation and unity, our Party and the Government of the Republic put forward a series of reasonable proposals for negotiation and peace initiatives. They put forward, among others, the proposals for the north-south joint conference and joint parliamentary meeting, for the tripartite talks and the high-level political and military talks and for sports talks and students’ talks, and
made every possible effort to implement these proposals.

Last year the south Korean people, responding to our sincere efforts for peaceful reunification, came up with the slogan against the US and for independent reunification, and made ceaseless and dynamic endeavours throughout the year to see the country reunified. In spite of harsh fascist suppression, from the start of the year the courageous young people and students in south Korea held high the slogans, “Yankees, go home; the north and the south toward reunification!” and “Let’s meet at Panmunjom, we from Halla and you from Paektu” and worked hard to hold the north-south students’ talks and cross-country march. The people of every social section, including the workers, peasants, intellectuals and religious believers, formed democratic embattled organizations and conducted a dynamic mass campaign for reunification, calling for contacts and dialogue with their brothers in the northern half of Korea.

The endeavours for national reunification in south Korea are now developing into a movement of the majority, not of the minority; into a mass movement involving the people from all walks of life, not confined to a particular section. These endeavours represent not merely a forum for reunification, but an effort to achieve reunification by forming a federation on the basis of the three principles of national reunification. This demonstrates that the reunification campaign has entered a new stage of development and that an important change is taking place in the situation in south Korea.

If there had been no obstructive attempt on the part of the divisive forces at home and abroad last year, the wide reunification campaign which swept all over south Korea would have been joined by the reunification efforts of the people in the northern half of Korea and developed into a great nationwide procession toward reunification and national salvation, and a new epochal phase would have opened on the road to reunification.

The divisive forces, bent on the creation of “two Koreas”, are now challenging the course of history in south Korea, but the general situation is developing in favour of reunification and these
developments are being accelerated by the people who are wholly responsible for reunification, not by the divisive forces.

No one can now stop or reverse the general trend in the north and south to end national division and achieve reunification.

Today we are greeting the New Year, filled with fresh confidence in and hope for the independent peaceful reunification of the country.

This year we should actively encourage the trend of the present situation which is developing favourably for national reunification, and thus make substantial progress in ensuring peace in our country and hastening its peaceful reunification.

Before anything else, the north and the south should make a breakthrough for mutual trust and unity as soon as possible by taking effective measures for the removal of political and military confrontation.

As we have already said, unless the acute state of confrontation between the north and the south is removed we cannot eliminate mutual misunderstanding and distrust, nor can we hold sincere dialogue and successfully solve any problem related to national reunification. In keeping with the new trend of relaxation we should abandon the idea of confrontation of the past and refrain from exciting the nerves of the other side and straining the situation, and boldly get rid of all factors which may breed distrust and give rise to conflicts.

Out of this desire we have already proposed to the south Korean side a concrete suggestion for the removal of the present political and military confrontation.

If the south Korean authorities are ready to bring about a new turn in their policy in response to these endeavours of ours, they should, at least, clearly express their intention not to stage the “Team Spirit” joint military exercises this year.

In addition, we should reach a national agreement on a reasonable way for the solution of the national reunification problem.

National reunification is not an issue to be solved in the distant future, but an urgent task. Ensuring peace and achieving reunification in our country is a process in which both are linked to each other, and
there can be no transitional period between them. To regard national reunification as a matter of establishing a system on a national scale and consider it to be an issue of the distant future while setting up complex “stages” is far from realistic, and means virtually rejecting reunification and ignoring earnest national aspirations.

As good principles for solving the reunification problem on the basis of the specific situation of our country where the ideologies and social systems of the north and the south are different from each other, we have the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity, which were agreed upon by both sides and have been recognized by the world. In addition, there is the proposal for the founding of the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo which we put forward long ago as a realistic and reasonable way of reunification embodying these principles. The proposal for the foundation of the DFRK is the best way to enable us to settle the reunification problem most rapidly in the present conditions of our country.

Voices calling for reunifying the country through a federation are also ringing out even among south Korean politicians and public figures, and the south Korean authorities are no longer in a position to ignore the idea of reunifying the country through a federation.

Such being the situation, we are convinced that the proposal for reunification through a federation can serve as a basis for a national agreement, and with a view to discussing this matter earnestly propose that a north-south political consultative meeting be held in Pyongyang in the near future with the participation of leadership-level people who can represent the will of various political parties and groupings and people of all walks of life in the north and the south. For this we invite to Pyongyang the Presidents of the Democratic Justice Party, the Party for Peace and Democracy, the Reunification Democratic Party and the New Democratic Republican Party, and Cardinal Kim Su Hwan, the Rev. Mun Ik Hwan and Mr. Paek Ki Wan for south Korea.

The political consultative meeting of leadership-level people from north and south will be a forum for national negotiation which will
make it possible to gather the nation’s aspirations most easily in the present circumstances. It will also be a reasonable way to reach a national agreement on the way to achieve reunification. At this meeting the leadership of north and south will be able to have multilateral as well as bilateral talks.

If the leading people of south Korea visit Pyongyang with constructive proposals for reunification we will welcome them and consult them with an open mind about any proposals they may advance.

Attaching great importance to a north-south summit, we will continue to make persistent efforts to create conditions and an atmosphere for its realization.

Fighting today against the move to create “two Koreas” is the pressing task facing our nation.

The “two Koreas” plot is the product of an international conspiracy by the United States, Japan and south Korea that are trying to use south Korean territory continuously as an aggressive military base and a breakwater against communism. Should this be tolerated, the division of the country will be perpetuated, south Korea will be unable to free itself from the dual domination of the US and Japan and, as long as the imperialist aggressor forces remain in south Korea, the Korean peninsula will inevitably fall prey to the confrontation policy of foreign forces.

In no way must we tolerate the foolish act of having the destiny of the nation toyed with by foreign forces through the country being divided into “two Koreas”.

Confrontation in connection with the question of national reunification is neither a showdown between the two regions–north and south–nor one concerning ideology and social system; it is a confrontation between the lines of reunification and division, between those of peace and war, and between the patriotic line and the traitorous line. All the political forces in the north and the south that aspire to the independent, peaceful reunification of the country must unite firmly under the national ideals of peace, reunification and
patriotism, and wage a forceful nationwide struggle to frustrate the “two Koreas” plot of the divisive forces at home and abroad.

The US must not continue to pursue its “two Koreas” policy but look squarely at the actual situation in Korea in which the tendency towards national reunification has become irresistible, alter its Korea policy in conformity with this trend and, as a manifestation of its readiness to do so, accept, above all else and as soon as possible, the proposal of the tripartite talks we have made.

All the Korean people, north and south, looking forward with confidence to the day of national reunification which will approach before long, should conduct with greater vigour the noble patriotic struggle for national salvation against the US and for independent reunification.

Today the general international situation is developing along the road of independence, peace and friendship. But confrontation and struggle between progress and reaction are going on as ever in the international arena.

The international circumstances are gradually attaining detente due to the positive initiatives of the socialist countries for peace and the struggles of peace-loving people the world over, but the imperialists never give up their policy of strength and are continuing to infringe upon the independence of the people and undermine peace. They are resorting to every possible means to stamp out socialism and attacking more desperately those nations which are holding firmly the revolutionary banner on the outposts of socialism.

They are trying to hamper the development of socialism and divert it towards capitalism. This is an action going against history and the people, and an absurd dream. It is an inexorable law confirmed by history that human society should advance towards socialism from capitalism. And it is only when it advances along the road of socialism that the human desire to live independently and peacefully can be achieved. Despite the frenzied manoeuvres of the imperialists, socialism is now planting its roots deep in the minds of the world’s people, and the revolutionary banner is being firmly held high in Asia,
Europe, Latin America and Africa. It is beyond doubt that socialism will continue to advance, surmounting all difficulties and hardships in its way, and win a complete victory on a worldwide scale.

We will, holding up proudly the banner of socialism, fight on to defend socialism from all manner of attacks and slanders of the imperialists and reactionaries, and firmly maintain peace, safeguarding the eastern outpost of socialism.

In order to strengthen the anti-imperialist independent forces and cope with the imperialist policy of domination and plunder, we must continue to develop the non-aligned movement. Our Party and the Government of our Republic will, in unity with the peoples of the non-aligned countries, smash the imperialists’ interventions and their manoeuvring for division and alienation, extend South-South cooperation in all aspects of politics, the economy and culture, and work hard to ensure that the Ninth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Nations which will be held in Belgrade this year proceeds successfully in accordance with the principles and ideals of the non-aligned movement.

We will resolutely support all the peoples who are fighting to achieve national liberation and social progress, and defend universal peace and security, and further strengthen and develop the friendly and cooperative relations with the peoples of different countries in the world who are championing independence.

The imperialists are trying desperately, putting up a show of power. But the truth is with us and victory is surely in store for us. Let us all, under the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea, fight on dynamically towards a new victory, with confidence in socialism and a high sense of pride in being the revolutionary people.
At this consultative meeting I should like to speak about some problems in economic affairs, such as developing fish farming, undertaking aquaculture on a large scale and increasing salt production.

Above all, fish farming must be developed.

There are many small and large rivers and lakes in our country. Many rivers have become large artificial lakes, because barrages have been built on them. There are over 1,700 reservoirs in our country. Our rivers are mostly linked with the sea, and the lakes, reservoirs, rivers and streams are free from pollution, so they are very favourable for the development of fish culture. If we develop fish culture by making effective use of rivers, streams, lakes and reservoirs, we shall be able to produce a large number of fish to provide the people with regular supplies and enrich their diet.

Because of the great importance of the development of fish culture in raising the standard of living of the people, I have paid close attention to this undertaking for a long time and have ensured that fish farms were built in many parts of the country and a variety of measures were taken to breed a large number of fish.
However, our officials do not energetically promote fish culture, although they talk much about the importance of developing this work.

The Yomju Youth Fish Farm has made no particular progress compared with its incipient days. This fish farm was built on Tasado tidal flat in accordance with the assignment I had given to the chief secretary of the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee. At that time I was choosing a suitable place for a good fish farm in this province. I instructed that a large fish farm be built on Tasa Island, because tidal flats amounting to some 1,000 hectares had been reclaimed there. Following construction of the Yomju Youth Fish Farm I had a chicken farm built near it in order to breed fish with the plankton engendered from the excrement of chickens. If we make use of the microbes engendered from chicken excrement, we shall be able to breed fish well. At first the Yomju Youth Fish Farm raised grey mullet. This fish grows well if it is fed only with plankton. However, at present this fish farm is not producing a large number of fish.

The fish farm in Onchon County and the one in Tudan-dong, Rangnang District, Pyongyang, were also built under my personal guidance. However, afterwards they developed nothing worth mentioning.

The failure to develop fish culture rapidly is mainly because the senior officials of the Administration Council pay little attention to it. At present they are not thinking about how they can produce and supply a large number of fish to the people, nor do they take active measures to breed fish.

The officials of the Fish Farming General Bureau under the Fisheries Commission are not efficient in their guidance of fish culture. At present they make no effort to lay out more fish farms, nor do they take measures to solve the problem of fish feed. The senior officials of this general bureau do not know well how many natural lakes there are in our country. This shows that they do not study their work carefully. Because the officials of the Fish Farming General Bureau neglect their duties without developing their work, the officials of the enterprises under this general bureau also while away their time, doing nothing in
particular. People find life worthwhile only when they do a lot of work, not when they just idle away their time. It is difficult to say that the Fish Farming General Bureau is playing its role properly.

The officials of this general bureau should rectify their shortcomings as soon as possible and work hard to develop fish culture and provide the people with a variety and large quantities of fish.

We should do a good job of incubating spawn and releasing fry in rivers.

If we hatch a large number of fry and set them in rivers, we shall be able to breed a large number of fish without consuming much feed.

We must hatch a large number of warm-water fish fry and release them in rivers.

Cornet fish, carp, crucian carp, river shad, variegated carp and the like grow well in warm water. Cornet fish grow well in all rivers of our country, including the Taedong, Amnok and Jangja. River shad also grow well in rivers. River shad are different from shad. River shad live in fresh water and shad live in seawater. Variegated carp is a freshwater fish similar to silver carp. The upper part of variegated carp is spotted and the lower part is white, but silver carp does not look like this.

One year, on a tour of Changsong, I caught fish with a rod and line in Lake Suphung. At that time a very big eel was caught on one hook and a strange fish was caught on another hook, so I asked those accompanying me to find out the name of the fish from biologists, but they did not know its name. I sent the fish to Kim Il Sung University, so that it could be used for the education of students. Scientists called the fish *kinyomo* (memorial fish) in memory of my having caught the fish and sent it to the university.

Silver carp is bred in large numbers in China. The silver carp in Lake Suphung probably swam there through waterways from the upper reaches of the river on the Chinese side, which flows into the Amnok River. We must hatch many silver carp spawn and release the fry in rivers.

We must also hatch many grass carp spawn, which grow quickly and breed fast.
The spawn of cornet fish, carp, crucian carp, variegated carp, grass carp, silver carp and other fish that live in warm water must be hatched and set free in rivers in warm areas.

Fry living in warm water must be released in the Taedong River in large quantities.

Fish grow well in the Taedong River, which now teems with fish. Although fish were plentiful in this river in the past, they seem to have increased since construction of the West Sea Barrage on this river.

Last year, when April 15 was approaching, I had some soldiers catch fish with a seine at the point where the Hapjang River flows into the Taedong River, in order to provide the soldiers with fish and also discover the number of the fish in the Taedong River. The soldiers caught a ton of fish. The catch contained many big silver carp and grass carp. The Hapjang River also teems with crucian carp and other kinds of fish, probably because reckless fishing is prohibited there. In 1987 I had fish caught with seines in the Taedong River by mobilizing soldiers. Once they caught as much as seven tons in a single day. If we catch fish in the Taedong River by casting nets from boats, we shall land more than by using seines.

The Taedong and Pothong Rivers teem with fish. On holidays a lot of people fish with rods and lines on these rivers. One recent Sunday, while I was making my rounds of Pyongyang in my car, I saw some 50 anglers sitting side by side on the banks of the Pothong River.

The lower reaches of the Taedong River also swarm with fish. Once I fished there with a rod and line, and a lot of grey mullet were caught. The grey mullet in the Taedong River probably come upstream from the sea through the West Sea Barrage. A lot of fish from the West Sea come to this river through the West Sea Barrage.

All the fry hatched at the Tudan Breeding Station must be released in the Taedong River. Some 17 million fry are said to be released annually in this river. This is too few. Hundreds of millions of fry, not just 17 million, must be released annually in such a large river as the Taedong. At this meeting I shall not fix the number of fry to be released annually in the Taedong River. The Tudan Breeding Station
must further develop its work and annually set free hundreds of millions of fry in this river.

We must also release a large number of fry in the Chongchon River. It is good that the spawn of sweetfish are hatched and their fry released in this river. The sweetfish in the Chongchon River are the best-tasting freshwater fish. In ancient times kings or noblemen ate only the sweetfish living in the Chongchon and Taedong Rivers.

A fish similar to the sweetfish of the Chongchon River lives in the East Sea–hard-finned sandfish. It is said that in olden days the hard-finned sandfish in the East Sea was called catfish. A king was once taking shelter from a revolt in an east coast area. He had not eaten for several days because his provisions had run out. One day his subjects caught some catfish in the sea, cooked them and offered them to the king. He found them very delicious and continued to eat this fish. The king instructed that the catfish be called *Uno* (sweetfish–Tr.), because he had benefited from it during the revolt. (Benefit is pronounced *unhye* in Korean–Tr.) Later, back in his royal palace, the king asked his subjects to bring him the delicious sweetfish he had eaten when he was staying in the east coast area, so his subjects brought some sweetfish from the East Sea, prepared them well and offered them to the king. However, the king found them less tasty than those he had eaten during the revolt, so he ordered them taken back to the sea, roaring as to why they were not tasty, whereas the sweetfish he had eaten in the east coast area were very delicious. It is said that from then on the catfish living in the East Sea began to be called *torumegi* (fish sent back to the sea). We must carefully protect the sweetfish in the Chongchon River, because it is a good, delicious fish. In order to carefully protect the sweetfish in the Chongchon River, I told the officials, who suggested constructing a dam for a power station on the river, not to build it on the lower reaches of the river from Kujang.

We must also release large quantities of fry into Lakes Tongjong, Sijung and Samil.

Foreign capitalists are willing to come to our country to develop Mt. Kumgang into a tourist resort. If we develop this mountain into a
tourist resort in cooperation with them, we can let foreign visitors fish with rods and lines on these lakes. To do so, we must release large quantities of fry into those lakes from now on.

We must also let cold-water fish hatch spawn in large quantities and release their fry into rivers.

We should hatch a large number of spawn of char, rainbow trout, trout, chub, grayling and whitefish, which live in cold water.

Both char and rainbow trout are good fish. It is said that Japanese capitalists will buy good fish regardless of price in order to live long. They are said to buy only char, although this fish is much more expensive than rainbow trout. In Japan the price of one kilogramme of char is reportedly five times that of rainbow trout.

The Soviet people also regard char as a delicious and nutritious fish. I visited the Soviet Union during the anti-Japanese armed struggle and my hosts arranged a banquet that included a dish made from char. During the meal they asked me whether there was char in Korea, too. I told them: There are a lot of char in Korea. While fighting the Japanese imperialists in the mountains, we caught and ate many char. Koreans salt and roast char. They said: Is that so? We know only one method of preparing char. We butter and roast it.

We must also hatch the spawn of trout and release them into rivers. There is no need to hesitate to raise the fry of trout and release them into rivers on the ground that this fish lives in the sea. After living in the sea, trout swim upstream along the rivers, as far as their upper reaches, in early summer. Therefore we can catch trout when they come along the rivers from the sea. We must consider in detail into which river we should release the fry hatched from the trout spawn.

We must also let *Hucho ishikawai* hatch spawn and release them into rivers. *Hucho ishikawai* can be said to be a native fish of our country. The fish reportedly began to be called *jongjang* fish after it ate an old man named Jong Jang, who went to a river one day to fish. While he was fishing, he drowned. A large fish is said to have eaten him. Since then the fish has been called *jongjang* fish.

*Hucho ishikawai* is fond of eating rainbow trout. Last year I
inspected the place where *Hucho ishikawai* are raised in company with Luise Rinser, a woman writer of West Germany. One of the fish there weighed 17 kg. When a rainbow trout was given to it, the fish ate the whole of it. Some 20 rainbow trout were given to the fish, and it killed and ate all of them in a short time. Seeing this, Luise Rinser said that the fish was more horrible than Hitler of fascist Germany and advised me not to breed it.

Whitefish is a little different from *Hucho ishikawai*.

Last year when I stopped off at Khabarovsk in the Soviet Union on the way back from my visit to Mongolia, my hosts put a dish made from whitefish on the banquet table. Whitefish also lives in the Heilong River of China.

We must hatch the spawn of char, rainbow trout, trout, whitefish, grayling, *Hucho ishikawai* and other cold-water fish and release the fry into rivers where cold water flows. In the northern area of our country many rivers flow along the deep mountain valleys adjoining Mt. Paektu. It is quite possible to raise cold-water fish there. We should release and raise cold-water fish in the rivers and streams in deep mountain valleys of North and South Hamgyong Provinces, including the river in Paegam, the river in the direction of Kwanmo Peak and the rivers in the deep mountain valleys of Kilju.

In order to hatch a large number of fish spawn, we must reasonably site and properly lay out hatcheries. This is the way to hatch the fish spawn well without dispersing the technicians and to raise their sense of responsibility. It is not desirable to spread out hatcheries in various places, because the technicians will then have to be dispersed.

There are reportedly some 500 spawn-hatching technicians in the Fish Farming General Bureau. This is not a small force. It is enough to hatch large quantities of fish spawn. In developing fish farming hatching technicians are most important. It is laudable that the Fish Farming General Bureau has trained 500 hatching technicians, although it has not been successful in other work.

Hatcheries must be laid out at the fish farming stations in the east coast area, west coast area and Ryanggang Province. It is advisable to
set up hatcheries in many places on the east coast.

The hatcheries to be laid out in Ryanggang Province must hatch the spawn of cold-water fish, such as char and whitefish. These fish cannot live in warm water. The water temperature is six degrees during the spawning season of char. Ryanggang Province is most suitable for this. When I measured the temperature of the water in Lake Samji when I was catching char with a rod and line, it was 6° to 7°.

The fish farming stations should carefully teach the officials concerned how to hatch the spawn of a variety of fish, such as grey mullet and eels, and breed the fry. It will be a little difficult to hatch the spawn of cold-water fish such as char, rainbow trout, whitefish and grayling and raise their fry. However, this job will not be so difficult if you manage it efficiently.

Several summers ago I had a pisciculturist taken to Lake Samji to study the method of hatching the spawn of char and raising their fry. In a comparatively small room he contrived the method of hatching the spawn of char and raising their fry. Although he contrived the method of hatching the spawn of char in a short time, he had a lot of trouble contriving the feed to be fed to the fry until they grew large enough to be released into the river. The young char hatched naturally in the river live on Faldermann. It is not easy to breed artificially hatched young char on artificially made feed. The inappropriate feed results in a large number of young char dying. Nevertheless, the pisciculturist on Lake Samji managed to accustom young char to processed feed after about two years. He is efficient in both hatching the spawn of char and breeding their fry. He has raised and released 70,000 young char into the river. In addition to char, he has hatched the spawn of grayling and whitefish and raised their fry. On the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the DPRK I saw that an order was awarded to him, highly appreciating his study of the method of hatching the spawn of cold-water fish and breeding their fry.

In order to raise large quantities of fry, we must solve the problem of feed. Until the young fish are released into rivers or lakes after one year, we must breed them artificially and carefully, providing them
with feed. Only then will the fry grow well, preying on the feed in rivers as they please.

It is advisable to solve the problem of feed needed for raising young fish by importing cereals with money earned by an anglers’ association.

One European country is said to be solving the problem of feed for young fish with money earned by its Society of Anglers. In that country only the members of this society are allowed to catch fish with a rod and line. The society issues membership cards to its members and collects monthly membership fees, which the state spends on buying the feed needed for breeding fry.

We must also organize an angling fans’ association, issue membership cards and regularly collect fees from members. In future we must authorize only members of this association to fish with a rod and line. This will both solve the feed problem for young fish and exercise control over angling by nonmembers of the association. There is no reason to allow anglers to catch fish bred on state-financed feed without charging a single penny. In future the angling fans’ association must fix the monthly membership fee, the amount of fish its members are allowed to catch each time, and the amount of money they should pay for a catch exceeding the limit. It would seem a good idea to issue a presidential decree, a decision of the Central People’s Committee or a decision of the Administration Council with regard to angling.

The Fish Farming General Bureau must provide the feed needed for breeding parent fish and fry at large fish farms. Feed must be supplied only for raising spawning fish and fry, not for breeding fish to be caught for food after they have grown to a certain size. The fish fed on artificially processed feed at fish farms are not tasty. Only when fish are released into rivers, are they delicious, because they eat microbes and various insects, including butterflies, swimming about in various places.

If fish feed is to be imported, it must be bought with money the Fish Farming General Bureau has earned by exporting fish. We must buy feed for chickens or ducks and supply it to chicken or duck farms near
the fish farms rather than buy feed for fish to be raised on fish farms for food.

Transport facilities for releasing fry into rivers, streams and lakes must be provided. If the Fish Farming General Bureau requests, helicopters can be mobilized for this purpose. If helicopters are available, the fish farms will be able to promptly set young fish free in rivers, streams and lakes.

The Fish Farming General Bureau must conduct an experiment on saltwater fish farming.

A solution must be found to the problem of raising rainbow trout in sea water. Sea water abounds in microbes, so if we raise rainbow trout in sea water, we shall be able to breed large quantities without having to use feed. In former days there was a great deal of talk about raising rainbow trout in sea water, but all this seems to have been abandoned now. You must discuss in detail raising rainbow trout in sea water and work out a plan. Judging by the fact that the plan for fish farming has not incorporated this question, it has not been worked out properly. Because specialists in fish farming are taking part in this meeting, it is advisable to discuss in detail the plan for breeding rainbow trout in sea water.

It is also possible to cultivate grey mullet in sea water. I was told that the Onchon Fish Farming Station made a pond by drawing sea water and put some 100 grey mullet there, and last summer thousands of fry were spawned. Now the pond is said to be swarming with young grey mullet.

We must also take measures to catch fish in rivers and lakes and supply them to the people.

The fish farming sector must organize a station engaged in catching fish in rivers and lakes and fix both the amount and size of the fish that must be caught every month. A station must be formed on the Taedong River, for instance, which will take charge of catching big fish and supplying them to Pyongyang. The monthly quantity of fish to be caught by this station as well as the size of the knots of the nets to be used must also be fixed so that this station will catch only big fish.
If we catch fish in the Taedong River, we shall be able to sell some in the stores of Pyongyang and also send some to hotels. It will be very good if restaurants in Pyongyang sell the famous Pyongyang grey-mullet soup or crucian-carp soup. As I have already requested it, restaurants in Pyongyang now sell grey-mullet soup to citizens.

Restaurants in Pyongyang must cook grey-mullet soup well, so that it has its own special taste. It is said that restaurants in Pyongyang now put spiced soy sauce mixed with ground chilli, garlic and eggs in grey-mullet soup. If they do so, the soup cannot have its own special taste. If spiced soy sauce mixed with ground chilli and garlic is put into grey-mullet soup, the soup will be no different from the flatfish pepper-pot soup that is a favourite with the people in North and South Hamgyong Provinces. If you sell grey-mullet soup mixed with spiced soy sauce to anyone fairly familiar with this soup, you may expose yourselves to ridicule. When cooking grey-mullet soup, you must first put cold water into a large pot and then the cuts of scaled and cleanly washed grey mullet. Several grains of black pepper wrapped in thin cloth are added to the pot. The meat must be boiled well. Because grey mullet is a fatty fish, if it is well boiled, a lot of yellow fat floats on the surface of the soup. If you season the meat after it is thoroughly boiled, put broth into a bowl and then add pieces of grey mullet, you will get delicious grey-mullet soup. During her stay in our country Luise Rinser was served grey-mullet soup twice. After tasting it, she requested that she frequently be served this soup.

Crucian-carp soup is also tasty if it is cooked well. The Chinese are efficient in cooking this soup. They boil crucian carp in cold water the way Koreans boil grey mullet. When I visited China once, I, in company with Zhou En-lai, inspected Xihu in Hangzhou, where I was served crucian-carp soup. Cold water was put into small stone pots with some gutted crucian carp and several grains of black pepper; then the pots were covered, put into a cauldron and steamed. Each of us was then served with a small pot containing crucian carp and broth. Zhou En-lai told me that that kind of crucian-carp soup was a speciality of Xihu. Crucian-carp soup has its own taste only when it is cooked like
grey-mullet soup. It does not have its own taste if anything is put into it thoughtlessly.

Cooks must be taught how to make various foods and dishes, including grey-mullet soup and crucian-carp soup. Comrade Kim Jong Il told me that a new man has been made president of the National Association of Cooks and that the association will regularly disseminate the methods of cooking a variety of dishes. I believe many good dishes will be served at the restaurants in Pyongyang in the near future.

Rivers, streams and lakes must be kept free from pollution, because in future fish farming will have to be undertaken on a large scale there.

People may catch and eat large numbers of shellfish, crabs, crayfish and the like in the rivers, streams and lakes. Therefore, you must strictly examine whether they carry distome.

There are many shellfish and crabs in the Taedong River. I have been told that inhabitants of the counties and districts neighbouring Pyongyang, including Kangdong and Sangwon Counties, catch crabs in the river, some of which they boil and eat and some of which they preserve in salt for sale. When I was young, I frequently caught crabs with my uncle in the Sunhwa River. Catching crabs in the Taedong River is not difficult. All you need to do is to hang fully steamed sorghum ears and stones at regular intervals on a long rope and fix the two ends of the rope on the banks of the river. Then as you cross the river in a boat, you raise the rope and shake off the crabs clinging to the sorghum ears into the boat. If you use this method, you can catch a large number during a single night–enough, if preserved in salt, to eat for a whole year. Now that people catch crabs in the Taedong River and eat them, serious consequences will result if these crabs carry distomiasis. You must thoroughly examine the crabs in the Taedong River. Many years ago I met with officials of the Jaeryong area on my guidance tour of the area. During the meeting many people coughed. When I returned to Pyongyang from the area, I told the Minister of Public Health to examine if the crabs living in the Jaeryong River were carrying distomiasis. According to the inspection of public health
workers, crabs in this river as well as in some other rivers were carrying distomiasis. Therefore I instructed that a decision prohibiting the catching and eating of freshwater crabs, crayfish, and mud snails be adopted and issued. Since inhabitants of areas along the Taedong River are not affected in any way by the crabs they catch in the river and eat, it seems that these crabs do not carry distome. Nevertheless, we must not feel at ease.

In future we must make it a rule to examine whether the crabs, crayfish, mud snails, shellfish and the like that live in fresh water carry distome.

Cooperative farms must raise fish by making use of ponds or puddles. It would be very good if each cooperative farm bred just a small number of fish.

In 1958, on my way to Vietnam, I stopped in China, and Zhou En-lai accompanied me as far as Guangdong Province by plane. As I looked down while passing over the Shaoxing area in Jiangsu Province, I saw a pool near every house. There were many such pools. I asked Zhou En-lai what the pools were for, and he said they were used for raising fish. He told me: Jiangsu Province has limited crop area and a large population, so that scarcely 1,000 phyong of arable land is allotted to each household. Therefore, the peasants obtain provisions for one year if they engage only in farming, so they dig a pool to raise fish for market. Beside the pond or pool they build a pigsty under a toilet. The pigs eat the dung and the pig excrement flows to the pond or pool, engendering a large quantity of microbes. The fish grow well by eating these microbes. The peasants raise fish at three different depths. In the shallow section fish such as silver carp eat plankton; at medium depths fish are cultivated that eat microbes floating there, and in the lower section fish are raised that eat microbes living on the bottom. A large number of fish can be raised if bred at three different depths like this. Each peasant household earns some 1,000 yuan a year by selling the fish. With this money they buy salt, cooking oil, sweets, cakes and a variety of consumer goods.

I asked Zhou En-lai what the peasants did with the pigs they raised,
and he replied that each peasant household raised two or three pigs a year for their own consumption.

People in Jiangsu Province, China, live on rice, meat and vegetables and raise fish to earn money. Since olden times the Chinese have called the areas of Jiangsu and Zhejiang Provinces the land of fish and rice, signifying that these provinces were producing plenty of fish and rice. It seems that in China areas south of the Yangtze River abound in fish.

One year, on a tour of the Thaegam Cooperative Farm, Sunan District, Pyongyang, I told its management board chairman to try to raise fish by making ponds or pools the way the Chinese did, since his farm was the Korea-China Friendship Cooperative Farm. Later I was told that the cooperative farm was raising fish on a large scale.

We must encourage cooperative farms to raise fish in ponds or pools.

Cooperative farms have wetlands not suitable to be used as paddy fields, as well as many ponds and pools and abandoned fish farms. They will be able to breed a large number of fish if they turn all these into fish farms, as the Thaegam Cooperative Farm has done. Several hundred fish can be raised in a small pond or pool. From now on cooperative farms must raise fish to supply to their members and sell the remainder at the peasant market.

You must work out a good plan for the development of fish breeding. You must accurately consider the kinds of fish whose spawn must be hatched, where to lay out hatcheries and what their size must be, as well as the amount of fish that can be allowed to be caught from each river and lake. For instance, you must consider the amount of fish that can be caught from the Taedong River annually provided such and such an amount of fry is released there, and you must determine this amount accurately, lest the resources of fish dwindle.

We must separate the Fish Farming General Bureau from the Fisheries Commission and place it under the direct control of the Administration Council. At present the senior officials of the Fisheries Commission cannot properly look after the work of the Fish Farming
General Bureau, so it is impossible to develop fish farming as long as this general bureau is kept under the Fisheries Commission.

To proceed. We must undertake aquaculture and pelagic fishing on a large scale.

We must be efficient in aquaculture and pelagic fishing if we are to supply an adequate amount of a variety of seafoods to the people.

We must cultivate a large amount of mussels. The most important thing in saltwater farming is to cultivate mussels on a wide scale. Only when large quantities of mussels are raised, shall we be able to provide a sufficient amount of protein to the children and make them tall and strong. Making children tall and strong is a very important matter for the future of the country and nation.

In view of the importance of rearing children to be tall and strong, I have emphasized this matter at every opportunity.

Nevertheless, at present the work of providing children with protein and other necessary nutriments is not done well. We have built many factories producing a variety of children’s food, including powdered vegetables, but we are still unable to fully meet the demand for these things. If we are to bring up children well, we must provide them with a large amount of eggs, milk, bean curd and the like, which contain a lot of protein. However, our country produces neither a large amount of milk nor great quantities of beans because of the limited crop area.

In our country the state is responsible for bringing up the children at creches and kindergartens, so we must rear them to be tall and strong. To this end, we must solve the problem of protein by every possible means. Protein is the most important thing in the growth of children.

The best solution to the problem of protein is to cultivate mussels on a large scale. We can also solve the problem of protein by building chicken farms or catching large quantities of fish, but this is not easy. In our present situation an effective way of solving this problem is to raise mussels on a wide scale.

We must succeed in the cultivation of mussels and supply large quantities to children. Our intention to raise mussels on a large scale is not aimed at earning foreign currency, but at making children strong.
Mussels contain a variety of nutritive elements needed for the growth of children, such as protein and calcium. If children eat a lot of mussels, they can grow strong.

We must not regard the breeding of mussels as merely a matter of producing marine products, but as important to making children strong, affecting the future of our revolution and our nation, and raise them on a large scale.

In the immediate future we must create 10,000 hectares of farms for the breeding of mussels.

For some three years I have been stressing the need to cultivate mussels on a large scale, but this work has not been done properly. Fishing industry officials should not complain about a shortage of rafts and ropes, but create 10,000 hectares of farms for the cultivation of mussels by taking whatever measures are needed.

We can produce one million tons of mussels in this area of farms. That reduces to about 400,000 tons of meat. It will be very good if we provide this amount of mussel meat to children. If we supply it not only to children but also to adults, it is sufficient for a daily supply of about 60 grammes per capita. Sixty grammes of mussel meat is nearly equal to the amount of protein a man needs every day. One egg weighs about 50 grammes, so 60 grammes of mussel meat is tantamount to eating one egg.

It is not very difficult to breed mussels in 10,000 hectares of farms. It is easy to raise them, because they are viable and grow quickly. All that is needed for the breeding of mussels is to float rafts on the sea water and stretch ropes.

It is much easier to obtain protein by laying out 10,000 hectares of mussel farms than by building chicken farms.

Mussel farms must be laid out in good places such as bays. They may be developed in the sea, but this may entail large expense. Strong ropes must be used when laying out mussel farms. Otherwise, they will not withstand the weight of the masses of mussels hanging on them or violent waves. The rafts must also be placed at appropriate intervals. There is no need to place them too close to each other.
Sufficient materials needed for the cultivation of mussels must be provided. The breeding of mussels can succeed only when an investment in materials is made. The work will not proceed well if you pay only lip service to the need to undertake this project without providing anything. Some materials needed for the breeding of mussels must be produced domestically and others must be imported. The foreign currency needed for importing the materials must be earned by ourselves. You must import good materials and not buy materials heedlessly.

If we are to raise mussels on a wide scale, we must know well how to cultivate them. We can succeed in their cultivation only if we raise them in a scientific way. We cannot succeed if we conduct this work in a haphazard manner. It would be a good idea to show the officials concerned the scientific film *How to Breed Kelp and Mussels*. This will inform them of the method of cultivating mussels. This film was once shown on TV. However, it is possible that the officials did not watch it very attentively. Therefore, it would be a good idea for them to see it again.

If children are provided with a large amount of mussel meat and lysine bread by building a lysine factory, as well as with soya milk, rice and bean paste soup, they will grow tall and sturdy with their bones getting stronger.

We should raise mussels on a large scale, confident that we can solve the problem of protein completely if we lay out 10,000 hectares of mussel farms.

We must be efficient in the cultivation of kelp.

At present we are cultivating kelp on some 6,000 hectares of farms. In future we must enlarge the area to 10,000 hectares. This is a reasonable area. If we do so, we shall be able to produce one million tons of kelp. We can provide 500,000 tons to our people and export the remaining 500,000 tons.

With half a million tons of kelp, 25 kg per capita can be supplied every year. Kelp is good for health, for elderly people in particular. If they eat a lot of kelp, this will prevent arteriosclerosis.
We can earn a large amount of foreign currency if we export half a million tons of kelp. It will be good if we import the edible oil, soybeans and other things we need by selling this amount of kelp. We can import any amount of these things. It would also be good to buy sardine oil in exchange for kelp, so we can make large quantities of toilet soap and laundry soap for the people. It is advisable not to buy fishing tackle with the money earned by selling kelp. We must buy either foodstuffs or the raw materials and other necessities needed for the production of foodstuffs, and consumer goods with the money we earn by selling foodstuffs.

I think it best to buy cooking oil with the money we earn by exporting kelp.

We must also cultivate shrimp.

Shrimp are very good for children, because they contain a large amount of calcium. If we flour shrimp to make cakes and encourage children to eat them, their bones will be stronger and they will grow tall quickly. Foreigners also make shrimp cakes and encourage children to eat them.

We must cultivate both large and small shrimp. Small shrimp are also reasonably tasty and are used as bait in angling. We must raise shrimp not only in the sea, but also, on a wide scale, in rivers and lakes.

We must do pelagic fishing on a large scale.

We can form deep-sea fishing fleets and go to the Bering Sea of the Soviet Union and to the seas off Iran or India. Iranians tell us we can catch as many fish as we like in the seas off their country and propose cooperation in this undertaking. This is gratifying. However, at present the officials in the fishing sector are not working enthusiastically to catch fish in the seas off Iran, although they leave many fishing vessels idle. The officials of the fishing industry claim a shortage of oil. They will be quite able to solve the problem of oil on their own if they land large quantities of fish in the waters off Iran and sell the catch to that country.

It is a good idea for the Fisheries Commission to solve the problem of oil on its own by catching fish in the waters off Iran and earning
foreign currency. If this commission dispatches a large number of fishing vessels to the waters off Iran and engages in large-scale fishing there, it will be able to earn tens of millions of dollars annually. It is advisable to dispatch not only 3,750-ton fishing vessels, but also 1,000-ton vessels and conduct fishing operations in a big way.

It is all right to engage in large-scale pelagic fishing in the waters off Iran, but there is no need to do so in the waters off African countries that are farther away. African countries are distant and also have unfavourable conditions. Therefore, if we catch fish in the waters off these countries, we shall have to pay a lot for oil and, in the final analysis, this will not pay off for us.

If we are to be successful in pelagic fishing, we must build many fishing vessels, both 3,750-ton and 1,000-ton vessels. In future it would be a good idea to serialize the building of 1,000-ton fishing vessels with domestic engines.

At present the pollack catch is low. Therefore, it is necessary for you to examine the fishing problem and take appropriate measures. You must accurately calculate the amounts of pollack, sardine and other kinds of fish that must be caught and properly fix the amount of the catch of these kinds of fish.

We intend to issue a presidential decree on conservation of the country’s marine resources. There are various divergences in this work. In the presidential decree we intend to spell out in detail what must be done for the conservation of our marine resources.

To proceed. We must strives to increase the production of salt.

Salt is an important raw material that is indispensable for development of the chemical and food industries. Without salt we cannot make chemical products such as vinyl chloride or bean mash or soy sauce. If salt runs out, this will create great difficulties in people’s diets.

The demand for salt continues to increase. When we were working out the Third Seven-Year Plan, the amount of salt needed by the whole nation in 1993 was envisaged to be about 1.8 million tons. In future this amount will increase still further. If we are to earn a large sum of
foreign currency, the chemical industry must mass-produce vinyl chloride and caustic soda. To this end, sufficient salt should be supplied.

The amount of salt needed for our population was 80,000 tons in the days immediately after liberation, but it has increased to 320,000 tons now.

One day in February 1946, soon after I started my work as Chairman of the Provisional People’s Committee of North Korea, I was informed of a shortage of salt needed for making bean mash and soy sauce, so I inquired as to the amount of salt needed for a single year, and I was told 80,000 tons. In those days the population of north Korea was about 8 million, so the figure 80,000 tons was based on the assumption that everyone would consume 10 kg of salt a year, or 27 to 28 grammes daily.

If 320,000 tons of salt are needed for our population every year, this means that each person consumes more than 40 grammes of salt a day. This amount seems a little much. I think a man eats no more than 10 grammes of salt a day. I have been told that the calculation of over 40 grammes of salt as the daily consumption per capita includes the amount needed for making soy sauce and bean mash and for pickling vegetables. Even so, the amount seems a bit much.

If we estimate that in future we shall need two million tons of salt annually in all, it will not be easy to provide this amount. Our officials say that we can buy salt from any country once we have money. However, it is easier said than done.

The question has been raised of mining rock salt in a foreign country, but no detailed agreement has been reached on this matter. Even if an agreement is reached with a country, it will not be easy to develop a salt mine, mine rock salt and ship it. It may be better to solve the problem of salt by increasing the area of our own salt ponds than by developing a salt mine in a foreign country. Last year we intended to expand the area of our salt ponds, but we postponed the project, because the question was raised of developing a salt mine in a foreign country. I think this was a mistake. We have lost about one year
because of our neglect of laying out salt ponds under the pretext of developing a salt mine in a foreign country.

Salt is important and the supply must not run out. Therefore, we must not depend on imports. We must domestically produce at least 1 to 1.5 million tons of salt annually.

If we are to increase salt production, we should lay out more salt ponds. Because salt production is considerably short of the need, we cannot meet demand unless we expand the area of salt ponds.

During the period of the Third Seven-Year Plan we must create some 3,000 additional hectares of salt ponds.

It is advisable to lay out the new salt ponds in the Onchon area. Salt ponds must be laid out in places where the sea water is highly saline and where there is light rainfall and much sunshine. The Onchon area has very favourable conditions for laying out salt ponds. It has the least rain in our country. My inspection of that area over the past several decades has discovered that not only little rain falls in that area, but the temperature is comparatively high. Because the temperature in winter is high, an experiment has been conducted on growing persimmon trees there. The sea water off Onchon is highly saline. Now that the West Sea Barrage has been built, the salinity may increase.

I think it would be a good idea to lay out the 3,000 hectares of new salt ponds in the area of Kwangryang Bay. Since there is a salt bed in Kwangryang Bay, it will be easy to lay out another salt bed in the neighbourhood.

When the Kumsong tideland, now being built in the neighbourhood of Kwangryang Bay by soldiers of the People’s Army, is completed, it may be turned into salt ponds. If the sea water in the neighbourhood of the Kumsong tideland is not much affected by the fresh water of the Taedong River, there is no harm in building a salt bed there. You should further discuss the question of laying out a new salt bed in the Kumsong tideland.

The newly reclaimed Ungdo tideland can be made into salt fields, because little rain falls in the Unnyul area, South Hwanghae Province. However, if the layout and channels are under way to use the tidal flats
as paddy fields, they must be made into paddy fields as planned.

The Ongjin peninsula is far from the estuary of the river, so the sea water around it is highly saline, but this area is unsuitable for laying out a salt pond, because much rain falls there. For over 40 years, since I worked as Chairman of the Provisional People’s Committee of North Korea soon after liberation up to now, I have continually been analyzing weather forecasts. According to my analysis, much rain and snow fall in the central region of our country, which links Ongjin, South Hwanghae Province, and the areas of Ichon and Mt. Kumgang of Kangwon Province. In that region there is much snow and rain in spring, violent typhoons and much rain in summer, and a lot of snow in winter. Therefore, it is not desirable to develop salt ponds in the Ongjin area.

We must make a considerable investment to lay out an additional 3,000 hectares of salt ponds. When I once visited the Kwangryangman Saltworks, I calculated the amount of money needed for developing a salt pond, and it turned out that a lot of money was needed. To lay out salt ponds, we have to make tidal flats like paddy fields, lay tiles in them, dig irrigation ditches and install water pumps in many places. We must also lay cableways for carrying salt and electric wires. Water pumps will be used in many places on the vast salt ponds, so a large amount of electric wire will have to be laid to carry electricity to these pumps.

The 3,000 hectares of salt ponds must not be laid out all at once, but in several stages, under an annual plan, because salt ponds require a large amount of manpower and considerable investment. The new salt ponds must be laid out under an annual plan and completed by the end of the Third Seven-Year Plan.

To increase salt production, we must also augment the per-hectare salt output.

It is better to augment the per-hectare salt output than to extend the area of salt fields. The most important thing in salt production is to increase the per-hectare salt output by modernizing the technique and method of producing salt, without expanding the area of salt fields.
At present the per-hectare salt output at our saltworks is not very high. I have been told that many workteams produced 120 tons of salt per hectare last year. This was because the weather was exceptionally dry last year. Agriculture and many other sectors of the national economy experienced difficulties because of the extremely dry weather, but salt production increased output. Salt production likes dry weather.

The low per-hectare output of salt is attributable to the underdevelopment of the technique and method of salt production. Our salt production skills and method have had no development worth mentioning. This is partly ascribable to the poor work of the officials in this sector, but it is mainly due to the inefficient guidance given to this sector, the small investment made in it, and the lack of enthusiasm on the part of the officials concerned to introduce modern techniques. The failure of the salt production sector to attain high development also seems to be attributable to its structure not being reasonable enough to give efficient guidance.

The salt production sector must strive to improve the technique and method of producing salt and increase the per-hectare output.

To this end we must build many preliminary evaporating ponds. The low per-hectare output of salt at saltworks is largely due to the small number of these ponds. Salt must be produced by building preliminary evaporating ponds, filling them with sea water and increasing its salinity through natural evaporation, after which the water must be brought into the salt fields. Instead, salt is produced by bringing sea water, which is not salty enough, directly into the salt fields. The production cycle is thus long, and thus the per-hectare output is small. Once we have preliminary evaporating ponds, we shall be able to reduce the production cycle and increase the per-hectare salt output, because it will be possible to fill the salt fields with highly saline sea water. If sea water is put into preliminary evaporating ponds, its salinity will quickly increase, because it will evaporate immediately.

I have been told that if preliminary evaporating ponds are built in
some 40 per cent of the area of salt fields, it will be possible to produce salt once in every five days instead of seven days. I believe it will be possible to shorten the time if we work well. The officials of the General Bureau of the Salt Industry do not know by how many days the cycle of salt production can be reduced and how much the salt output will increase if preliminary evaporating ponds are built in some 40 per cent of the total area of salt fields. Judging from this, it seems that they do not study their work carefully. If we make many preliminary evaporating ponds, we shall be able to produce more than 150 tons of salt per hectare.

Other countries increase salt output by building preliminary evaporating ponds on a wide scale. It was reported that the per-hectare output of salt was high in a certain country, so I inquired into the matter. The people in that country fill many preliminary evaporating ponds with sea water to increase its salinity, after which the water is drawn into the salt fields. Another method they apply is to lay black tiles on salt ponds. That is all they do.

To increase salt output, it is much easier to make preliminary evaporating ponds than to expand the area of salt fields. New salt fields require a great deal of work, such as laying tiles and cableways. However, all that is needed to build preliminary evaporating ponds is to build dykes on all sides and lay the pumps for drawing sea water into the salt fields. Building preliminary evaporating ponds is faster and needs less manpower and fewer materials than laying out new salt fields. The dykes of preliminary evaporating ponds can be built easily, because all that is needed is to make box caissons with cement, transport them by ship and sink them in places like the neck of the rapids where the tide passes. Using box caissons is the quickest and best way of building preliminary evaporating ponds or reclaiming tidal flats. We could build the West Sea Barrage in a short time, because we used the method of sinking box caissons into the water in this project.

Whether preliminary evaporating ponds are built speedily or not depends on the supply of cement needed for making box caissons. Until now we have been unable to supply the cement needed for
making box caissons because of the construction projects related to the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students, but in future we shall be able to supply as much as needed.

Increasing salt output by building preliminary evaporating ponds is good in many respects, so I have stressed this matter for a long time. Probably I referred to the need to build a large number of preliminary evaporating ponds when I visited the Kwangryangman Saltworks after the war. In those days there was a serious shortage of salt, so to find a solution to this problem, I went to the saltworks with Comrade Jong Jun Thaek and held a meeting with its workers all night.

We must build some 4,000 hectares of preliminary evaporating ponds.

We intend to lay out a total of 10,000 hectares of salt fields, so preliminary evaporating ponds should be built on a scale to produce 150 tons of salt per hectare from these salt fields. The senior officials of the General Bureau of the Salt Industry say that they will produce 160 tons of salt per hectare from the salt fields provided the preliminary evaporating ponds amount to 40 per cent of the total area of salt fields. Therefore, it is advisable to lay out 4,000 hectares as preliminary evaporating ponds. The new preliminary evaporating ponds should be built in the neighbourhood of the Kumsong tideland, because we plan to turn this tideland into salt fields. We intend to reclaim 300,000 hectares of tidal flats, so there will be no difficulty in laying out some 4,000 hectares of preliminary evaporating ponds.

The 915-hectare tidal flats in Kwangryang Bay should also be made into preliminary evaporating ponds. As a matter of fact, we could turn these tidal flats into paddy fields for farming, for the soil there is good. We should solve the problem of salt through increase in per-hectare output by modernizing existing salt fields as far as possible and turn the newly reclaimed tidal flats into paddy fields for farming. Nevertheless, we intend to lay out additional salt fields and preliminary evaporating ponds, because it is impossible to solve the salt problem completely with the existing salt fields alone. Therefore, it will be a good idea to make the 915-hectare tidal flats in Kwangryang Bay into
preliminary evaporating ponds instead of turning them into paddy fields. We could also turn these tidal flats into salt fields. In that case we would be able to produce about 90,000 tons of salt at the rate of 100 tons per hectare. This is not a small amount. Although we could make these tidal flats into salt fields, in the prevailing situation it is better to turn them into preliminary evaporating ponds as soon as possible and augment the per-hectare salt output. If the 915 hectares of tidal flats are made into preliminary evaporating ponds, it will be possible to produce 120 to 130 tons of salt per hectare from the salt fields in their neighbourhood. This may be as good as laying out salt fields in these tidal flats. We shall have to lay out preliminary evaporating ponds for the salt fields in Kwangryang Bay, so it seems to me that it would be better to make these ponds in the 915-hectare tidal flats in this bay than to lay them out elsewhere and fill the salt fields with highly saline sea water.

If we are to increase the per-hectare salt output, we should lay black tiles on the salt ponds. This will make it possible to evaporate sea water quickly and collect salt easily. In laying out salt fields it is more difficult to realign the land well and lay tiles than to build embankments to wall off the sea. In this sense, the most important thing in building salt fields is to realign the land and lay tiles.

To lay tiles on salt ponds, we shall have to increase their production. The present annual production capacity of black tiles needed for salt ponds is 200,000 square metres. This is not enough. One hectare of salt ponds needs 1,000 square metres of tiles, so 200,000 square metres are enough for only 200 hectares. With this annual production of tiles, there is no knowing when it will be possible to lay them on all the new salt ponds.

We must also lay natural slate on salt ponds instead of tiles. If we lay only tiles on salt ponds, we shall not be able to build them in a short time. They say natural slate has no pronged layers like tile, so laying it on salt ponds allows muddy water to rise each time one treads on it. Pronged layers can be put under the slate. There is no reason why
pronged layers cannot be made under natural slates. Natural slate will be no different from tile if one side is smooth and pronged layers are made on the other side.

We should mechanize salt production. We should lay cableways in salt fields and make salt collectors. Salt collectors can be made so they collect salt directly in the salt fields or collect it by sweeping the whole length and width of the salt fields, moving along the ridges of the fields. If we are to make good salt collectors, we should send mechanical researchers.

If we increase the area of salt fields to 10,000 hectares by laying out an additional 3,000 hectares and build 4,000 hectares of preliminary evaporating ponds, we shall be able to produce about 1.5 million tons of salt in these salt fields alone. If we build preliminary evaporating ponds amounting to 40 per cent of the main salt fields, we shall be able to produce 1.5 million tons of salt in 10,000 hectares of salt fields at the rate of 150 tons per hectare. The salt production sector should annually produce 1.5 million tons of salt from 10,000 hectares of salt fields and 4,000 hectares of preliminary evaporating ponds.

We must build a salt factory that will annually produce 200,000 tons of salt by industrial methods. Then we shall be able to produce a total of 1.7 million tons of salt if we add the 1.5 million tons produced in the salt fields. This amount will be enough to supply to our population and bean mash and soy sauce factories without causing them difficulties.

If domestic output of salt does not meet demand, we should import the amount needed by exporting chemical goods. From now on the Ministry of the Chemical Industry should import salt with the money it earns by selling chemical goods and produce caustic soda needed for this industry.

We should separate the General Bureau of the Salt Industry from the Ministry of the Chemical Industry and place it under the direct control of the Administration Council. At present this general bureau belongs to the Ministry of the Chemical Industry, but there is no need for this. The ministry does not give efficient guidance to the general
bureau. It neither supplies anything worth mentioning to the general bureau nor works hard to develop the salt industry. The General Bureau of the Salt Industry is secondary to the Ministry of the Chemical Industry.

Because this general bureau belongs to the Ministry of the Chemical Industry, its senior officials find it hard to work. If something needs to be solved by the Premier, they cannot meet him directly to submit the matter to him, but only take it to the Minister of the Chemical Industry. Therefore their problem is not solved as it should be. The salt industry cannot develop further, because the officials of the General Bureau of the Salt Industry work only with the officials of the Ministry of the Chemical Industry and cannot work with officials of other commissions and ministries. Therefore it is advisable to separate the General Bureau of the Salt Industry from the Ministry of the Chemical Industry and put it under the direct jurisdiction of the Administration Council in order to increase its leadership ability and vitality. However, there is no need to make this general bureau a Ministry of the Salt Industry.

If we separate the General Bureau of the Salt Industry from the Ministry of the Chemical Industry and put it under the direct jurisdiction of the Administration Council, the ministry may work still harder to import salt by exporting chemical goods when salt is in short supply.

There is no need to bring the General Bureau of the Salt Industry to Pyongyang on the excuse that it is under the direct jurisdiction of the Administration Council. This general bureau must remain in Onchon County. In future we intend to send commissions and ministries in the productive sectors to areas where their sectors have major factories and enterprises and keep only necessary commissions and ministries in Pyongyang.

Because the General Bureau of the Salt Industry is to remain in Onchon County, we should provide it with proper working conditions. We must provide it with a bus to be used when its officials are summoned by the Administration Council, as well as with a direct
telephone. There is no great difficulty for the senior officials of the Administration Council to work with the head of the General Bureau of the Salt Industry. Since the head has a car, he can come to Pyongyang and work with the senior officials of the Administration Council any time.

Today we have put the Fish Farming General Bureau and the General Bureau of the Salt Industry under the direct jurisdiction of the Administration Council. It seems that in future we shall also have to place the General Bureau of Fruit Farming, now belonging to the Agricultural Commission, under the direct control of the Administration Council. Although the General Bureau of Fruit Farming belongs to the Agricultural Commission, the senior officials of the commission pay attention only to grain production and are not willing to inspect orchards. Therefore, it is natural that fruit production is unsuccessful. We intend to hold a meeting on the problem of fruit production this year in either Pukchong County or Kwail County.

To proceed. We must promptly take measures to solve immediate economic problems, including the development of a glauberite mine.

It is very important to mine and process glauberite as soon as possible. If we process glauberite, we shall be able to find solutions to many difficult problems, including those of sodium carbonate and gypsum.

If we process glauberite, we can produce a large amount of gypsum, solving the problem of gypsum needed for the production of cement. At present cement production is held up because of a shortage of gypsum. In future we shall annually produce 20 million tons of cement, so we shall need much more gypsum. If we are to produce 20 million tons of cement, we shall need 0.8 million tons of gypsum.

If we mass-produce gypsum, we shall be able to earn a large amount of foreign currency. With gypsum we can make building materials, such as ceiling and wallboard, and export them. One square metre of gypsum ceiling is said to be five to seven dollars. If some 10 kilogrammes of gypsum are needed to make one square metre of gypsum ceiling, it means that the price of one ton of gypsum is 500 to
700 dollars. If we produce one million tons of gypsum, we shall be able to earn 500 million dollars, and if we turn out two million tons of it, we shall be able to obtain 1,000 million dollars. At the construction sites of Kwangbok Street they use both imported gypsum planks and ones domestically produced using imported equipment. People of a certain country are said to have asked us to sell them our gypsum planks. If we make great quantities of gypsum planks, we shall be able to earn foreign currency by exporting them. However, our officials give no thought to this matter and do not develop work in a bold way. At present they do not think of mass-producing gypsum with glauberite and making gypsum planks to earn foreign currency; they think only of meeting the demand for gypsum for cement production. We intend to develop a process of producing double superphosphate of lime at the Haeju Smeltery to solve the problem of gypsum. Even if we develop this process and increase gypsum production capacity, the problem of gypsum will not be solved completely. For this we should develop a glauberite mine as soon as possible and mass-produce gypsum.

The glauberite mine should produce one million tons of gypsum at the first stage and two million tons at the second stage. There will be no great difficulty to do so. Nevertheless, at the moment our officials neglect the development of a glauberite mine. The senior officials of the Commission of the Extractive Industries, who are in charge of developing a glauberite mine, are not showing any concern for this matter under the pretext of the strain on coal production and do not solve the difficult problem promptly.

You must step up development of a glauberite mine. You should not undertake this project in an indifferent manner, but apply yourselves to this task enthusiastically and finish it soon. The enthusiasm of the soldiers who are now taking part in the development of a glauberite mine is very great. Efficient guidance as well as the necessary equipment and materials should be provided, so that they complete the project quickly. Then they will be able to finish the project in a short time. We must render assistance to these soldiers.

The officials in the sector concerned of the Party Central
Committee must also pay attention to development of a glauberite mine.

Senior officials of the Administration Council should summon the commanding officer of the unit mobilized for the development of a glauberite mine and receive reports from him; they should also solve any problems.

The Commission of the Extractive Industries must take charge of the development of a glauberite mine and the Ministry of the Building-Materials Industry should take charge of the processing of glauberite and the production of gypsum. The Ministry of the Building-Materials Industry must work out a plan for the Sunchon Cement Complex to transport glauberite and produce gypsum by processing it.

We must continue to press ahead with construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex.

At the second stage of the construction of this complex we must channel our efforts into building the production processes of caustic soda, vinyl chloride and urea fertilizer. The Administration Council plans to build first a 50,000-ton-capacity process for producing caustic soda following April 15 this year and then build a 50,000-ton-capacity process for producing vinyl chloride and a 200,000-ton-capacity process for producing urea fertilizer. I have no objection to this. It will be a good idea to start building the process for producing caustic soda after April 15.

Construction of the Nyongwon Power Station and Namgang Power Station must be stepped up.

We must build the dams of these power stations by all possible means before the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students. If we fail to do so before this year’s rainy season sets in, the Rungnado Stadium may be submerged in water if there is an unprecedented deluge. In 1967 Pyongyang was submerged because of a heavy flood. We have built many barrages on the Taedong River. Therefore even if there is a deluge, Pyongyang will not suffer so much damage as it did during the flood of 1967. However, it may still suffer flood damage if there is an
unprecedented deluge. We are to hold the functions of the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students in Rungnado Stadium. If the stadium is submerged in water during the festival, it will disgrace the country in the eyes of a large number of foreigners. We have built a modern and splendid 150,000-seat Rungnado Stadium, so we should not allow it to be submerged in water.

The same can be said of Yanggak Islet. We are now building on this islet a modern international cinema as well as a modern football stadium and hotel. There is danger of their being submerged in water if there is an unprecedented deluge.

No one knows when there will be an unprecedented flood, so we should take thorough measures to prevent flood damage.

Soldiers are now mobilized for the construction of the Nyongwon Power Station. They say they will build the dam to a height of 100 metres before the rainy season if they are provided with sufficient materials and equipment. We must supply the planned amount of cement and steel to the construction site of this power station every month, as they have requested.

The Ministry of the Building-Materials Industry must increase the production of cement in every possible way and provide it to the construction sites of the Nyongwon and Namgang Power Stations, even though it may fail to supply it to other projects. I have summoned the Minister of the Building-Materials Industry to this meeting to make him provide sufficient cement to the construction sites of these power stations.

We must also provide lorries to the construction site of Nyongwon Power Station. The Administration Council should send Jaju 82 lorries made by the Sungni General Motor Works. The Premier should summon the manager of this works today and assign him the task of providing lorries to the construction site of Nyongwon Power Station.

We should also provide the necessary materials to the construction site of Namgang Power Station.

The Administration Council should formulate a decision based on the discussion of this consultative meeting on the problem of salt
production and make relevant arrangements. All the problems presented by the officials concerned with regard to salt production should be solved.

We intend to hold a meeting on the matter of reclaiming tidal flats at some time in the future. Reclaiming 300,000 hectares of tidal flats is an important goal that must unfailingly be achieved during the period of the Third Seven-Year Plan. Therefore we should convene a meeting and adopt proper measures for the attainment of this goal. We have failed to hold a meeting on the matter of reclaiming tidal flats until now, although I have given thought to this matter all along. This is not because this matter is unimportant, but because we are short of cement and other materials as well as equipment needed for the project. Reclamation of tidal flats requires a large amount of cement, and we have had no cement for this project until now because we have undertaken many construction projects for the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students. However, these construction projects are finished in the main and construction of the Sangwon Cement Complex has been completed, so we are now able to send large quantities of cement for the reclamation of tidal flats. If we put the new cement factory into operation and ensure steady production at the existing cement factories, we shall be able to provide cement for the reclamation of tidal flats. Once we have cement, we can easily reclaim tidal flats by making box caissons with it. The reclamation of tidal flats now under way in South Phyongan Province and South Hwanghae Province can be completed in a short time if box caissons are used.

Tidal flats can be reclaimed easily only when machines are introduced. The General Bureau of Tidal Flat Reclamation should give thought to making many machines to use for the reclamation of tidal flats. In the reclamation of tidal flats the layout is more difficult than the construction of embankments. We should ensure that many ditch diggers are made for layout of the tidal flats to be reclaimed. Annual production of some 100 ditch diggers will meet the need.

It has been requested that the laying of power-transmission lines needed for the reclamation of tidal flats be carried out quickly. This
project is not urgent, however. For the General Bureau of Tidal Flat Reclamation to be supplied with electricity, the Taean Heavy Machine Complex should make 50,000-kW generators as soon as possible and a thermal power station must be built in Nampho. If it is planned to build first a 100,000-kW thermal power station in Chollima District, it must be constructed as soon as possible.

It would be a good idea to convene a meeting on the reclamation of tidal flats in September or October.
Dear delegates,
Comrades and friends,
Today I am very pleased to meet you, the young standard-bearers of our times, and bid a warm welcome to the delegates who have come to our country to attend the Fourth Session of the International Preparatory Committee of the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students.
Representing the expectations and wishes of the young people and students of our times who aspire to independence, peace and friendship, you have come to our country as the honourable delegates of the youths and students of the five continents and also as our distinguished guests, in order to make the 13th WFYS a success.
Since the decision to hold the 13th WFYS in Pyongyang was adopted, the national preparatory committees of the festival, youth and student organizations in many countries, and international and regional organizations have worked hard to ensure the success of the festival and have made a great contribution to the preparations for the festival.
We speak highly of this and pay our respect to you.
The Fourth Session of the International Preparatory Committee of
the Festival has been held at an important moment when the preparations for the Pyongyang Festival have entered the final stage. This session will be an important occasion to give a strong impetus to the preparations for the festival so that the 13th WFYS will proceed satisfactorily by correctly embodying the ideal of anti-imperialist solidarity, peace and friendship. It will also be an inspiration to the Korean youths and students and those of many other countries who are preparing for the festival.

The WFYS is an important and grand international stage on which the progressive youths and students of the world, who represent the future of mankind, meet, share one another’s youthful ideals and ambitions and strengthen friendship and solidarity. It is a very auspicious event that gives hope and joy to people who love justice and peace and set store by the future.

The Korean youths, students and the rest of our people are very glad that the 13th WFYS is going to be held in our country, commanding great confidence of the young people and students of the world and fulfilling their expectations. Our Party, the Government of our Republic and all the Korean people, who warmly love and treasure the younger generation, not to mention our own young people and students, consider the forthcoming festival important, attach great significance to it and are making preparations for it as a concern of the whole state and of all the nation.

Our youths, students and all other Korean people strongly support the ideal of the festival for solidarity against imperialism and for peace and friendship. The ideal of the WFYS is a just ideal that correctly reflects the requirements of our times and the aspirations of the progressive youths and students across the world. With the support and encouragement of progressive people the world over, an energetic struggle is being waged in our country against the imperialists’ aggressive manoeuvres and interference and for national sovereignty, peace and a new, independent life, the ideal of the masses of the people. This clearly substantiates the validity of the ideal of the festival.

The situation in our country will convince you how pressing the
question of independence against imperialism and peace against war is for the people who advocate independence, and also how greatly the Korean people in the forefront of the struggle for independence and peace set store by international solidarity.

The youths, students and all other Koreans will make every possible effort to ensure that the Pyongyang Festival, the first of its kind to be held in Asia, will be successful in conformity with the noble ideal of the festival movement. We shall warmly welcome all the guests to the Pyongyang Festival and accord them sincere hospitality.

Comrades and friends,

The youths and students at this turning point in the development of human history have a heavy responsibility and an honourable mission before the times and history.

Mankind, which has been engaged for a long time in an arduous and complicated struggle to realize independence, is now entering a new epoch. The masses of the people, once oppressed and humiliated, are now in a position to shape their own destiny independently and creatively, conscious of being masters of the world, standing in the centre of the current of our times. The political, economic and cultural relations between countries and between nations are getting closer with each passing day, and the work of protecting the common environment of human existence and making effective use of it for common prosperity faces mankind as a realistic task. It is an urgent and ripe requirement of our times to build a new, free, peaceful world, a world where all peoples cooperate in friendship and develop equally.

Although time advances, the foolish moves of those who try to turn back the current of history are continuing. Because of this, the confrontation and struggle between the world’s progressive forces, aspiring to a new, free, peaceful world, and the reactionary forces, trying to maintain the old order of imperialism and colonialism, constitute the basic characteristic of international relations at the present time.

Progressive people the world over are advancing along the road of independence, sovereignty and progress against all manner of domination and subjugation, exploitation and plunder and are fighting
to establish a fair international order based on justice and independence. However, the old forces, which are going against the trend of our times towards independence, are deceiving the people by cunning, neocolonialist methods, strengthening their domination and plunder of the developing countries and further increasing imbalance between the rich and the poor on a world scale.

The question of war and peace is now a burning question that concerns the destiny of mankind, and the confrontation between progress and reaction finds its most glaring expression on this question. The peace lovers of the world are turning out in the struggle to prevent another world war and nuclear holocaust, which threaten the very existence of mankind, and to safeguard world peace and security. However, those who dream of world domination are clinging as ever to power politics, even pressing on with the adventurous “Star Wars” plan, further increasing armaments at a time when socialist countries are reducing arms unilaterally.

The Korean people, fighting for the country’s reunification and peace, have experienced keenly through their own lives that the aggressive moves of the imperialists are the root cause of the division of the nation and the danger of a new war.

It is because of the foreign forces’ intervention and their divisive moves that our people, who had lived harmoniously as a homogeneous nation on the same land for thousands of years, have been divided artificially and that the country has not yet been reunified. It is also because of the imperialists’ aggressive manoeuvres that a constant danger of war is hovering over the Korean peninsula. The United States has converted south Korea into its nuclear-war base, and this year, too, it is conducting “Team Spirit” joint military exercises against our Republic through the mobilization of more than 200,000 troops and a large number of modern lethal weapons. This clearly shows to the world who is increasing tension and jeopardizing peace on the Korean peninsula.

The people’s struggle for independence and peace can advance and emerge victorious only through the fight against reactionary forces
who obstruct the forward movement of history.

Young people, who represent the future of mankind, must stand in the forefront of the sacred struggle to oppose the old and reactionary and create an independent, new world.

Young people, who have high ideals and ambition and a strong spirit of independence, are a powerful force that can advance history and transform the world. History shows that young people are capable of performing extremely great tasks when they are aware of their mission and rise up.

The imperialists and reactionaries are most afraid of the just struggle waged by the progressive young people. That is why they are resorting to every possible means and method to make the young people degenerate and cripple them spiritually, so as to break them from the ranks struggling to blaze the trail in our times.

Our young contemporaries should safeguard their excellent qualities and dignity of youth from the tentacles of the imperialists and reactionaries and channel all their energy and passion into the common cause of safeguarding peace and realizing global independence, in order to live up to the trust and expectations of the progressive people the world over.

Our Party has always paid deep attention to the development of the youth movement, and the young people of our country have fulfilled with credit the honourable mission they assumed for the country and the nation.

Way back, Korean youths played the vanguard role in hewing out the path of our revolution and achieving the cause of national liberation, and, after liberation, they have accomplished brilliant exploits in the struggle to build a new socialist country. The youths and students in south Korea have been fighting to achieve national sovereignty, democracy against fascism and the reunification of the country, defying the continuing harsh suppression.

Our Party and our people are greatly proud of the fact that they have as reliable successors to the revolution the fine young people who have acquired a sound consciousness of independence untainted by any
outdated and corrupted trend of thought as well as loyalty to their country and their fellow people.

The Korean youth and student movement is an inseparable part of the world youth and student movement. The youths and students of Korea will discharge their honourable responsibility in the struggle for independence from imperialism and for peace against war and will make every effort to strengthen and develop the world youth and student movement.

Friendship and solidarity are the common ideal of the world’s progressive young people, who love freedom and peace, and these are their source of strength.

The youths and students in various countries of the world must firmly unite, irrespective of ideas, social system, political and religious views, nationality and race, and must support and cooperate closely with each other in the interests of the common cause.

It is important to develop the world festival movement of youth and students in consolidating international unity and solidarity among the youths and students.

This movement has developed by upholding the lofty ideals of anti-imperialism, peace and friendship over the past 40 years and it has now become the mighty anti-imperialist peace movement of our times. In order to further theWFYS to meet the aspirations of the youths and students and the requirements of the times, it is essential to uphold the ideals of the festival movement, sustain the traditions and experiences of the festival, broaden the scope of the festival movement, and organize the festival functions in a more varied manner.

The Korean youths and students will strive to strengthen unity and solidarity with the progressive youths and students throughout the world and will contribute to developing the festival movement by working for the success of the forthcoming Pyongyang Festival.

I am convinced that the Fourth Session of the International Preparatory Committee of the Festival will proceed successfully and produce excellent results, thanks to the strong spirit of cooperation and sincere efforts of you delegates.
ON IMPROVING KING TONGMYONG’S MAUSOLEUM

Talk to Officials after Inspecting the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong and the Sand Table and Design for Its Improvement

April 2 and 14, 1989

I have inspected the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong and the sand table and design for its improvement. The sand table and design were fairly good. Your plan to enhance the mausoleum’s historical identity by enlarging its site and planting many trees around it and to build a straight, wide road perpendicular to the Pyongyang-Wonsan Highway is good.

We must improve the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong magnificently to educate our people and give wide publicity to it among foreigners.

It is the tomb of the founder-king of Koguryo and an invaluable historical remain that shows the history and cultural heritage of our country. Koguryo was the most powerful state in the history of our country and a feudal state that existed for a long time. King Tongmyong was its founder-king.

Although the first state established in our country is said to have been Ancient Korea, its reputed founder, Tangun, has been so far a semi-deity. Whether Tangun actually founded Ancient Korea or is a mythical person is for historians to decide after making an in-depth study. Whereas Tangun has come down to us as a mythical person, the
founder-king of Koguryo, Ko Jumong, was an actual person. Therefore we should improve his tomb well and publicize the fact among the people of the world as well as our people that the history of Koguryo started with the reign of King Tongmyong. There are a large number of ancient tombs and other historical remains in our country, but the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong can be said to be the only tomb of our ancestors worth giving publicity.

Since immediately after liberation of the country I have paid deep attention to his mausoleum. In the past there was a great deal of argument among our people as to whether the tomb in Mujin-ri, Ryokpho District, Pyongyang, was King Tongmyong’s or not. Some people inclined to worship the great powers claimed that it was not the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong, insisting that the people of Koguryo did not transfer the tomb of their founder-king to Pyongyang when they moved their capital from Jian in China to Pyongyang and that his tomb is still in Jian. I could not believe their assertions. From time immemorial it has been the custom for Koreans to take the remains of their ancestors with them when they moved to another place, even though they could not take other things with them. As Koguryo was a very powerful state at that time, her people would not have failed to transfer the tomb of their founder-king when they moved their capital. This is why I concluded that the tomb in Mujin-ri was that of King Tongmyong, founder-king of Koguryo, and assigned historians to unearth the tomb. Later the lecturers and students of Kim Il Sung University exhumed and investigated the tomb in a comprehensive way, in the course of which they unearthed a great number of valuable relics and confirmed scientifically that it is the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong.

In the past much of the history of our country was distorted by the feudal rulers and great-power worshippers. Once the feudal rulers, tainted with worship of great powers, built a Kija tomb on Moran Hill and paid tribute to it, propagating the fallacy, woven by reactionary historians, that a Chinese named Kija came to Korea, founded a state and became its king. I was doubtful that a foreigner had come to our
country to build the first state and that his tomb was on Moran Hill, so I had the tomb unearthed to ascertain what was in it. The excavation found only broken bricks, revealing that the Kija tomb was a false tomb, nothing more than piled-up earth. Several other historical materials confirmed the falsehood of the theory of Kija.

Improving the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong is all the more important as the historical data of our country’s Koguryo period are being distorted in some countries. In the past, great-power worshippers, catering to the taste of big countries, rewrote the history of our country, so we could not know the exact year of the foundation of Koguryo. As the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong has been confirmed to be that of the founder-king of Koguryo and as when and how Koguryo was founded have been revealed scientifically by actual data, we must improve the mausoleum magnificently and give wide publicity to the history of Koguryo. Only then can we give our people as well as the people of other countries a correct understanding of our country’s history and give the reactionary historians no more room to distort the history of our country.

Improving the mausoleum is also necessary to inform the south Korean people of the time-honoured, proud history of our nation when they come to the northern half of Korea through multifarious exchanges between north and south in the future.

Personages from various walks of life in south Korea are now proposing that the north and south carry out exchanges in the disciplines of history and linguistics. The Rev. Mun Ik Hwan, who recently came to the northern half of Korea, presented two books, A Derivative Dictionary of Our Language and Let Us Give Life to the Dead, to me, saying that it would be good for scholars from the north and south to get together and conduct a joint study of our language and history. I agreed with him. As soon as he returned to the south, he was arrested and put behind bars. When he is released, I think he will conduct positive activities to realize cultural exchange between the north and the south.

When, in future, historians in south Korea come to the northern
half, we should hold discussions on the history of our country and show them the remains of the Koguryo period, including the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong, and of the Koryo period in Kaesong. In this way we can give them a clear understanding of the history of Koguryo and Koryo. The Mausoleum of King Tongmyong should be improved magnificently, so that it can be shown not only to scholars from the south, but to youths and students from the south and compatriots abroad. Every Korean, whether from the south, the United States or Canada, will want to pay a visit to the mausoleum when he comes to the northern half of Korea. It is a moral trait and courtesy for Koreans to pay a visit to the tomb of their founder-king.

We confirmed long ago that the mausoleum at Mujin-ri, Ryokpho District, was that of the founder-king of Koguryo, but we have so far failed to give it wide publicity, since it looked poor.

It was wrong for our officials to have failed to improve the mausoleum well. Its improvement is somewhat overdue, but we must buckle down to it and improve it magnificently.

The improvement project will require a great deal of labour and investment. However, as the improvement project is an important undertaking to add glory to the time-honoured history of our country and instil in our people national dignity and pride, we must put effort to the project and improve the mausoleum magnificently, even though it takes a great deal of labour and investment. Thus we should improve it on the highest level, so that our posterity need not retouch it in the distant future.

An important thing in improving the mausoleum is to make it historically significant, as well as large and majestic, fit for the mausoleum of the founder-king of Koguryo. Historians, artists, architects and designers should exert all their wisdom and talent to improve it on historical and scientific principles, while retaining its Koguryo identity.

The path to the mausoleum should not go around, but straight up to the shrine, with stairs to the tomb that look modern and majestic; the upper area, the mausoleum compound, should be built to be a
place of historical interest.

A gate through which visitors will pass should be erected at the entrance of the path up to the mausoleum.

The pavilion used as a shrine looks shabby. It should be rebuilt. Past feudal rulers built it without sincerity, apparently out of great-power worship or a dearth of money. If the shrine is rebuilt on the present site, it may hinder the frontal view of the tomb; so a large shrine should be built just next to the present site and painted as in old days. The date of its building should be that of the original date, and the date of its reconstruction should be given on an explanatory board.

The monuments to Tongmyong the Great and to his exploits are small. Bigger ones should be erected, with the original inscription. In the inscription the part reading that Ko Jumong was hatched from an egg that a daughter of Ha Paek conceived from a sunbeam is absurd and meaningless; this part can be omitted. The epitaph of the monuments should be written in the style of ancient times on the principle of historicity. It should not be written in the Chinese characters now in use. It is advisable to use the writing style of the monument to King Kwanggaetho. The content of the epitaph should be translated into our language and inscribed. If the epitaph is inscribed only in Chinese characters, people who do not know the characters cannot understand what the epitaph says.

The epitaph of the monument to King Tongmyong was written by Ri Kyu Bo, a scholar of Koryo; when the monument is remade, the date of the original monument should be inscribed.

The monument to the exploits of King Tongmyong is said to have been erected in the days of Sejong the Great of the Ri dynasty. Among the successive kings of the Ri dynasty King Sejong made a great contribution to the cultural development of the country. He invented *Hunminjongum*, the national alphabet of our country, and did a great deal to help develop our nation. This is why I appreciate him most highly of all the successive kings of our country.

In the days of the Ri dynasty the periods of King Sejong and his second son, King Sejo, enjoyed prosperity. *The True Record of the Ri
Dynasty notes that the country was prosperous in the days of King Sejong, the fourth king, and King Sejo, the seventh king. It is said that a white magpie, a rare bird, appeared in the days of King Sejo.

Recently a white magpie appeared in the Pyongyang area. I spotted it a few days ago. Apprehensive that it would fly away, some officials said it would be better to catch it and make it into a stuffed specimen. I told them not to catch it, but observe how long it lived and to take its photograph and record it on a video. An article on the appearance of the white magpie and its photograph were carried in newspapers.

As the white magpie was a rare bird, one I have seen for the first time, I assigned zoologists at Kim Il Sung University and the Central Zoo to enquire how the bird came into being and whether it had ever appeared in our country. At first no one knew about it. They referred to The True Record of the Ri Dynasty, which noted that in the tenth year of King Sejo’s reign a white magpie appeared in Koksong County, Jolla Province, and the provincial governor sent a message of congratulation to the king to this effect: As the king managed affairs of state with benevolence and righteousness, good omens appeared here and there, and at this time a white bird so tame augured well; the people who saw it and heard about it were so delighted that they all danced. The white magpie that appeared in the days of King Sejo’s reign has reappeared after 500 years. That magpie settles every day just at the side of the road I pass by.

When large monuments to King Tongmyong and his exploits are erected again, the date of the original erection should be inscribed, and it should be explained to visitors that the monuments were erected on such-and-such a day and erected again in a bigger way when the mausoleum was improved.

The essential thing in the improvement project is the tomb. Even though other parts are improved wonderfully, the tomb cannot prove its worth if it is not improved properly.

The tomb should be preserved in its original state, whereas the mound should be made a little bigger than the present one. The mound should not be enlarged recklessly out of subjectivity, on the plea that
you were told to do so. The size of the mound should be defined after ascertaining the original size of the tomb and taking into account the royal tombs of Koguryo in Jian, China.

The foundation of the tomb should be made firmer and its stone pedestals replaced. When the tomb’s mound and stone pedestals are being restored, the number of layers of the pedestal should be decided. If the mound is enlarged, the pedestals should be bigger than the present ones.

The stone statues in front of the tomb should be remade in the Koguryo style. The present statues look shabby and smack of superstitious images. The statues of civil officials and military officers are not portrayed after the people of Koguryo, and they are too small. Their caps do not look like those of Koguryo days. It is important to refer to historical data and erect stone statues and horses that accord with the historical facts. The features and statues of the people, their clothing and the armour clad on horses differ according to the historical period. They should not be made thoughtlessly without taking into account the characteristics of the days of Koguryo.

The stone statues of civil officials and military officers should be made on the basis of study of the features of the people of those days, their clothing and caps, and the shape of their weaponry, after referring to historical relics and data, including murals, of those days. Military officers should be portrayed in uniforms of Koguryo days, holding weaponry.

The stone horses at the tomb should be replaced. The present horses are small and not worth looking at. They should be made well to show the mettle of Koguryo. Erecting such stone horses accords also with the principle of historicity. The Koguryo people enjoyed horse riding and archery from their young days and it was their custom to practise martial arts on horseback. The stone horses should be erected in proportion to the number of civil officials and military officers. The horses of military officers should be portrayed as big and swift, while those of civil officials should be ordinary horses. Portraying the horses of civil officials as ordinary ones will be all right. The stone horses
should be erected a little behind the statues of civil officials and military officers.

The two stone sheep in front of the tomb should be removed. There is no historical ground to keep the sheep at the tomb. From olden times the Korean people have had no special relations with sheep. The Koguryo people did not keep sheep in large numbers nor did they like mutton. Even now our people are not so fond of mutton, saying that it smells unpleasant. The stone sheep were erected at the tomb of King Tongmyong apparently after the tomb of King Kongmin of Koryo. I have been to that tomb and found several stone sheep erected around the tomb. King Kongmin lived with a Mongolian woman. Stone sheep may have been erected around the tomb, around the king’s and queen’s graves, because the Mongolians liked sheep. One may assume that the stone sheep at the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong were erected on the ground that Mi in the twelve signs in the sexagenary cycle is the year of the sheep, but it is hardly believable, because there is no record that King Tongmyong was born or died in the year of the sheep. Since there is no historical evidence or significance for erecting stone sheep at the tomb of King Tongmyong, they must not be erected.

Majestic stone tigers should be erected by the tomb. The stone tigers now standing on both sides of the tomb do not look good. They should be removed, and tigers with larger bodies and longer tails should be made and erected. From olden times the tiger has been symbolic of the valour of Korea, so tigers should be portrayed by retaining the characteristics of the Korean tiger. As the look of the tiger has not changed since olden times, there is no need to confirm historical evidence. The tigers—a male tiger at one side and a tigress at the other—should be as high as the pedestal of the tomb.

The stone lantern in front of the tomb should be a little bigger than the present one. The lantern post should be thicker, its shade wider and the height of the lantern should harmonize with that of the tomb.

The monument that marks the tomb, said to have been built in 1892, is too small. The present one stands on the pedestal; whether it should remain there should be discussed. In my opinion it would be better to
make it a little bigger and erect it in front of the tomb.

The stone altar looks small compared to the tomb. If the present mound is made bigger, the altar will look relatively smaller than the tomb, so the altar should be in proportion to the tomb. The altar should be made in ancient fashion, not in today’s fashion. The stone holding the altar should be made bigger to suit the size of the altar.

I stress once again: When you remake various stone sculptures for the tomb of King Tongmyong, you must ensure that they are in proportion to the size of the tomb. If they are too big, the tomb will not look well.

The stone monuments, shrine and stone sculptures and their sites at the tomb should be based on historical principles after architects have discussed them with historians, not by resorting to subjective and reckless designs.

The Jongnun Temple should be restored.

As the temple was built for the Mausoleum of King Tongmyong, it should be reconstructed. Only then will the tomb look more like the tomb of the founder-king of Koguryo.

You say that the total floor space of the temple is 30,000 square metres; it is very large. In those days the temple had an octagonal stone pagoda in the centre and around it Tonggum Hall in the east, Sogum Hall in the west and Junggum Hall in the north, which means the temple was a building peculiar to Koguryo—three Buddhist sanctums around a pagoda. The Hwangryong Temple of Silla, built around the sixth century, and the Asuka Temple in Japan were also built on that principle, so the south Korean people and the Japanese people recognize that they were built under the influence of Koguryo’s culture.

The site of Jongnun Temple shows that the central axis of the temple is not on a straight line with that of the tomb. If the temple is reconstructed on a straight line with the central axis of the tomb, the temple will hamper the view of the tomb. This will not be good. Apparently people deliberately built the temple a little to one side, not on a straight line with the central axis of the tomb, so as not to hamper
the frontal view of the tomb, so the temple should be rebuilt just on the site where it was discovered. The temple need not be rebuilt to occupy the area over the stream in the front. Only necessary buildings of the temple should be restored, just on the original site of the temple.

After the temple is reconstructed, an exhibition of relics should be placed in it, so visitors, after looking around the tomb, will be able to see real relics of the Koguryo period. Making a round only of the tomb will not enable them to learn the history of Koguryo properly. If the relics unearthed at the tomb and other relics of Koguryo are displayed in the exhibition and shown to visitors to the tomb, the visitors will like it. At present there is an exhibition in front of the tomb, but it has not many relics and its building is not fit for an exhibition of historical relics. The building should be used as a teahouse in future and the assembly hall, the largest building in the temple, should be converted into an exhibition of relics. This is my opinion. There is no need to leave the temple vacant after its reconstruction.

Jongnung Temple, the shrine and the gate to the tomb should be constructed in Koguryo style architecturally.

The graves around the tomb of King Tongmyong and on the mountain in front should be improved properly. There is material evidence that they belong to the period of Koguryo, so their inmates should be clarified to explain to visitors that this grave is such-and-such minister’s and that one is such-and-such general’s.

The pine trees around the tomb should be tended well, so as to prevent worms from eating them, and more trees should be planted.

There are some tall pine trees by the tomb now, but not many in the vicinity of the tomb, so the tomb does not give the impression that it is a place of historical interest. Only when the area around the tomb is thick with tall pine trees and varieties of other trees, will visitors to the tomb, upon entering the tomb compound, have the sublime feeling that they are visiting the tomb of the founder-king of Koguryo, the most powerful state in the history of our country. More trees should be planted in the tomb compound, on the plateau of Solmae-dong and its vicinity. Planting many trees on the plateau of Solmae-dong will
decrease the cropland, but it is not wasteful, as it is an undertaking to improve the mausoleum of the founder-king of Koguryo.

Tall trees, not short ones, should be planted around the tomb. It takes a long time for a short tree to grow tall. The trees to be planted there should be provided by provinces the way the trees to be planted along Kwangbok Street are now sent from every part of the country. Every province should be assigned the task to uproot trees and send them to be planted around the mausoleum.

The Administration Council should discuss the issue of giving assignments to the Mansudae Art Studio and other relevant establishments in connection with the project to improve the mausoleum.

The improvement project should be started immediately after the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students and finished at the earliest date.

We should thoroughly establish Juche in the study of history, positively discover and ascertain historical sites and relics and keep the historical remains, assets to the nation, in good state.

Not only King Tongmyong’s Mausoleum but also historical sites of the Koguryo period, including Anhak Palace, and those of the Koryo period still in Kaesong should be improved. Improving the historical sites will not cost much. Even if it does cost much, we must not spare money in improving the historical sites and giving wide publicity to the time-honoured history and national culture of our country.
ON IMPROVING THE MANAGEMENT AND SUPPLY WORK OF PYONGYANG

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Senior Officials of the Administration Council and Pyongyang
April 20, 1989

At today’s consultative meeting I shall speak about improving the management and supply work of Pyongyang.

From olden days Pyongyang has been widely known as a beautiful city with scenic mountains and clear rivers. Pyongyang’s scenic mountains include Moran Hill and Mts. Haebang, Changgwang and Jang, and among its meandering rivers, large and small, are Taedong, Pothong, Sunhwa and Nam. All these make Pyongyang look like a scroll painting. With the building of Kwangbok and other modern streets recently, it has become a more majestic and splendid city. No other city in the world will be as beautiful as Pyongyang. When Rangnang Street is built in the future, Pyongyang will become an even more splendid city. If that street is built, there will be no need to build more large streets in Pyongyang.

As we have built Pyongyang to be a world-class city, we must correspondingly improve its management and supply work, to provide its citizens with a happy life free of any inconvenience.

The present management and supply work of Pyongyang is not satisfactory.

The unsatisfactory city management and supply work can be ascribed to the poor attention and inefficient help given by the
Administration Council to this work. At the moment no vice-premier in the council is in charge of the administration and economic work of Pyongyang. The chief secretary of the Pyongyang City Party Committee is concurrently holding the post of chairman of the Administration and Economic Guidance Committee of the city and is finding it difficult to take charge of the administration and economic work of Pyongyang all alone. So recently the Presidium of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee appointed the former chief secretary of the Pyongyang City Party Committee vice-premier of the Administration Council and chairman of the Administration and Economic Guidance Committee of Pyongyang, and the former chief secretary of the North Hwanghae Provincial Party Committee chief secretary of the Pyongyang City Party Committee.

The vice-premier in charge of the administration and economic work of Pyongyang and the chief secretary of the Pyongyang City Party Committee should grasp the administration and economic work of the city and give efficient guidance.

City management should be done properly.

Many problems arise in the management of Pyongyang, including the transportation of passengers, the management of waterworks and sewage, provision of heating, disposal of waste, supply of gas and electricity, motor and water transport, prevention of air pollution, repair of public buildings and houses, and maintenance of roads, none of which is handled satisfactorily.

The biggest problem in the management of Pyongyang at the moment is passenger transport.

Recently I made several rounds of Pyongyang by car and saw many people standing in queues at bus stops as buses were not running at regular intervals. Yesterday I rode by car from Pyongyang Railway Station to Kim Il Sung University, and saw that few trolley buses were running and those few were small. There would be no problem if they ran at regular intervals even though they were not big, but as they run from time to time, passengers have to wait a long time at bus stops. Solving the problem of passenger traffic in Pyongyang is not so
difficult. What is needed is to manufacture a great number of trolley buses so that they can run one after another, but they are not produced in large numbers. It does not stand to reason that our country has not solved the problem of passenger traffic and is importing buses, as it is not producing trolley buses in large numbers, when it is a socialist, industrialized country. We must produce a large number of trolley buses at any cost, so as to solve the problem of passenger transport in Pyongyang.

Buses fuelled by gasoline and diesel oil should not be allowed to run in large numbers in the city. As Pyongyang is not manufacturing a sufficient number of trolley buses for use now, buses are used for passenger transport. Apparently more buses are running in Pyongyang than trolley buses. A country cannot be called developed for the large number of buses and cars in its cities.

At the moment the cities of some capitalist countries seem to be bustling with a large number of cars, but in actual fact people there are suffering greatly from the exhaust fumes from the cars. In a capitalist country recently there was a medical checkup of people living on the third floor and above in high-rise apartment buildings in the central part of its capital city, and most of them were found to have complaints in their lungs from air polluted by automobile exhaust fumes. In capitalist countries capitalists, hell-bent on making money, do not care whether people suffer from air pollution.

Since we regard the Juche idea as our faith and strive to apply the idea, we must consider the people’s interest first whatever we do and never do anything that causes people the slightest suffering. We must wage revolution for the sake of the people and conduct construction for their sake. Therefore, in solving the problem of passenger transport in Pyongyang we should pay attention not to increasing the number of buses, but to preventing air pollution. The best way to solve the problem of passenger transport in the city, while preventing air pollution by exhaust fumes from vehicles, is to ensure that many trolley buses are running. As trolley buses do not expel exhaust fumes, they will not cause air pollution whatever their number. So we must
produce them in large numbers. They should be produced in Pyongyang and also in Chongjin for use in Pyongyang.

To solve the problem of passenger transport, trams, together with trolley buses, should run.

It is advisable to build two loop lines in Pyongyang, so that trolley buses can run along the inner loop line and trams along the outer loop line.

We must strive to solve the problem of passenger transport in Pyongyang by next year, to ensure that people do not wait a long time for buses at bus stops.

The trucks that transport meat, edible oil, vegetables and other goods for shops and restaurants and city waste in Pyongyang should be allowed to run only at night.

In the past when I was the Premier of the Cabinet, such trucks were allowed to run from 12 o’clock at night to 5 o’clock at daybreak. At that time shops and restaurants received goods only at night, but nowadays the trucks that transport goods and city waste run even in the daytime. This makes an unpleasant sight and causes a certain degree of hindrance for bus operation. As urban buses begin to run at 5 o’clock at daybreak now, the trucks that carry goods and city waste should be allowed to run only from 12 o’clock at night to 5 o’clock at daybreak.

In the past phungnyon fertilizer was made from city waste from Pyongyang and sent to the countryside, but it seems it is not being done properly nowadays.

Measures should be taken to prevent the Taedong River from being polluted.

Since the West Sea Barrage was built, the river’s water area has become wider and salty water does not flow in it. As a result, it has become a beautiful river overflowing with clear water. The river water is used as drinking water in Pyongyang, and in the areas along the river and its tributaries the water is used for irrigation. However, the cities, including Pyongyang, and factories and enterprises along the river are equipped with poor installations for purifying waste water and are heedlessly draining waste water, polluting the river. As the river has
been transformed into a beautiful river of great economic significance with the construction of the West Sea Barrage, polluting the river can be called a serious crime. The cities, factories and enterprises along the river should purify their waste water before draining it into the river.

In order to prevent pollution of the Taedong River, oil-burning ships should not be allowed to sail up and down the river in large numbers. Frequent sailing of oil-burning ships on the river might cause leakage of oil, polluting the river, soiling surrounding areas and killing fish. Foreigners say that if ships sail on big rivers and lakes, fish disappear from them. An official of the Soviet Union once told me that the Volga River used to teem with a famous kind of fish that lay black spawn, but they disappeared after big motor boats began to cruise the river. The Iranian people also told me that fish began disappearing from the Caspian Sea when large motor boats began to sail on the sea in great numbers. We should not be indifferent to the disappearance of fish in rivers and lakes in other countries, but draw a serious lesson from it. The Taedong and its tributaries, the Sunhwa and Pothong, now teem with a large number of fish. We must ensure that they are not killed by oil leaked from motor boats that run on the river.

In future large oil-burning ships, other than dredgers, should not be allowed to sail on the Taedong River past Songnim. They may sail up to Songnim.

Only ships equipped with the apparatus that separates oil and water should be let in through the West Sea Barrage. I was told that other countries do not allow ships without such apparatus to anchor at their ports. In order not to let such ships inside the barrage, a port should be built at Sok Islet, so that large cargo ships of more than 200,000-ton capacity and ships without the apparatus that separates oil and water can berth there.

We must allow some ships to sail on the Taedong. As motor transport is strained at the moment, fruits and vegetables should be carried to Pyongyang by battery-powered ships, not oil-burning ships. If battery-powered ships are made a little larger, they can carry fruits and vegetables without difficulty. Manufacturing such ships in our
country is not a big problem. Ten nautical miles per hour is ideal for the speed of the ship, and seven to eight nautical miles per hour is also all right. The ships should be made in large numbers, so that only such ships could cruise on the Taedong. Thus we shall prevent pollution of the river and preserve fish there.

It is said that the Taedong is shallow, but it will be all right for small cargo ships to sail on it. Large ships should not be allowed on the upper reaches of the river, including Sunchon.

For efficient management of Pyongyang, the Ministry of City Management and the General Bureau of City Management of Pyongyang should enhance their role.

The main reason city management was inefficient in the past was that a Ministry of City Management did not exist. After the founding of the Republic a Ministry of City Management was established in our country, but later the ministry was dissolved and the Commission of Public Welfare took charge of city management. However, officials of the commission neglected city management; as a consequence, the management of Pyongyang and other cities in the provinces gradually became inefficient. As society developed and people’s lives improved, more and more problems arose in city management; it was a mistake to have dissolved the Ministry of City Management. City management in a socialist system is a very important undertaking, so the Administration Council should include a ministry in full charge of city management. That is why we recently reorganized the ministry.

Its minister and staff should be appointed for efficient city management. By periodically inspecting the work of the General Bureau of City Management of Pyongyang the ministry should grasp and guide the management of Pyongyang at all times. If the ministry encounters any problem in relation to the management of Pyongyang, it should report it to the Premier promptly.

The General Bureau of City Management of Pyongyang should work better. The head of the bureau is a young graduate of the University of Construction and Building Materials Production. This is good.
Supply service for Pyongyang should be improved.

Most important is to supply its citizens with meat, eggs, fish, vegetables, fruits, edible oil, sweets and cakes, soya milk and soft drinks on a regular basis and operate shops, restaurants, hotels and other service establishments efficiently.

As Pyongyang is the capital city with the Party Central Committee and many central organs situated there and as many foreigners stay there, I have always paid close attention to the supply service to Pyongyang citizens and missed no opportunity to stress the need to supply efficient service, but so far the citizens have not been supplied with a sufficient amount of such nonstaple foodstuffs as meat, eggs, vegetables and fruits. I feel pleased whenever I see wonderful streets, but reminded of the inadequate solution of the problem of food for the citizens, I feel displeased. As we have provided people with excellent housing, we should conduct a corresponding supply service. If all officials are loyal to the revolution, they will undertake the supply service for Pyongyang citizens efficiently.

Measures should be taken to supply meat to Pyongyang on a regular basis.

As I mentioned at the consultative meeting on agriculture in Pyongyang in January this year, every Pyongyang citizen should be supplied with 100 grammes of undressed meat every day. For that purpose, 70,000 tons are needed every year. Meat should be supplied without running out not only to Pyongyang citizens, but also to the foreigners staying in our country. There are now many hotels in Pyongyang; several hotels, including Koryo Hotel, were already built and Ryanggang Hotel, Sosan Hotel and Youth Hotel, with accommodations for 2,500 guests, have been newly built in Kwangbok Street. The number of hotels will increase when the construction of Ryugyong Hotel and Yanggakdo Hotel is completed. It is not an easy job to supply these hotels with meat and other nonstaple foodstuffs.

For meat to be supplied to Pyongyang on a regular basis, the pig, chicken and duck farms in the city should be operated at full capacity. For that, the problem of livestock feed should be solved. If the
Sunchon Vinalon Complex produces bacteriological protein feed in future, the problem of livestock feed will be solved to a certain degree. Whenever I receive a report on the progress of the construction of the complex these days, I stress that the system for producing methanol should also be built at an early date.

In order to solve the problem of livestock feed in our country in future, tidal flats should be reclaimed widely and sugar beets planted there. If sugar beets are planted on one hectare of land, one ton of pork can be produced from what is left after making sugar and wine from the yield there. When 300,000 hectares of tidal flats are reclaimed in future, 50,000 hectares are to be planted with sugar beets for the running of pig farms. Fifty thousand tons of pork can be produced from the yield of sugar beets from 50,000 hectares; this is good. And when the paddy fields on the reclaimed tidal flats are fertilized with manure from the pig farms, 12 tons of rice per hectare will be produced without fail. Therefore we should not slacken the reclaiming of tidal flats, but step it up. A large area of tidal flats can be reclaimed in North and South Phyongan Provinces.

I have been to Ansok-ri, Onchon County, several times. The tidal flats there can also be reclaimed. At the Ansok-ri seaside is a freshwater pond. Grey mullets are raised there to supply Pyongyang. The Premier of the Administration Council and other officials concerned should visit Ansok-ri.

Reclaiming tidal flats is not very difficult if cement is supplied. The tidal flats we are going to reclaim by building embankments are exposed after the water ebbs; so their sea level is almost zero. Box caissons made of cement and piled with earth by excavators become embankments. Machinery should be used in the reclaiming of tidal flats; you must not reclaim them by mobilizing many people to break rocks and carry stones on their backs. In future North and South Phyongan Provinces should be provided with a large amount of cement and many ditch-digging excavators, so that they can reclaim tidal flats quickly.

The reclaimed tidal flats can be laid out quickly only when
machinery is introduced. Quite a large area of reclaimed tidal flats is not now used as crop land, because they are not laid out to meet the purpose.

When the problem of feed is solved, Pyongyang can be supplied with the amount of duck it needs from the duck farms in the city, not from other provinces.

The city will find it difficult to meet all its demands for beef and pork from its own production. They should be supplied by other provinces and establishments. Last year when I went to Ryanggang and South Hamgyong Provinces, I assigned the provinces to produce meat and supply it to Pyongyang. Ryanggang Province was assigned to produce 20,000 tons of pork a year in cooperation with the central organ, which is building a pork-processing plant in the province to provide haslet to its population and visitors to the revolutionary battle sites and meat, after being refrigerated, to Pyongyang. The province should draw up a yearly plan of pork production and carry it out without fail.

South Hamgyong Province should open up cattle ranches and produce 1,800 tons of beef every year, 800 tons of which should be consumed in the province and the remaining 1,000 tons refrigerated to be supplied to Pyongyang.

It is my intention to get the central organ concerned and a unit of the People’s Army to cooperate in a supply service for Hyangsan Hotel. The organ is presently organizing about 3,000 hectares of cattle ranch in the area of Nyongbyon and Kujang. If cattle is bred there, Hyangsan Hotel can be supplied with beef. At the rate of two head of cattle per hectare, 6,000 head can be bred in 3,000 hectares. A cow weighs about 300 kilogrammes and we can get about 150 kilogrammes of beef, excluding haslet and by-products. Thus we shall get 900 tons of beef from 6,000 head of cattle every year, which will be enough for Hyangsan Hotel.

The plan to terrace fields after felling trees should be cancelled. Recent information has it that some European countries are making a great fuss over landslides and gradual desertification as sloping lands
have been reclaimed for cattle ranches or vineyards. If we also fell
trees randomly and make terraced fields, we might spoil a large area of
land. I am opposed to terracing fields after felling trees. We should
make use of the terraced fields that have already been reclaimed and
refrain from reclaiming new fields. Reclaiming sloping lands into
terraced fields needs further study.

You say that artificial insemination is being undertaken to get
calves that would be bred in the ranches. That is laudable. In order to
secure calves quickly, we should inseminate cows with fertilized ova
that bear twin calves. One country is reportedly enabling cows to bear
twin calves by introducing this method.

Our scientists have been studying the method and this morning it
was reported that they had succeeded in the research. If we introduce
the method in future, we can secure as many calves as required at an
early date.

Pyongyang citizens should be supplied with fish on a regular basis.
For this purpose, South Hamgyong, Kangwon and South Hwanghae
Provinces and other provinces on the coast should supply fish to
Pyongyang regularly. The Administration Council should call senior
officials of the Fisheries Commission and the chairmen of the
provincial administration and economic guidance committees and
assign plans for the supply of fish to Pyongyang, pushing them
forcefully so that they fulfil the plans without fail.

Fish should be caught in the Taedong River and supplied to
Pyongyang citizens.

Since construction of the West Sea Barrage the river has become a
large fish farm teeming with fish. Fish in the sea come up the river
continually through fishways at the barrage and not many return to the
sea, I was told. This being the case, the number of fish in the river is
increasing. At the moment no one knows the exact number of fish in
the river. There are quantities of shellfish and crabs in the river.
Apparently a tremendous amount of shellfish is in the river beyond the
Mirim Barrage. One Sunday I went to Wonsin-ri, Samsok District, and
found many people catching shellfish in the Taedong River. They
called them serf clam. They were similar to the shellfish I caught in the river when I was attending school at Chilgol. The shellfish in the river past Mirim Barrage are not corbicula leana, which are small. They are as large as mussels and look like them. I tasted the meat and it was a bit tougher to chew than mussel. Once I went boating on the river with a writer from Europe visiting our country. I had shellfish caught and cooked for her. Eating the shellfish, she said Korea was an excellent country free from pollution.

As the Taedong and Pothong Rivers teem with fish, there are many anglers there. On the way from Phaltong Bridge to the Taedong River there is a place where warm water from a thermal power station flows into the river. I was told that people fish there even in winter. I made a round by car of the Pothong River, up and down Phaltong Bridge, and saw hundreds of people angling in the river. My companion told me they included people from foreign embassies in our country, but I did not see them. They probably go fishing, too. It is very good that there are many anglers at the Taedong and Pothong Rivers. For a man, angling is part of one’s cultural life.

Going up the road to the Korean Film Studio, I met an old man who was angling. He told me that he caught crucian carp, carp, river shad, silver carp, grass carp and other varieties of fish, at least two kilogrammes a day and at most four or five kilogrammes. The point is that he is not a member of the anglers’ association. He was catching fish without paying for it. As I said at the consultative meeting of the senior officials in the economic sector last March, there is no need to allow anglers to catch fish as they please without charging them, since the state has bred the fish with feed it has bought. We must charge the people who catch fish in the Taedong and Pothong Rivers. If we charge them, we can give wages to employees of the fish farming stations and solve the problem of feed for fry with that money. Fry should be raised for about one year on feed before being released into rivers. Only then will they not be eaten by other fish. Fish farming stations should operate self-accounting systems in this way.

A certain European country has long collected membership fees
from an anglers’ association. When I visited that country in 1956, I travelled by car with the prime minister of that country on a Sunday and saw many people sitting by a river. I asked him who they were, and he answered that they were anglers and said, “Most of those anglers are members of the anglers’ association. The association determined that only fish of a certain weight and above can be caught. When an angler catches fish under that weight, his catch is seized and he is fined. The association members are issued membership cards and they pay fees every month to the association. The state buys feed for fry and gives wages to their breeders with that money.” It was June when I visited the country. On my way to inspect the countryside, I saw trees planted by the roadside heavily laden with cherries. It was pleasant to the eye. I asked the prime minister what they did with the cherries. He said they picked them and made wine and jelly to sell. With the earnings they gave wages to street cleaners and secured funds for road repair.

Our people are not managing the country’s life assiduously; they manage it thoughtlessly. Allowing anglers to catch fish free of charge is also an expression of thoughtless management of the country’s life. I was told that an anglers’ association was also formed in our country and its members were issued membership cards and pay fees, but it seems the association is not being operated properly. When I have the opportunity, I shall inquire about it. Since the association has been formed, it should be run properly, not for form’s sake. It should issue membership cards to its members and charge them a certain amount as a fee.

There are quantities of fish in the Taedong River. There is no need to leave them alone. They should be caught and either sent to fish-soup restaurants in Pyongyang, so that they can sell fish soup, or supplied to the citizens. For that purpose, fishing companies should be organized in the Fish Farming General Bureau and given production quotas as to how many tons of fish they should catch a day. No organ should be allowed to catch fish in the Taedong River with a net. If any organization not allowed to catch fish in the river catches fish with a net, the Ministry of Public Security must confiscate its ship and net. If
fishing companies catch fish with a net, the meshes of the net should be regulated, so that they catch only large fish and not small ones. Even if the companies catch fish with nets with large meshes, they will be able to catch several tons a day. I instructed soldiers of a unit of the People’s Army to catch fish with a seine at the confluence of the Hapjang and Taedong Rivers and they caught one ton of silver carp and grass carp as big as a man’s forearm. One year the soldiers caught seven to eight tons of fish in a day with a seine. I had the fish distributed to soldiers and officers’ families, so that they could enjoy a holiday. As the soldiers caught one ton of fish with a seine, fishing companies can catch more when they use boats and nets.

Strict control should be exercised over catching fish by jerking unbaited hooks in the Taedong and Pothong Rivers. When a film criticizing the deviation in catching fish was produced, I saw the film and instructed that it be shown to the public. Whether controlling the random catching of fish in the Taedong and Pothong Rivers should be conducted by Pyongyang, by the Ministry of City Management or by the Fish Farming General Bureau should be discussed in the Administration Council and decided.

Pyongyang should build reliable bases for vegetable production, so as to supply ample vegetables to its citizens all year round. Building bases for vegetable production will make it possible to supply a sufficient amount of vegetables not only to its citizens, but also to the foreigners visiting our country. As it is not so cold in winter in our country, many foreigners will visit our country in that season in future.

For Pyongyang citizens to be supplied with vegetables on a regular basis all year round, greenhouses should be built. As the cooperative farms in the suburb of the city all plant vegetables in summer, it is not a big problem. The problem is supplying them from July to August and in winter. If the problem is to be solved, greenhouses should be built by all means. Since crop land is limited in our country, the best way to increase per-unit yield of vegetables is to build greenhouses for vegetable farming.

In view of my experience in guiding vegetable farming, building
greenhouses is most advisable. The soldiers of the People’s Army in the Mt. Paektu area plant cabbages, cucumbers and tomatoes in greenhouses even in winter. On the last April 15 they probably ate cucumbers. When soldiers in the Mt. Paektu area, the coldest in our country, have built greenhouses and are farming vegetables efficiently, it does not make sense for Pyongyang not to be growing vegetables properly.

The city should build greenhouses in Junghwa County at an early date. In addition, it should build them on a large scale in Rangnang District, where the East Pyongyang Thermal Power Station is being built; then, vegetables can be supplied in adequate amounts not only to citizens, but also to hotels. Heat supply to the greenhouses to be built in Rangnang District can be solved either by using the waste heat from the East Pyongyang Thermal Power Station or by installing a separate boiler for the purpose of heating. The power station’s equipment is currently being shipped into the country; when the power station is being built, it is advisable to install a boiler for supplying hot water to greenhouses. If the site for greenhouses is a little far from the power station, the pipe for supplying hot water should be laid underground to minimize loss of heat. When greenhouses are built in Rangnang District, they will be pleasant to see on the Pyongyang-Kaesong Highway. The Premier of the Administration Council should go to the district to confirm the site for building greenhouses.

It will be good if a greenhouse is built in the Hyangsan area; then Hyangsan Hotel will be supplied with vegetables in all seasons. I intended to have a greenhouse built in Thaephyong-ri, Hyangsan County, by drawing on hot-spring water from Tongsin County or Unsan County, but it seems impossible, as they are too far away. As it is difficult to draw hot-spring water from these counties, greenhouses can be built at a place near hot springs. I think it would be good to build a large greenhouse in Unsan County. The temperature of the hot-spring water in the county is approximately 50 degrees Centigrade; the water can pass through the greenhouse before being supplied to bathhouses. The best water temperature for taking a bath
is 40 degrees Centigrade, so if the hot-spring water is drawn to bathhouses after passing through a greenhouse, instead of being supplied to them directly, it will be good for bathing. If the hot-spring water passes through a greenhouse once, the temperature of the greenhouse will remain at more than 15 degrees Centigrade. Fifteen degrees Centigrade is sufficient for farming vegetables in winter. Whether a greenhouse should be built in Tongsin County or Unsan County needs further discussion.

Pyongyang citizens should be supplied with sufficient amounts of fruit. Fruit farms that supply fruit to Pyongyang should be determined properly and the city should give them good help. When agriculture in Pyongyang was discussed in January this year, Pyongyang Fruit Farm, Hwangju Fruit Farm and some branch fruit farms in Kwail County were chosen as bases for supplying fruit to Pyongyang, and it was decided that Pyongyang should carry night soil and other kinds of manure to these fruit farms and give them manpower support. Nevertheless, assistance to the fruit farms is not yet being conducted satisfactorily. This being the situation, it is only natural that fruit is not being produced in large quantities. The senior officials of the Pyongyang City Party Committee do not know the exact area of the fruit farms that are to supply fruit to the city in terms of hectares. It testifies that they have not grasped the work, nor are they organizing the work properly. Pyongyang should give every organ and enterprise assignments for carrying night soil and giving efficient assistance to Pyongyang Fruit Farm and other fruit farms that are to supply fruit to the city.

If fruit trees are applied with night soil and other kinds of manure and nitrogenous, phosphatic and potassic fertilizers, they will yield large amounts of fruit. It was reported that Pyongyang Fruit Farm produced 17 tons of fruit per hectare on average last year; that is a fairly good yield. If we apply enough night soil and fertilizer to fruit trees in future, we shall be able to produce 20 tons of fruit per hectare. The Administration Council should organize the work of supplying fertilizers, including nitrogenous, phosphatic and potassic fertilizers, to fruit farms.
Pyongyang citizens should be supplied with sufficient amounts of sweets and biscuits. For that purpose we should import sugar.

They should also be supplied with soya milk.

Today I have given the Premier and vice-premiers of the Administration Council and the senior officials of Pyongyang orientation for improving the management and supply work of Pyongyang; the Administration Council should call commission chairmen and ministers and the chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees, hold a meeting and organize the work of assisting Pyongyang. Assignments should be given in detail—for example, what should be done by the city itself, what should be done by commissions and ministries and what should be done by which province for the city. The plan for helping Pyongyang should be executed; it must never end in empty talks.

City management and supply work of Pyongyang should be done on the responsibility of the Premier and vice-premiers. Particularly, the vice-premier in charge of administration and economic work of Pyongyang should take control of it and carry it through.

After building Pyongyang into a model for the whole country through effective assistance, it must be ensured that other provinces emulate the city to improve their city management and supply work. If we make an efficient effort this year, Pyongyang’s management and supply work will be improved. We must solve what problems we can this year.

The Administration Council should discuss the issue of improving Pyongyang’s management and supply work before submitting a written plan of measures to me. If it is deemed necessary to hold further discussion after I go over the document, another consultative meeting will be convoked. In case a consultative meeting is to be held, it should be held on the 29th or 30th of this month.
ON THOROUGHLY IMPLEMENTING
THE ECONOMIC TASKS FOR IMPROVING
THE PEOPLE’S STANDARD OF LIVING

Speech at the 26th Session of the Eighth Central People’s
Committee of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea
May 11 and 13, 1989

I, the President of the state, have often played the role of Premier of
the Administration Council, because the Administration Council was not
functioning as it should, but it is no longer necessary to do so. Now that
the work of the Administration Council has improved, I intend to have
the Central People’s Committee discuss major economic problems.

Since the appointment of the new Premier the Administration
Council is working efficiently. A good point in his work is that he is
paying attention to agriculture. He also exercises efficient control of
his subordinate units through the councillors of the Administration
Council. As he supervises his subordinates regularly, he is familiar
with the situation at subordinate echelons and deals with their
problems properly in good time.

It is natural and appropriate for the Central People’s Committee to
discuss important matters relating to implementation of the Party’s
economic policy.

The people’s committee is the political power of our own style.

During the revolutionary struggle against the Japanese in eastern
Manchuria we set out the line of building a people’s government in our
own style. Most of the people who professed the communist movement
in eastern Manchuria were factional flunkeys. They asserted the establishment of a Soviet government in imitation of foreign things. Under the pretext of the principle of one party for one country they preached joining the Chinese Communist Party or following its line and established a Soviet government in the guerrilla zones, in Gayahe and Wangouguo. In Yaoshuidong, Helong County, the Soviet lasted scarcely three days. Seeing the Soviet government established by Lenin in his country and the same type of government introduced in the liberated areas of China, the factional flunkeys thought that a Soviet government was the only revolutionary government. Therefore we were involved in serious polemics with them on the question of government building.

After establishing a Soviet government in the guerrilla zones, the factional flunkeys expropriated landowners without discrimination and banished them to the enemy-ruled area. Most of the landowners in eastern Manchuria were Chinese, and their liquidation resulted in antagonism between Koreans and Chinese.

Even when we started the armed struggle, some Chinese disliked Koreans in the belief that the Japanese imperialists invaded Jiandao because of the revolting Koreans. The Japanese imperialists drove a wedge between Koreans and Chinese for the purpose of finding a pretext for invading northeast China. We can take the “Wanbaoshan incident” for example. Many Korean peasants were living in Wanbaoshan, Changchun County, Jilin Province, China. In 1931 the cunning Japanese imperialists instigated Chinese peasants into a clash with Korean peasants and sent their troops under the excuse of “protecting” the Koreans. In consequence, Chinese people gave a wide berth to Koreans, regarding them as stooges of the Japanese imperialists. The expropriation of Chinese landowners by the factional flunkeys after establishment of the Soviet in the guerrilla zones aggravated the discord and antagonism.

This situation was a great obstacle in the way of our armed struggle against the Japanese imperialists. We had to make great efforts to solve this problem.
The Soviet in the guerrilla zones made it impossible to rally the broad sections of the masses around the revolution. The Soviet was a form of government solely of the working class and peasantry. There were many nationalists in eastern Manchuria in those days, and most of them belonged to the well-to-do middle class. Some of them were well-to-do middle-class peasants and some rich peasants who had scraped up a sizable fortune. The Soviet government proclaimed by the factional flunkeys was in no position to win them over. Therefore we set forth a new line of building a people’s government based on a worker-peasant alliance led by the working class and relying on a united front of the broad sections of the anti-Japanese forces. On this line we set up the people’s revolutionary government in guerrilla zones.

The anti-Japanese guerrillas and other people actively supported the line of a people’s government, but the factional flunkeys did not like it. In those days various factional flunkeys, such as the M-L group, Tuesday group, Irkutsk group and Seoul-Shanghai group, were entrenched in county and district Party committees. These self-styled Marxist authorities were reluctant to accept the new line of a people’s government, a new form of government unprecedented anywhere else and proposed by me, a young man. However, they dared not object to it in public, because I was the organizer and leader of the armed struggle.

Our struggle to carry out the line of a people’s government has been shown vividly by recently produced films. You comrades need to see part 3 of the revolutionary film *The Sun of the Nation*. The old man nicknamed Tobacco Pipe in the film is Comrade Ri Tong Baek. With determination to fight for the revolution, he travelled widely, sometimes as a special envoy of the Provisional Government in Shanghai and sometimes involved in various factions. Disillusioned by factional strife, he came to us in the end. On our side he worked as editor of the *Samil Wolgan*, the organ of the Association for the Restoration of the Fatherland.

As you see, the historical roots of the people’s government were struck during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.
Our people’s government is the best form of government. That was why we set up a people’s government after liberation and organized people’s committees at all echelons.

We must develop the traditions of the people’s government properly, and to this end we must continue to strengthen the functions of the Central People’s Committee. The Central People’s Committee is the highest leadership of the political power of our Republic. Our Socialist Constitution explicitly stipulates that the Central People’s Committee is the supreme leadership of state power.

Our intention to discuss major economic problems at the Central People’s Committee from now on is aimed mainly at enhancing its leadership function.

Members of the Central People’s Committee are supposed to be elected by the Supreme People’s Assembly. Therefore the by-election of its members will be made by the Supreme People’s Assembly in the future. Pending the opening of its session, the persons approved by the meeting of the Secretariat of the Party Central Committee will sit at sessions of the Central People’s Committee.

The Secretariat of the Party Central Committee has decided to form the Central People’s Committee with the President, Vice-Presidents, the Premier of the Administration Council, vice-premiers, the secretaries of the Party Central Committee for Economic Affairs, the secretary-general, the chairman of Economic Policy Commission and the chairman of the State Inspection Commission of the Central People’s Committee and the chairmen of the provincial people’s committees.

The Central People’s Committee sessions must be attended by all its members. The chairmen of commissions and ministers under the Administration Council, who are not members of the Central People’s Committee, may be invited to Central People’s Committee sessions as observers as circumstances require.

Now that the Central People’s Committee deals with major economic affairs, the meetings of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee will discuss other important matters of political significance.
The Administration Council is the executive body implementing the decisions adopted by the Central People’s Committee. It can issue decisions or directives for implementing the decisions of the Central People’s Committee.

The decisions of the Central People’s Committee may be announced by the press or issued to subordinate echelons as presidential decrees or as decisions of the Central People’s Committee.

At this session I shall dwell upon a few items of the reclamation of tidal flats, aquaculture, fish farming and other problems having a direct bearing on people’s lives.

Firstly, on the reclamation of tidal flats.

In recent years we have been unable to give strong impetus to the reclamation of tidal flats, because it was impossible to supply sufficient cement for the project under the pressure of preparations for the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students. At present, however, festival preparations are nearly finished, so we can afford to supply large quantities of cement for tidal-flat reclamation. This is why the present session of the Central People’s Committee is discussing the reclamation of tidal flats, in order to continue the project on a large scale.

The reclamation of tidal flats is a great project to transform nature by walling off the sea. It is a worthwhile struggle to provide our people with a happy life. We must increase our limited farmland by reclaiming tidal flats. This is the way to find a satisfactory solution to the problem of food.

We need to produce 13 to 15 million tons of cereals annually to solve the food problem completely in our country. This amount will be sufficient to feed our people and provide a decent life for them. The total area of our cultivated land is estimated at 2 million hectares, but if we exclude orchards, mulberry fields and sloping land, the area capable of regular cereal farming is scarcely 1.5 million hectares. Over recent years the farmland has dwindled as a result of the construction of factories, motorways and various other projects. Even if we succeed in intensive farming, the existing farmland is not enough to find a full
solution to the food problem for the people.

The decisive measure for a complete solution of this problem is to reclaim tidal flats on a large scale.

We must make good preparations this year and press ahead with tidal-flat reclamation next year. We must reclaim 50,000 hectares annually in 1990 and 1991 and 100,000 hectares in 1992 and 1993, so we carry out the task of reclaiming 300,000 hectares of tidal flats during the Third Seven-Year Plan.

If we lay out rice fields in the 300,000 hectares, we can produce a large amount of rice. If we estimate the per-hectare yield at ten tons, the total will be 3 million tons, or at a conservative estimate of seven tons per hectare the total will be 2.1 million tons. This is no small amount. With an addition of 2.1 million tons to our rice production, we shall be able to solve the food problem and also import sugar and other things we need by exporting rice.

Once an official suggested planting “sugar reeds” in order to solve the problem of sugar. In consideration of his enthusiasm I told him to plant some on an experimental basis in an area of South Hwanghae Province. To tell the truth, however, there is no need to plant “sugar reeds” to solve the sugar problem. It is preferable for our country to increase rice production and export rice in exchange for sugar. As the per-ton prices of rice and sugar are nearly equal on the international market, we can import approximately seven tons of sugar for seven to ten tons of rice from one hectare. “Sugar reeds” produced in one hectare cannot yield so much sugar. We are cultivating sugar beets on the Taehongdan County General Farm, but that is not aimed only at producing sugar. The main purpose is to produce a lot of pork by using beet refuse as feed.

I am thinking of reclaiming 200,000 more hectares of tidal flats after finishing the project for 300,000 hectares, drawing on this experience.

We are now walling off tidal waters where the depth is 1.5 to 2 metres, but in future we can do it for depths of 5 to 6 metres. A certain country is said to be walling off the sea where the depth is 80 metres, so
there should be no difficulty in building an embankment where the depth is 5 to 6 metres. All that is needed is to increase the size of the box caissons to cope with the increase in depth in the construction of the embankment.

When we have reclaimed 500,000 hectares of tidal flats, we can produce 5 million tons of rice annually from the reclaimed land alone, at an estimate of ten tons per hectare. Then we shall be a rich rice-producing country.

The head of a foreign party on a recent visit to our country said to me that they were worried most about the continuous growth of their population, that they were at a loss how to provide food for the growing population when their farmland was limited. I told him that we were widening our farmland by reclaiming tidal flats. He asked me if it would not be more profitable to farm lobsters in the walled-off tidal flats and export them in exchange for rice. I said that we could earn money by lobster farming, but that no country would sell rice. He said I was right, slapping his knee in exclamation. Meeting 80 to 90 per cent of the demand for food with domestic production and importing 10 to 20 per cent to make up the shortage would pose no serious problem, but depending on the foreign market for about 50 per cent of the required amount of food would involve the risk of starving one’s people, I added. Our policy of increasing grain production by reclaiming tidal flats on a large scale is absolutely correct.

A large-scale reclamation of tidal flats requires a large amount of box caissons.

During my inspection of a tidal-flat reclamation site I saw people doing toilsome work, building the embankment by carrying rubble and dirt in push carts on rail tracks and dumping them into the sea. This method cannot reclaim a large area in a short time; it only wastes labour. We must build outer embankments by producing concrete box caissons, floating them by tugboat, sinking them to the foundation of the embankments and filling them with rocks and earth. This method will make the work easier and faster.

We succeeded in constructing the West Sea Barrage in a short time
because we used large box caissons. At the construction site I saw workers making box caissons and walling off the sea with them. I was convinced that method would enable us to reclaim as many tidal flats as needed. We constructed the West Sea Barrage by walling off the open sea where the depth was dozens of metres, so there is no difficulty in walling off the tidal waters, which are only 1.5 to 2 metres deep.

If cement is available, we can produce box caissons in large quantities. According to the report, 15 tons of cement are required to make enough caissons to wall off one hectare of tidal flats or 750,000 tons to make the caissons needed to reclaim 50,000 hectares a year. Supplying this amount of cement will pose no problem.

Cement has been used in large quantities for the fortifications constructed all about the country. In future, however, we can supply it for the tidal-flat reclamation project. If we increase cement supplies a little, we can reclaim 100,000 hectares of tidal flats annually.

We are planning to construct a modern cement factory with a 3-million-ton capacity by using the by-product from the processing of potassic feldspar at the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex. Negotiations are now under way for the contract to import the equipment for the cement factory. If this factory is constructed, we shall be fully able to ensure the supply of cement needed to reclaim 500,000 hectares of tidal flats. We must concentrate on the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex and complete the project as soon as possible.

We must not undertake tidal-flat reclamation over a too wide area, but concentrate efforts on the coastal areas of North and South Phyongan Provinces.

In reclaiming 50,000 hectares of tidal flats, it seems advisable for South Phyongan Province to reclaim 30,000 to 35,000 hectares and North Phyongan Province, 15,000 to 20,000 hectares. We can allot 30,000 hectares to South Phyongan Province and 20,000 hectares to North Phyongan Province or else 35,000 hectares to the former and 15,000 hectares to the latter. South Hwanghae Province should be allowed to complete the project now under way and should not be
given further assignments in the next few years. For the present, it is important for this province to speed up the irrigation project to draw water from the Taedong River.

In tidal-flat reclamation the People’s Army should undertake the task of building outer embankments and the General Bureau of Tidal Flat Reclamation the work of laying out the area inside the embankments.

The laying out of the inside area is important. The General Bureau of Tidal Flat Reclamation must concentrate its efforts on this work after finishing the construction of embankments now under way. The Agricultural Commission has no construction force, so it cannot lay out the reclaimed area properly even if it is given the task. The General Bureau of Tidal Flat Reclamation should lay out newly obtained land, then turn it over to the Agricultural Commission. Provincial Party committees will be able to mobilize the farmers in the coastal counties near the reclamation sites to help in laying out the reclaimed land in winter months.

In order to reclaim tidal flats on a large scale, we must build solid bases for the production of box caissons.

The production of box caissons is very important, because we are going to wall off the sea by sinking box caissons; so we must now construct bases to produce box caissons. We must build these bases through concentrated effort and start producing box caissons in August. The bases must be equipped with cranes and docks. The soldiers of the People’s Army will be able to construct these bases quickly.

The bases should be built first in North and South Phyongan Provinces. The bases to be constructed in South Phyongan Province should have a capacity to produce sufficient box caissons to reclaim approximately 40,000 hectares of tidal flats annually. Construction of a box caisson production base in South Hwanghae Province should be started next year.

The main task this year is to build the caisson production bases and make other preparations, while at the same time walling off some tidal
flats on an experimental basis to gain experience and obtain basic technical and economic data on the projects.

At present, we have no accurate data for calculation of the project, so there is no knowing whether the labour, materials and equipment needed for the reclamation have been correctly calculated. Ten or twenty thousand hectares should be reclaimed this year for the purpose of experimentation to make accurate technical and economic calculation for the reclamation.

The technical and economic calculation of the layout of the reclaimed land should also be made accurately to obtain workable norms. The rice fields of the June 3 Cooperative Farm were reclaimed little by little many years ago, so the data obtained at that time cannot serve as the standard for the layout of the tidal flats to be reclaimed. The General Bureau of Tidal Flat Reclamation must lay out the tidal flats that have already been walled off, obtaining standards such as the man-days and time needed for laying out one hectare and the amount and items of equipment and materials for laying out 1,000 hectares. Only then shall we be able to calculate accurately the necessary manpower and materials for the project and produce equipment on a planned basis.

Tidal-flat reclamation in our country is a long-term project that has to be carried out for ten or 15 years from now. Therefore the officials in charge of tidal-flat reclamation should not be transferred to other jobs.

We must ensure the production and supply of materials and equipment needed for the reclamation project.

The Administration Council must ensure a timely supply of cement for the tidal-flat reclamation. It must also ensure the necessary supplies of steel and equipment in a responsible manner. Ditch excavators for the layout of walled-off land should be produced by the Ragwon Machine Complex, and the production of graders and compacting equipment should also be organized. Measures to build tugboats for floating box caissons should be taken. Manpower will pose no major problem, because outer embankments are to be constructed by the People’s Army.
I agree to the suggestion that the Kumsong tidal flat, after reclamation, be made into rice fields instead of salt fields.

The People’s Army should not recall the soldiers who are working on the ditch-digging project in South Hwanghae Province.

The people in Ryanggang Province are now reclaiming 16,000 hectares of new land without giving publicity to the project. The Administration Council must ensure the supply of necessary equipment and assist them well.

In addition to enlarging the area of farmland through a large-scale tidal-flat reclamation, we must work hard to increase the per-hectare grain yields of the existing farmland by making good use of it.

Per-hectare grain yields in our country have increased considerably, but we cannot say that the yields are very high. If we apply scientific and technological farming methods, we shall be able to increase the per-hectare yields by far and produce 12 million tons of cereals on the existing farmland. If we produce 12 million tons, our people will be fairly well-off, although we may not solve the food problem completely. Under present circumstances we can manage with 10 million tons of cereals.

If we produce 10 to 12 million tons of cereals annually, we can have enough food grain and a sizable amount to spare that can be fed to livestock and poultry to produce meat, eggs and milk. Then our people will be supplied with rice, meat, eggs and milk. That was why we set the target of producing 10 to 12 million tons of cereals annually a long time ago.

It is not very difficult to produce 12 million tons of cereals annually. At a moderate estimate of 1.5 million hectares of our farmland suitable for cereal crops, an average per-hectare yield of eight tons will make up 12 million tons. We must, therefore, work hard to make the best use of the farmland and increase the per-hectare yield to eight tons.

In order to boost the per-hectare yield of the farmland, we must first realign the land properly and remove rice field dikes and ridges between nonpaddy fields.
There are many small rice fields in our country, and the dikes occupy no small area. If these dikes and ridges are removed, more rice and maize plants can be grown there to increase the per-hectare yields. The soldiers of a People’s Army unit stationed in a mountain valley cultivate small plots of land and produce vegetables and meat to meet their own needs. They have even blown up rocks in the farmland to grow crops there. The people in the agricultural sector must realign their farmland to reduce the area occupied by dikes and ridges. The small rice fields where it is difficult to remove the dikes should be realigned to grow maize or sorghum.

To increase crop yields, we must also apply sprinkler irrigation to find a complete solution to the water problem.

The most important factor in maize farming is to water the crop sufficiently. According to scientific and technological information, the maize yield drops by ten per cent if maize leaves wither even for a single day owing to a shortage of moisture in the tasselling and earing season.

The secret of maize farming lies in ensuring irrigation, fertilizer and the seeds of the first filial generation. This is the conclusion I reached from my experimental fields while I was directing agriculture in person. Growing healthy seedlings and ensuring sufficient irrigation and fertilizer are important in rice farming. Likewise, planting good seeds of the first filial generation and supplying sufficient water and fertilizer are essential for maize farming. If these things are done, eight to nine and even ten tons of maize can be produced per hectare.

On Farm No. 7 they produce eight to nine tons of maize per hectare every year by using sprinkler irrigation and carpeting the arid land with sludge—land once said to be unfit for farming. With double cropping the maize yield drops by one ton per hectare, but 100 tons of vegetables are produced in addition.

In view of the importance of irrigation in maize farming, I have taken every opportunity to emphasize the need to introduce sprinkler irrigation in nonpaddy field farming on a large scale and saw to it that the matter was discussed at a meeting and decisions were adopted. But
the decisions are not implemented properly. On the way back from my recent inspection of Onchon and Sangwon Counties, I could not see many places where the sprinkler system was being introduced. Even the sprinklers installed on some farms were not working as they should, because hoses or nozzles were unavailable. When I asked the officials concerned why the sprinkler system was not established, they answered because the State Planning Commission did not plan the work. Of course, the State Planning Commission is to blame for the neglect of planning, but they should not depend solely on the state for introduction of the sprinkler system. The provinces should produce hoses, plastic pipes and nozzles on their own. If the senior officials of the provinces get down to work with determination, the provinces will be fully able to set up sprinkler systems for nonpaddy fields through their own efforts.

In our country the weather is dry, especially in spring, so good irrigation is very important. It rained twice in May this year. That was very good. A short time ago a white magpie appeared, and I wondered if it had brought a blessing with it. The bird built a nest on a tree near Kumsusan Assembly Hall. I had the magpie videotaped, photographed and published in the newspaper. I asked scholars for information about white magpies. They said that, according to historical records, a white magpie had appeared in Jolla Province during the reign of King Sejo 500-odd years ago. At that time the appearance of the bird was regarded as a greatly auspicious event and was the topic throughout the country. A white magpie has appeared again in our country after an interval of 500-odd years.

The problem of water is more serious in South Hwanghae Province than in other provinces, so the province must work hard to resolve this problem.

South Hwanghae Province is favoured with a mild climate and a wide plain, the Yonbaek Plain. The Honam, Yoltusamcholli, Jaeryong, and Yonbaek Plains are the largest plains in our country. The per-hectare rice yields in the Yoltusamcholli and Jaeryong Plains are eight to nine tons, but the yield in the Yonbaek Plain is lower.
Agricultural scientists and senior officials of the rural economy ascribe the low yield in the Yonbaek Plain to a strain of rice not suited to the characteristics of the area, but that is not true. Of course, there is no doubt that a better rice strain suited to the climatic and soil conditions of the plain will yield a better harvest, but the Yonbaek Plain is not far from the Jaeryong Plain, nor is there any great difference in weather conditions between them. The basic cause of the low rice yield in the Yonbaek Plain is the shortage of irrigation.

In our country rice plants send forth branch stems and ears roughly in June and July. A marked difference in the daylight and night temperatures of the water in rice fields in this season is favourable for the branching of rice plant stems and their growth. The weather in that plain is hot, so that the temperature, which has risen in the daytime, does not drop markedly at night. In order to lower the temperature, the heated water should be replaced with cool water. Rice plants remaining in the heated water through the night can be likened to a man sleeping under a cotton-wool quilt through a sultry midsummer night. In South Hwanghae Province, however, the water of rice fields cannot be replaced regularly because of the shortage of irrigation water. Although there are a few large reservoirs, such as Lake Kuam, crop fields are not sufficiently irrigated, because their water sources are small. In Mundok and Sukchon Counties, which are located in the Yoltusamcholli Plain, the water temperature of rice fields is regulated by sufficient irrigation to suit the plant growth, so the rice yield is high. If irrigation in the Yonbaek Plain is as liberal as in the Yoltusamcholli Plain, the per-hectare rice yield can be increased by approximately three tons.

Rice farming depends, after all, on irrigation. In order to raise the rice yield in South Hwanghae Province, officials must take decisive measures to solve the water problem. The province has been unable to solve the water problem so far because of the small water sources. However, it can solve this problem by channelling water from the Taedong River now that the West Sea Barrage has been constructed. The Taedong River is now brimming with water. On my trip to the
West Sea Barrage a few days ago, I saw the canal running towards the Kwangryang Bay. The water was flowing like a large river, and the sight was spectacular.

South Hwanghae Province must carry out the irrigation project to channel the water from the Taedong River to their crop fields, even though they have to suspend large-scale tidal-flat reclamation. The province must see that the irrigation project now undertaken by soldiers is by all means finished within this year.

Fertilizers must be applied sufficiently to increase the yields of cereal crops.

When irrigation is sufficient, the yields of crops increase in proportion to the amount of fertilizer applied to the crops. This year, however, phosphorous fertilizer was not supplied as planned, and ploughing was done without spreading the necessary amount of fertilizer. We must see that phosphorous fertilizer is supplied even now, so that as much as possible can be applied. A few persons’ effort cannot ensure success in agriculture. The whole country must work hard to ensure the timely production and supply of farming materials.

A delegation of our Party on a recent visit to a European socialist country known to be successful in agriculture inspected some cooperative farms in that country. Although only 40 to 60 per cent of their farmland was under irrigation, they were producing six to seven tons of maize and wheat per hectare by applying nearly one ton of nitrogen and phosphorous fertilizers each per hectare, the delegation said.

If we are to grow rich crops and completely solve the food problem, we must sharply increase investment in agriculture, and officials of the Party, state and economic establishments must work like masters, paying close attention to agriculture.

The production goal we have set of 15 million tons of cereals is not the brainchild of anyone devoid of calculation. From my experience gained while directing agriculture myself since 1973 and from a scientific calculation, I have set the goal of 15 million tons. If we cultivate the existing farmland intensively and carefully and produce
12 million tons of cereals and augment the amount by 3 million tons through the reclamation of tidal flats, the total will be 15 million tons.

This session of the Central People’s Committee is attended by Vice-Presidents, the Premier, vice-premiers, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, the chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees and other senior officials of the Party, state and economic organizations. Success in achieving the goal of 15 million tons of cereals through assiduous farming and in providing the people with sufficient food depends on how hard the officials attending this meeting work to carry out the tasks in support of the Party’s line and policy. The officials must always use their heads to carry out the Party’s line and policy to the letter, manage the national economy successfully and provide sufficient food for the people.

During the anti-Japanese armed struggle we had to rack our brains to solve the difficult food problem. Once, on a march in command of my unit from Changbai County towards Fusong and Autu, we camped in a forest. I looked around the surrounding area and it occurred to me that the place was fit for pumpkin growth, so I had the pumpkin seeds we had been carrying with us planted there. One of my orderlies asked me when we would ever come back to pick the pumpkins. I said we might not have a chance to eat the pumpkins, but one of our passing small units or messengers might happen to pick them. I was right. Later, a messenger who came to us said that on his way he had picked, boiled and eaten some of the pumpkins we had planted at the camping site.

Whenever there was a possibility of our food stock running short during the armed struggle against the Japanese imperialists, I used to get the stock taken and prescribe the rations for every meal. Under these circumstances we had to mix a lot of edible herbs and grass roots with our food, but we avoided starving. We also used to raid the Japanese “punitive” troops’ camps or towns to capture food supplies before our food stock ran out. No matter what the difficulty we never starved the men, so the guerrillas wished to be with the unit directly under my headquarters.
Comrade O Jung Hup, regimental commander, and Comrade Choe Hyon, managed their units meticulously during the anti-Japanese armed struggle and kept their men from starving. Comrade O Jung Hup in particular managed his unit so carefully by calculating everything in detail that his unit never ran out of food and even contributed a lot of food to my headquarters.

The senior officials of the Party, state and economic organizations must, following the examples of the commanders of the anti-Japanese guerrilla army, do everything like masters and manage the nation’s economic life meticulously. Especially the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, the chairmen of the provincial administration and economic guidance committees and the chairmen of the rural economy committees of the provinces must work with a creative attitude as befits masters.

The chief secretary of the provincial Party committee is concurrently the chairman of the provincial people’s committee, and as such he assumes the responsibility for provincial work and exercises Party and government leadership. The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees are equivalent to the regimental commanders during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. Depending on how they work, all the provincial work can be successful or not, and the provincial people can be well fed and well-off or not. However, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and other senior officials at the provincial level are not making strenuous efforts to implement Party policy.

They are not concerned over agriculture. How indifferent they are to agriculture can be illustrated by the single fact that the chairman of a provincial administration and economic guidance committee is ignorant of the number of hectares planted to maize in his province and the per-hectare maize yield last year. Because the senior officials of the provinces do not pay attention to agriculture, agricultural work cannot be successful.

The most important quality a revolutionary must acquire is the spirit to work for the revolution, the Party, the working class and his
fellow people. The senior officials of the Party, state and economic organizations must always bear in mind that they are representatives of the Party members and representatives of the people and that they are duty bound to serve their fellow Party members and other people. They must work with this consciousness. If they work in this manner, they will be wakeful even in their beds and find a lot of things they have to do. They must struggle with all devotion for the Party and the revolution, for the working class and the people by displaying intense loyalty to them.

To proceed, I shall dwell upon aquaculture.

Aquaculture, like tidal-flat reclamation, is a worthwhile struggle to harness the sea. If we conduct aquaculture on a large scale, we can improve the people’s diet and provide them with health and longevity.

We have greatly emphasized the importance of aquaculture in the past and have given each province an aquacultural assignment, but no province has implemented its assignment properly. Assignments should not be given indiscriminately. Only those provinces with real possibilities to do it and the People’s Army should be given assignments.

North Hamgyong, South Hamgyong, Kangwon, North Hwanghae and South Hwanghae Provinces have the possibilities. North and South Hamgyong Provinces should each create 10,000 hectares of aquacultural farms, Kangwon Province 2,000 hectares, South Hwanghae Province 3,000 hectares, North Hwanghae Province 1,000 hectares and the People’s Army 5,000 hectares–31,000 hectares in all. If the People’s Army can create 10,000 hectares rather than 5,000 hectares, it will be good. At this meeting we should decide in principle to create 31,000 hectares of aquacultural farms and implement the decision.

When we have walled off the sea on tidal flats, we may be able to conduct some aquaculture on the West Sea, but we shall have to wait until then to be more definite. Under present circumstances it is difficult to supply materials for large-scale aquaculture.

Since it has many factories, South Hamgyong Province will be able
to carry out its aquacultural assignment. Kangwon Province will also be able to fulfil its assignment, because it has some industrial foundations. It would be better if South Hwanghae Province created approximately 5,000 hectares of saltwater farms, but more than 3,000 hectares will be difficult, because its industrial foundation is weak.

We must work hard to create 31,000 hectares of saltwater farms by 1992.

I shall greet my 80th birthday in 1992. You comrades should develop saltwater farming successfully, anticipating my 80th birthday, to make it a great treat for the people. Nothing could make me happier than providing the people with a rich life.

All the senior officials must pay close attention to aquaculture.

Making good rafts is important for creating saltwater farms.

Small rafts are not buoyant enough, nor can they withstand waves. While inspecting a small saltwater farm on the East Sea last year, I thought it necessary to produce large drum-shaped iron rafts. Large sheet-iron rafts pose a problem of ropes to connect them. Wire ropes or vinalon ropes will serve the purpose. Wire ropes will be more durable than vinalon ropes. Seeding ropes can be made with thick straw, hemp fibre or the skin of lime tree, since they will be discarded after a year. If large sheet-iron rafts are floated around a saltwater farm, the interior rafts, though small, will not drift away with the waves.

Several days ago I gave the chairman of the Fisheries Commission an assignment to make an experimental saltwater farm of approximately ten hectares, using large sheet-iron rafts, in South Hamgyong Province. I intend to send the Premier of the Administration Council to inspect the farm or else I myself will inspect it and give a demonstration to popularize the method. If we tell the people to create saltwater farms without showing them how to make them, the work will not be successful.

A large amount of steel will be needed to make the rafts for aquaculture, so we must make an investment. Nothing will succeed without investment.

The major task of aquaculture is to farm kelp and mussels.
Careful calculation is needed to determine the areas of kelp farms and mussel farms in creating 31,000 hectares of aquacultural farms. If we develop 15,000 hectares of kelp farms and as many mussel farms, we shall produce 1.5 million tons of kelp at an estimated 100-ton-per-hectare yield and as many mussels at the same per-hectare yield.

We are now exporting kelp to the Soviet Union at 200 roubles a ton. If we produce 100 tons of kelp per hectare, it means earning 20,000 roubles. If we export processed kelp, we can earn more foreign currency. If we produce large quantities of kelp and export it to the Soviet Union in exchange for sardine oil or sunflower-seed oil, we shall be able to solve the oil and other problems. It will also be good to export kelp in exchange for maize.

However, we must not think of earning foreign currency by developing saltwater farming. We are going to develop aquaculture on a large scale, essentially to provide our people with better food, although it is necessary to earn foreign currency.

Kelp and mussels are very good for people’s health. Kelp can be eaten raw, processed into biscuits, or powdered.

In one country kelp is said to have been defined as an essential item in the diet, with daily doses for children and adults prescribed in grammes. Because kelp is congenial to health, people in that country eat kelp by processing it into biscuits and various other kinds of food. It contains iodine and is also liked by the Soviet people. As we are not producing large quantities of kelp, we do not define daily doses for people. When we produce it in large quantities in the future, we shall prescribe obligatory daily doses for people.

On this occasion the Administration Council has calculated to create 10,000 hectares of mussel farms out of the 31,000 hectares and to make the rest into kelp farms. A further study should be made to see if it is really necessary to create so large an area of kelp farms. We have not yet established nutritional norms of daily doses for a person, so we cannot make a reasonable estimate of domestic demands for kelp, nor are we sure of the possibility of exporting large quantities on a regular
basis. We are exporting some kelp to the Soviet Union, but if they do not import it in large quantities in the future, there will be no market for it. We cannot tell the people to consume an unreasonably large amount simply because it is good for health. Therefore, the area of kelp farms should be decided after prudent calculation of domestic and foreign demands.

In my opinion it would be preferable to plan a wider area of mussel farms, though it may need more materials. The more mussels we produce, the better.

The People’s Army should be allowed to consume its own saltwater farm products.

Next, about fish farming.

Fish farming is also an important matter relating to the people’s livelihood. If we succeed in fish farming, we can supply a lot of fish to the people.

We have favourable conditions for the development of fish farming. There are many reservoirs, lakes, and rivers in our country, and we have a considerable number of fish culturists. There is no pollution in our country, and rivers are suitable for fish farming. Sailing up the Taedong River as far as the Songchon Barrage Reservoir recently, I found that there were a lot of shellfish in the river. That is a good omen. It means that the river is free from pollution and proves that our natural environment is well protected through strict observance of the law on environmental protection. If we make good use of the given conditions and possibilities, we shall be perfectly able to succeed in fish culture. At present, however, fish farming is not flourishing. Officials in charge of fish culture still have no established idea about the measures to develop fish farming.

Chinese are good at fish farming. On a visit to China in 1958 Premier Zhou En-lai and I toured local areas. On our way back we flew over Jiangsu Province, his native province. Looking down from the plane, I saw many water pools. I asked the Premier what all those pools were for. He said that they were fish ponds and that in his home village every household had a sizable fish-breeding pond. The people of
Jiangsu Province, he said, had pigsties by their fish ponds and the discharges from the pigsties were treated microbiologically to be fed to their fish. They grew different kinds of fish at three different levels of depth in their ponds. Chinese call Jiangsu Province and Zhejiang Province lands of fish and rice. In the past a Chinese source said that fish farming was also successful in Hubei and Hunan Provinces and that they were producing a lot of fish.

On return from my China visit I made sure that cooperative farms bred fish widely in ponds and water pools. The fish farm of the Thaegam Cooperative Farm was made in those days. The fish farm used to produce a considerable amount of fish and supply them to the cooperative farm members. Nowadays, however, the fish farm does not seem to be thriving, because the senior officials of Pyongyang are not guiding and controlling fish farming properly.

The chairman of the Pyongyang City Administration and Economic Guidance Committee was developed under our systematic education, but he is not working in a responsible manner. I became acquainted with him through the good offices of Comrade Choe Jae Ha, the then Minister of Construction. Comrade Choe Jae Ha was a fine man with plenty of guts and ability to develop work. I got to know him immediately after liberation. He came from the working class, so I gave him good education and promoted him to Construction Minister. During postwar reconstruction he struggled devotedly to implement the Party’s policy on the introduction of mechanization and prefabrication in construction by brushing aside the obstructionist scheme of the anti-Party factionalists who had wormed their way into the construction industry. The chairman of the Pyongyang City Administration and Economic Guidance Committee also came from the working class, and as such he should work hard by displaying loyalty to the revolution, Party, working class and people, but he is not implementing Party policy as he should.

On the way back from a visit to Sangwon County I could see no pumpkins growing in vacant lots, no signs of strenuous efforts to develop economic life. Soldiers of the People’s Army plant a lot of
pumpkins at the foot of mountains and by roadsides, but in Pyongyang no pumpkin is planted, although there are many vacant lots in the city.

To provide grapes for Pyongyang people, I gave an assignment to the senior officials of Pyongyang a long time ago to create approximately 500 hectares of vineyards with imported grape plants in Sangwon County. However, the assignment has not yet been implemented. It is not that there is no land fit for grape cultivation. If riverbanks are planted to grapes, the area will amount to thousands of, not 500, hectares. Our people cannot be well-off unless officials work assiduously.

The chief of the Fish Farming General Bureau is not working in good faith either.

Fish-culture organizations are not farming fish so well as the People’s Army. A People’s Army unit has created fish farms in many places and is growing a lot of crucian carp, carp, eel and rainbow trout.

Things are so deplorable that it is even difficult to decide how we should develop fish farming. Because there are no basic economic and technological data on fish farming, it is difficult to give fish production quotas. The officials concerned must make a detailed field investigation, discuss the matter collectively, determine basic economic and technological data and propose the measures to improve fish farming.

Fish farmers must breed a lot of highly productive fish, ones of which they are sure and certain. Low productive fish cannot contribute greatly to the people’s diet.

Rainbow trout should be raised in large quantities.

This fish can be bred by artificial incubation. Its breeding requires keeping the water temperature suitable for its growth. Grey mullet grow well without being much affected by water temperature, but rainbow trout grow well only in water temperatures of 10 to 18 degrees C. They cannot live in water 20 degrees or higher. A People’s Army unit made a few reservoirs about three metres in depth in Onchon County, South Phyongan Province, last year and started breeding rainbow trout and grey mullet after flooding the reservoirs with
saltwater. Recently I visited there and found that the grey mullet had multiplied and were growing well, but nearly all the rainbow trout were dead, apparently because the temperature of the water in the shallow reservoirs was too high. This fish does not thrive in too cold water. Rainbow trout are now grown in Ryanggang Province. The water temperature of some rivers in this province does not rise above six degrees C even in midsummer. According to fish culturists, char like such cold water, but not rainbow trout.

Our country does not have many rivers in which the water remains between 10 and 18 degrees C, so it seems difficult to breed rainbow trout widely in rivers. Trout or salmon, when put into water, swim to the sea and then back upstream, but there is no information that rainbow trout do the same. Travelling the area around the Tuman River during the anti-Japanese armed struggle, I saw trout and salmon coming up as far as the Hongqihe, a tributary of the Tuman River, to spawn. I think it advisable to breed rainbow trout in the sea on an experimental basis.

We must breed eels and grey mullet on a large scale. Some people are now catching even young eels to export to earn foreign currency, but doing such a thing to earn a few foreign pence is a criminal offence. The practice of catching young eels to earn foreign currency must be prohibited, and any recurrence of such instances must be dealt with by law.

It is said that the Kwangryang Bay is teeming with young eels. If we enclose the opening of the bay and prevent eels from escaping, we can farm eels there. When reclaiming tidal flats in South Phyongan Province, we must see that fish farms of about 20 hectares each are laid out between the tidal flats to breed grey mullet in large quantities for the provincial and Pyongyang people. South Phyongan Province should develop fish farms on its own and breed grey mullet on a large scale.

Crucian carp and loaches should also be farmed on a large scale. This can be done without making separate fish farms if we make use of water pools. In our country with limited farmland we cannot afford to
create fish farms at the expense of farmland, but it is not bad to breed crucian carp and loaches by turning land unfit for cereal crop cultivation into fish farms.

Rivers and lakes are not teeming with fish. We must hatch large numbers of young fish and put them into the rivers and lakes.

Sweetfish should be bred in the Chongchon River in large quantities. Sweetfish live in this river, swimming up and downstream. This fish spawns near Tohwa-ri, Kaechon County, South Phyongan Province, and the young ones flow into the sea, where they pass the winter, then swim back up the river the next spring. So we intend to make the stream below Kujang a sweetfish reserve and not build a barrage there.

To develop fish farming, we must find a solution to the problem of fish feed. It would be a good idea to use livestock discharges as fish feed by treating them microbiologically.

We must protect fish resources carefully. Fish resources are an important wealth of our nation. By careful protection and propagation we must see that these resources are effectively used for improving the people’s standard of living.

Preventing river pollution is important in the conservation of fish resources. Factories and other enterprises must not discharge pollutants into rivers on any account. Especially Pyongyang and Nampho must refrain from polluting the Taedong River.

Another major factor in the conservation of fish resources is to prevent catching fish at random.

The practices of angling fish by snatching them with unbaited hooks and injuring escaping ones or of netting them at random persist. Because fish were caught with nets at random in the reservoirs, which were teeming with fish, they are now said to be depleted of fish. We must strictly prohibit and control robber-like angling or netting in large rivers and lakes.

Netting may be allowed in waters between the West Sea Barrage and Mirim Barrage. However, random netting must not be permitted. The Fish Farming General Bureau should organize a fishing enterprise
and let it catch fish with nets and supply fish to the grey-mullet soup restaurants and fresh-fish soup restaurants in Pyongyang, Nampho and Songnim. The Administration Council should define the size of the meshes of the nets for the enterprise and give it fish production quotas.

Random angling in big rivers must not be permitted.

People keen on angling should be encouraged to join an anglers’ association and made to pay regular dues to the association. Since young fish are grown at state expense and released into rivers, it is not bad for association members to pay dues for the fish they catch.

In a foreign country, too, the anglers pay dues. When I was on a tour of a country in Europe in 1956, I paid a visit on a Sunday to a valley that in ancient times was the fish and game preserve for the king of the country. The river flowing through the valley was teeming with rainbow trout. The Prime Minister, who accompanied me at that time, said that young trout were hatched and grown with feed in an incubation farm for some time before they were released into the river, and that the fish grew well by eating worms dropping from the trees on the riverbanks as well as worms living in the water. He said that in his country only members of the anglers’ association were allowed to fish and that the dues paid by the members were spent on wages for the workers of the fish farm and on feed for young fish.

A socialist society needs explicit regulations for any field of activity. Nothing can be successful unless it is guided by regulations. Regulations on fish farming should be made and issued in the name of the Administration Council. The regulations should cover everything relating to fish farming, including the conservation of fish resources, the minimum sizes of fish permitted to be angled by the anglers’ association members, and the amount of the dues they should pay.

Fish farming should be conducted for one to two years in the direction discussed at this meeting, then this work should be discussed again by drawing on the experience gained in this period and decisions adopted.

Next, on the production of cocoons.

It is necessary to launch another vigorous mass campaign to
increase cocoon production. There are a large number of housewives in mining villages. They have no particular work to do. If they are provided with facilities for silkworm raising and are taught how to do it, they will be able to do this work with efficiency.

Tussah silkworms should be raised on a large scale.

Oak trees can be found almost anywhere in our country. This is the case even in Ryanggang Province except Mt. Paektu and some highlands. Therefore, tussah silkworms can be raised in a big way in any province if effort is made. Tussah silkworm raising will benefit us greatly without a great labour outlay.

Dyed tussah worm silk does not differ much from the product of mulberry silkworms. Formerly, tussah worm silk was called Shandong silk, which means the silk produced in Shandong.

Tussah silkworms can be raised in plastic tents or in people’s houses. All that is needed is to pick oak leaves and feed them to the silkworms in tents or in rooms. The people should be encouraged to raise tussah silkworms widely in their homes.

We should calculate carefully how many tussah silkworm cocoons can be produced in each province. If we raise tussah silkworms efficiently, we can produce tens of thousands of tons of cocoons.

In order to develop silkworm raising on a large scale, we must take measures to produce silkworm eggs in large quantities.

Although we intend to raise mulberry silkworms and tussah silkworms on a large scale, silkworm eggs are in short supply. North Phyongan Province is said to have been given a quota of only 1,500 tons of tussah silkworm cocoon production this year, because not many silkworm eggs are available. Every province must expand silkworm egg production bases within this year and supply sufficient eggs from next year onwards. Then cocoon production will jump from next year.

The Administration Council must sum up the result of silkworm raising in autumn and make an accurate calculation of cocoon production goals for next year.

An item on cocoon production should be included in the decisions of this session of the Central People’s Committee.
In conclusion, I shall touch on the need for all officials to adhere to our Party’s line of three revolutions with a revolutionary conviction.

In building socialism and communism, our Party has consistently been implementing the line of ideological, technological and cultural revolutions. Its line of three revolutions is very intelligent, correct and valid.

I talk a great deal about our Party’s line of three revolutions to foreign party and state leaders who come to visit our country.

In order to build communism, we must occupy both the ideological-political and material fortresses. For the construction of communism it will not do to occupy only the material fortress, leaving aside the ideological-political fortress, and vice versa. Without transforming the people, masters of society, along communist lines, it would be impossible to build communism, nor can we say that we have built communism no matter how ideologically and politically sound the people are unless they are provided with sufficient food and clothing.

Our Party has always given priority to the struggle to occupy the ideological-political fortress and has already achieved great success in this struggle. It is no exaggeration, in effect, to say that in our country we have nearly occupied the ideological fortress, the political fortress. In our country the entire Party is solidly united in ideology and purpose, all the people are rallied closely around the Party and the leader, and a single-hearted unity of the leader, the Party and the masses has been achieved. No other country or party in the world has attained such a strong unity and cohesion as we have. This is a great pride of our Party and our people.

However, we still have a long way to go to occupy the material fortress of communism. We must accelerate economic construction more vigorously to put into effect the communist principle–from each member of society according to his ability and to each according to his need.

We must carry out the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions in order to occupy the ideological-political and material
fortresses of communism.

The ideological revolution is the struggle to arm all members of our society firmly with the Juche idea, the revolutionary idea of our Party, and Party policy, its embodiment, so that they work and live in accordance with the communist slogan “One for all and all for one.” The ideological revolution is in no way aimed at opposing persons who retain outmoded ideas or ostracizing them. It is aimed essentially at educating and transforming people on communist lines and taking all of them into communist society.

An important task in educating and transforming people is to ensure that all the people belong to an organization and lead a revolutionary life in the organization. This is a consistent policy our Party has pursued over the past several decades ever since its foundation.

In the days immediately after liberation there was a Young Communist League in our country that admitted only young people who espoused communism. This left no small number of young people outside the organization, and some of them formed a separate organization among themselves and were about to go astray, so we dissolved the Young Communist League, organized a Democratic Youth League and saw to it that all the democratic-minded young people were enlisted in this organization. As a result, we were able to rally all the young people into a single young people’s organization and give them revolutionary education through their lives in the organization.

Today all our people belong to a particular organization and are leading an organizational life. Our preschoolers start a collective life in creches and kindergartens, children lead an organizational life in the Children’s Union, and young people in the League of Socialist Working Youth. Workers lead their organizational life in trade unions, farmers in the Union of Agricultural Working People, women in the Women’s Union, and Party members in the Party organization. In short, all the people, ranging from children to old people, in our country participate in organizational activities all their lives.

Our Party’s policy on encouraging all the people to join an
organization and lead an organizational life is absolutely correct. Through this organizational life they are educated in our Party’s revolutionary ideas and its policy and are inspired with the collectivist spirit of helping and leading each other forward on the principle of one for all and all for one.

In our country cadres are also educated under an established system. All our cadres attend study sessions and public lectures on Saturdays, participate in social labour on Fridays and obligatorily attend a one-month course every year at the Higher Party School, the University of National Economics or at other cadre training centres.

In our country all the people are educated and transformed by the method of one teaching ten, ten teaching a hundred, a hundred a thousand, and a thousand ten thousand, and the work of transforming people has become the concern of the masses themselves. As I always say, it would be impossible to build communism by the efforts of several qualified persons; we must take all the people as far as the communist society.

Today in our country the unity of the Party and the people has attained a very high level and the whole country has become a large revolutionary family where all its members live in harmony, helping and leading each other forward. We owe this success to the ideological revolution, to which our Party has devoted great efforts. We must, of course, develop the ideological revolution in greater depth and on a fuller scale in future, but the present high level we have attained in ideological education means a great victory for us.

Some people now measure the level of social development by the number of television sets, refrigerators and other material conditions available to the people, not preferentially by how solidly the people are united and how healthy they are ideologically and culturally. They are wrong. Television sets and refrigerators can be produced in factories, but the problem of equipping people with communist ideology and uniting them cannot easily be solved in a day or two.

In some socialist countries university students are now demonstrating against their governments, creating social confusion.
This is the consequence of the neglect of ideological revolution in favour of one-sided emphasis on material production.

We must carry out the technological and cultural revolutions, along with the ideological revolution, in order to build socialism and communism.

Liberating the people from their exploitation by landowners and capitalists and from imperialist oppression is not the only revolution. Relieving the working people from difficult and toilsome labour is also a revolution. This is by no means an easy undertaking.

In order to free the workers completely from exhausting labour, we must mechanize production processes and introduce automation, robots and flexible manufacturing. We must relieve not only industrial workers but farmers from backbreaking work. To free farmers from difficult work, we must carry out the technological revolution and complete irrigation, electrification, mechanization and chemical operations in agriculture and step up working-class guidance to the peasantry, industrial assistance to agriculture and urban support for rural communities, as clarified in the theses on the socialist rural question. When the tasks of the technological revolution set out in the theses are carried out, farmers will be able to work with ease and introduce the eight-hour workday.

As matters now stand, our farmers have to do difficult work in rice farming by transplanting rice seedlings, because we have limited farmland. Direct sowing of rice results in a 500 kg lower yield per hectare than the yield of transplanted rice crop. This means losing a total of 300,000 tons if we estimate the total area of our rice fields at 600,000 hectares. In our country with limited farmland, losing 300,000 tons of rice is not a simple problem. That is why we have to do the difficult work of transplanting rice seedlings in order not to lose 300,000 tons. In future when we have reclaimed a large area of tidal flats to enlarge farmland and obtained good rice strains by improving the seeds, we shall be able to dispense with the difficult work of transplanting seedlings as we do now. Then we shall be producing large quantities of rice while working with ease, airplanes sowing
seeds, spraying fertilizers, insecticides and herbicides and combine harvesters reaping the crops.

The cultural revolution is a struggle to eliminate cultural backwardness handed down from the old society and create a socialist, communist culture. The ultimate goal of the cultural revolution is to develop all members of society into intellectuals. It is closely interrelated with the ideological and technological revolutions. Success in the cultural revolution contributes to success in the ideological and technological revolutions.

If we adhere to and carry out our Party’s line of the three revolutions, we can build socialism and communism with success.

Our officials must take great pride and self-confidence in the absolute correctness of the line of three revolutions our Party maintains in building socialism and communism; they must not cast curious glances at foreign policies.

We have corrected in good time everything that needed to be corrected in the course of building socialism. We elucidated the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method a long time ago. Through the struggle to implement them we have established the best work system and work method that can meet the intrinsic requirements of socialist society. That is why there is nothing that should be reformed or restructured now.

In comparison with the successful ideological revolution, the technological revolution is lagging behind a little. For this reason, we have not yet found satisfactory solutions to the food and clothing problems for the people, but these are not very difficult problems to solve. The food problem can be resolved if we produce large quantities of tractors and other modern farm machinery for the rural communities, realign farmland properly to admit mechanization and finish nonpaddy field irrigation. When we complete construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, now under way, we can solve the clothing problem as well. This factory will turn out vinalon and vinyl chloride, so we shall be able to produce cloth, shoes and various other consumer goods in large quantities.
The 14th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee has adopted decisions to push ahead with the technological revolution. Therefore, if the officials organize the implementation of these decisions with efficiency and ensure the mass production of numerically controlled lathes, machining centres and other modern machine tools, no major problems will arise in effecting the comprehensive mechanization of production processes, a widespread introduction of robots and the establishment of flexible manufacturing systems.

A shortage of electric power is now a problem retarding the development of the national economy. Because of short power supply the metal industry is not producing the planned amount of steel this year. As there was not much rainfall last year, hydroelectric power stations are not producing electricity as they should. However, we shall be fully able to solve the power problem if we increase power output by concentrating efforts on thermal power stations and by producing 75-ton boilers and constructing another thermal power station.

The solution of the problem depends on how the senior officials struggle to carry out the tasks of economic construction. All the officials must work hard to carry out the Party’s line and policy by displaying a strong revolutionary spirit.

The situation in our country is now developing in favour of national reunification.

If we build socialism with greater success and produce plenty of food and consumer goods, it will have greater influence upon the fighting south Korean students and other people and we can reunify the country sooner.

The pro-Japanese group, comprador capitalists, landowners and the rabid reactionaries who committed atrocities in the north and tied to south Korea during the Fatherland Liberation War constituted the main forces opposed to national reunification in the past. Most of them have grown old and died. The younger people now growing up in south Korea are not hostile to our Republic. As reported by the south Korean mass media, south Korean students are studying our Juche idea,
propagating it widely and demanding the withdrawal of US troops from south Korea. The students and other south Korean people are now coming out in support of our Party’s policy on reunifying the country by the establishment of the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo. The Reverend Mun Ik Hwan’s recent visit to Pyongyang from south Korea proves the fact.

In my talk with him I said that I liked his statement that democracy meant reunification and reunification meant democracy. Then he said that independence should be added to the slogan of democracy-reunification. So I told him that he was right, that independence meant anti-US independence, democracy signified anti-fascist democracy, and reunification implied peaceful reunification, and that independence, democracy and reunification were identical with our ideas.

The south Korean authorities arrested and imprisoned the Reverend Mun Ik Hwan on his return from his visit to Pyongyang, but they will be unable to keep him in custody for long. Broad sectors of the south Korean population are now protesting that his visit to north Korea was in no way a crime and demanding his immediate release.

Many south Koreans are now hoping to visit Pyongyang. South Korean students and other young people are fighting to participate in the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students to be held in Pyongyang. When they come to the festival, we should show them the revolutionary battle sites in Ryanggang Province. If we show them the secret camp in Mt. Paektu and the trees on which mottoes are inscribed, they will clearly understand that Mt. Paektu is the sacred cradleland of the Korean revolution.

If the south Korean students and other people visit and see our Republic, they will support us.

On his recent visit the Reverend Mun Ik Hwan asked me if north Korea might be a satellite of the Soviet Union or China, so I said we would never become a satellite of any country, that he should not worry, because we were firmly maintaining independence, that I was anxious about south Korea, and that he should fight to prevent south
Korea from becoming a satellite of the United States and Japan.

As in the past so in the future we must firmly maintain an independent position in revolution and construction and build socialism and communism in our own way.

All our officials must have an unshakeable faith in our Party’s line and policy. They must not crane their necks to see the foreign policies of reform and restructuring and must guard against being contaminated by them. We must, in the future, too, adhere to the line of the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions.